ENGLISH, NEPALI, AND NEWARI

A COMPARISON AND ITS PEDAGOGIC APPLICATIONS

A thesis

Submitted

to

the University of Poona

Faculty of Arts

for

the degree of

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

in

Linguistics

by

Shishir Kumar Sthapit

Deccan College Postgraduate and Research Institute

Poona 411 006

July 1978

PREFACE

This work has been taken up primarily with a view to providing source material to those who are engaged, directly or indirectly, in teaching English to the speakers of Indo-Aryan and Tibeto-Burman languages in general and Nepali and Newari in particular. As the work contains fullscale descriptions of Nepali and Newari, it will also be useful to all those who are interested in the scientific study or the practical teaching of Nepali and Newari.

I would like to express my sincere thanks to the Ministry of Education and Social Welfare of the Government of India for awarding me a Colombo Plan Scholarship, to the Ministry of Education of His Majesty's Government of Nepal for selecting me for the award, to the Institute of Education, Tribhuvan University, Nepal for granting me the necessary study leave, and to the authorities and staff of Deccan College Postgraduate and Research Institute, Poona for their active cooperation, especially to the Director of the Institute, Professor A.M. Ghatage who was a constant source of inspiration to me. I must specially mention the unfailing courtesy and helpfulness of the staff of the magnificient library of Deccan College.

I do not know how to express my gratitude to my guide, Professor Ashok R. Kelkar. I do know one thing for sure : any amount of appreciation, any expression of gratitude will be

too meagre a tribute. I think the least tribute I can pay to him at present is to make a solemn promise to devote a good portion of the rest of my life to the world of scholarship he has so painstakingly opened up to me, during the last four and a half years. I am, indeed, very lucky to have worked under him. Needless to say, the present work is a hard-won fruit of his arduous supervision. Equally obvious is the fact that the shortcomings of the work, which are bound to be there, simply reveal my inability, at times, to digest fully the teachings of my Guru. I might as well mention here of my awareness of the incompleteness of the work in many respects, this being unavoidable due to the limitation of time.

I would like to express my thanks also to Dr. H. S. Biligiri, Dr. P. Bhaskararao, and Mr. S.N. Salgarkar (all from Deccan College) with whom I had had fruitful discussions at the early stage of my work.

My appreciation to Mr. V.V. Sastry, Lecturer, Indian Military Academy, Dehra Dun for going through my Chapter 11 and then giving me significant comments on it.

My wholehearted appreciation to my wife, Kamala who fought valiantly against the boredom of being a readily available informant for such a long period of time. I have checked many doubtful cases in data with several friends, too numerous to mention here separately. My hearty thanks to all of them for their cooperation.

My thanks are due to Dr. Austin Hale for readily providing me with materials of his and his associates' works on Nepali and Newari, to Professor K.P. Malla, Rector, Tribhuvan University, Nepal for providing me with relevant background information on Newari, and to Mr. K.R. Sharma, Deputy Director, Central Bureau of Statistics for providing me with census materials.

My earnest appreciation to Mr. M.M. Bhat for the spirit of cooperation and the warmth of feeling he showed towards me at the time of need. For his efficient typing of my thesis, I remain indebted to him.

I cannot forget at this point my friend Manoj Chipalu, who relieved me from the worry of all the details between the typist's work and the binder's. I thank him wholeheartedly, though I am sure he won't like me to do so.

CONTENTS

PART THREE : COMPARISON OF NEPALI AND NEWARI WITH ENGLISH AND ITS PEDAGOGIC APPLICATIONS

ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

A, Adj	adjective
ABIL	ability, abilitative
Abl-Erg, ABL-ERG	Ablative-ergative
Ad Prox	addressee proximate
Ads	adsentential
Adv	adverb
AdvP	adverb phrase
Anim	animate
A-Num	numeral adjective
AP	adjective phrase
asp	aspirated
Aux	auxiliary
Aux-Fin	auxiliary finite
Aux-Non-Fin	auxiliary non-finite
B	borrowed
Br	brother, brother's
C	consonant, nonsyllabic, concord
cl, Cl	clause
Cm	circumstantial
Com, COM	comitative
Comp	complement
COND	conditional
CONF	Confirmative
cop, Cop	copulative, copula

COUN	counterfactive
Count	countable
Da	daughter, daughter's
DEF	definite
Dem	demonstrative
Des, DES	descriptive
Di-Fac	ditransitive-factitive
ditr, Ditr	ditransitive
Emp, Emph	emphasis, emphatic particle
Eng	English
excl, Excl	exclusive
F	female
Fa	father, father's
fac, Fac	factitive
Fem	feminine
Fin	finite
Fut	future
G	gender
Gen, GEN	genitive
G No	gender-number
G NoP	gender-number-person
HABI	habitual
hon, Hon	honorific
Hu	Husband, husband's
Hum	human

I, IP	first person
II IIP	second person
III, IIIP	third person
IMME	immediate
imp, IMP	imperative
incl, Incl	inclusive
Ind, InDEF	indefinite
INFI	infinitive
intr, Intr	intransitive
Jn	junior
Loc, LOC	locative
M	male
Mo	Mother, mother's
Mod	modifier
MOD PROSP	modal prospective
N	noun
Nar, NAR	narrative
Neg	negative
Nep	Nepali
New	Newari
N-F	non-future
No	number
Nom, NOM	nominative
Non-Fin	non-finite
Non-FinP	non-finite phrase

NP	noun phrase
Num	numeral
O	object complement
Obj, OBJ	objective
Opt, OPT	optative
PERF	perfective
PERM	permissive
PERS	persistent
pl, Pl	plural
Pn, ProN	pronoun
Postp	postposition
PP	prepositional or postpositional phrase
Pr	predicative complement
PRED	predictive
Prep	preposition
ProA, Proadj, ProAdj	Proadjective
Proadv, ProAdv	proadverb
PROG	progressive
ProN, Pn	pronoun
PROP	proponent, proposal
PROSP	prospective
Prox	proximate
Pt	patient complement
R, Res Comp	residual complement
Ref	reflexive

Rel	relative
Rem	remote
S	sentence, subject
semitr, Semitr	semitransitive
sg, Sg	singular
Sn	senior
s.o.	someone
Sp Prox	speaker proximate
s.th.	something
Suf	suffix
SURP	surprise
tr, Tr	transitive
unasp	unaspirated
V	vowel, verb
V^F	front vowel
V^H	high vowel
vd	voiced
vl	voiceless
VP, V	verb phrase
vs	versus
V-Stem, V	verb stem
W	semivowel w or y
Wi	wife, wife's
{ }	morphemic writing
/ /	phonemic writing
[ ]	phonetic writing

[ ]	select any one from the bracketed list (*respectively if marked by r or r'*)
( )	optional element(s)
-----	is realized as, is composed of
=====	is transformed into
(A) + (B)	and, (A) followed by (B)
(A) - (B)	morphemic boundary, between (A) and (B)
##	word juncture
=	is equal to
≠	is not equal to, not the same as
/	or, in the environment of
~	in free variation with
Ṽ	nasalized vowel
∅	zero, overtly nil
` ´	word accent (the two symbols are merely typographical variants)
	high-fall intonation pattern
	low-rise intonation pattern
[V</ C<]	fronted vowel/fronted consonant
[V>/ C>]	retracted vowel/retracted consonant
[V^]	raised vowel
[Vᵛ]	lowered vowel
[C˺]	consonant without release
$[C_y]$	palatalized consonant
$[C_w]$	labialized consonant
[V̨]	seminasalized vowel
$[V_h]$	breathy vowel
$[{}^yV]$	vowel with palatal onset
$[{}^wV]$	vowel with labio-velar onset
$[V_ə]$	centralized vowel.

INTRODUCTION

This is a non-historical comparative study of the phonological and grammatical systems of English, Nepali, and Newari mainly from the point of view of teaching English to the speakers of Nepali and Newari.

Nepali belongs to the Pahāṛī group of the Indo-Aryan branch of the Indo-European family of languages.

Newari belongs to the non-pronominalized group of the Tibeto-Himalayan branch of the Tibeto-Burman sub-family of the Sino-Tibetan family of languages.

The dialects chosen for the present study are the educated southern British English, colloquial Nepali spoken in Kathmandu valley, and colloquial Newari spoken in Kathmandu, the capital city.

1. Aim and Scope

The study is divided into three parts. Part I presents a sketch of Nepali phonology and grammar under the following five chapter headings :

Chapter 1 : Phonology

Chapter 2 : Functional Classification of Stems

Chapter 3 : Structural Classification of Stems

Chapter 4 : Inflection

Chapter 5 : Syntax

The phonology is essentially a word phonology in terms of phonemes, their phonetic correlates, and their distribution. The next chapter sets up stem classes in accordance with their grammatical functions. Morphology is then covered in the following two chapters on stem formation and inflection respectively. The sketch concludes with the syntax of phrases and sentences. The notions of variation, embedding, and conjoining of sentences are used within this framework.

Part II presents a corresponding sketch of Newari phonology and grammar. This sketch follows broadly the same plan as in Part I. A reference list of the Newari verbal bases is given in the Appendix.

Part III presents a pedagogically oriental non-historical comparison of Nepali and Newari with English. The chapter divisions in this part correspond to those in Part I and Part II. Each chapter in this part concludes with a brief note on possible applications of these comparisons for the more effective teaching of English to the speakers of Nepali and Newari.

For obvious reasons an explicit description of English was thought unnecessary. Even in Part III the details of English phonology and grammar have been brought in only in so far as this was felt necessary for the purposes of comparison.

The reason for including two languages from Nepal is practical in nature. To begin with I was interested in including only a description of Newari. (It may be noted that this is for the first time that a rounded and full-scale description of contemporary standard Newari in modern linguistic terms is being attempted.) Subsequently it was realized that a Newari speaker's handling of English is affected as much by his second language Nepali as by his first language. Besides, Nepali being the principal language of Nepal it would have been unrealistic to leave it out on any material designed for improving the study of English in Nepal.

The other reason for the inclusion of Nepali is the lack of a fullscale description of the Kathmandu colloquial dialect of Nepali on structural lines. At this point two main works on Nepali need a special mention. These are F.C. Southworth's 'Nepali Transformational Structure, A Sketch' (1967) and B.M. Dahal's 'A Description of Nepali, Literary and Colloquial' (1974).

Southworth's work is professedly a sketch made on transformational lines. Dahal's work, on the other hand, is quite comprehensive and basically structural in approach. The dialects included in his work are literary Nepali, colloquial Nepali spoken in eastern Nepal, and colloquial Nepali spoken in Darjeeling District, West Bengal, India.

While my work differs from that of Southworth in the very approach, it differs from Dahal's on two counts. First, the dialect I have chosen to describe is, as already mentioned, the colloquial Nepali spoken in Kathmandu, the capital of Nepal. Secondly, the syntax section has received greater attention in my work than in his, and therefore, in this regard, the work is an attempt to move a step forward. On the whole, in spite of the choice of a different dialects, my work bears a pervasive influence of his splendid work. As it is, my work after completion revealed that not many significant differences exist between the dialect I have described and the literary dialect and the eastern colloquial dialect he has described.

My work also revealed one other important point. More often than not the speakers of Nepali and Newari do face common problems while learning English. This, I believe, is mainly due to the fact that Nepali, as a filter language, plays the same dominant role in the two cases. A Newari speaker's English seems to be as much interferred with by his Nepali linguistic habits as by his Newari ones. (It may be observed in this connection that Newari-speaking and Nepali-speaking pupils (ages 6 to 8 onwards) are taught English together and mostly in the Nepali medium.) So it seems that the separate treatment to these two linguistic groups is unwarranted as far as English teaching is concerned. This may be true in case of the speakers of the other languages of Nepal as well.

2. Approach, Method, and Sources

The present description of Nepali and Newari is more data-oriented than model-oriented. The approach is basically structural but some notions of transformational grammar have been incorporated in the syntax section.

The comparison of the languages in question is typological and not historical, hence, 'a non-historical comparison'. The term 'contrastive' is avoided as it generally connotes an exclusive attention to points of difference. The present work highlights both points of similarity and points of difference (with greater emphasis on the latter though). Perhaps the term 'correlative study' would aptly bring out the exact nature of the present comparison.

Throughout Part III English is presented in orthographic writing whereas Nepali and Newari are presented in phonemic writing.

Whenever convenient, corresponding forms of English, Nepali, and Newari are given in three columns. Significant similarities and, particularly, differences are then subsequently pointed out under observations.

The grammatical correspondences between Nepali and English are based on translation equivalents, for instance, in answer to the question, what would be the most natural

way of translating the given Nepali construction into idiomatic English and vice versa?" The same is true of the comparison between Newari and English.

Pedagogic applications in Part III are based not only on the comparison of resemblances and differences presented in this part, but also on a certain amount of informal error analysis. Here I have drawn upon my own experience as a teacher of English to students including the speakers of Nepali and Newari both at the school level and at the college level.

The present study has consulted fruitfully the previous linguistic studies of other varieties of Nepali, and of topics under Newari phonology and grammar. On the whole, however, it has preferred to approach each problem afresh.

My intuitive knowledge of Nepali and Newari formed the basic source for initial work. Throughout the work I have used my wife, Kamala, a native speaker of Nepali from the Kathmandu valley, as the principal informant for Nepali, and myself, a native speaker of Newari from Kathmandu city, for Newari. Later all doubtful cases have been checked with several other native speakers of the languages in question.

The main secondary source for Nepali is the Ph.D. thesis of B.M. Dahal (1974). The works of Austin Hale and

his associates (variously from 1969 to 1973) and that of Kamala Sthapit (1976) on selected aspects of Newari formed the principal secondary sources for Newari.

My accounts of English are based essentially on the secondary sources which are the works of A.C. Gimson (1970), Daniel Jones (1960), Otto Jesperson (1933), R.W. Zandvoort (1969), Mark Lester (1971), Jupp and Milne(?), R.A. Close (1974), A.S. Hornby at.al (1974), and several others too numerous to mention separately. Substantial help has also been obtained from my guide, Professor Ashok R. Kelkar both through his published work (1968) and through informal discussions.

The works of W.G. Moulton (1962) and of Kufner (1962) have been consulted fruitfully for the method of comparison though I have not quite followed their models.

3. Background Information

Nepali, the national language, is used for administration, law, education, press, radio and public life in Nepal. It also serves as the main lingua-franca all over the kingdom. Newari is one of the major languages of Nepal. The former belongs to the Indo-Aryan family and the latter to the Tibeto-Burman family.

According to the 1971 census of Nepal, out of the total population of about 11.5 million, over 6 million (about

52.4%) and less than half a million people (about 3.9%) reported Nepali and Newari respectively as their 'mother tongue'. In Kathmandu valley, Nepali and Newari speakers are almost equal in number. Out of the total Newari population in Nepal, about 62.9% live in the Kathmandu valley. The corresponding percentage for Nepali speakers is only about 4.6.

Kathmandu valley mainly consists of three districts: Kathmandu, Lalitpur, and Bhaktapur. The data below shows the distribution of Nepali and Newari speakers in each of these three districts, in the valley, and in Nepal as a whole as given in the 1971 census of Nepal:

	Total Population	Nepali speakers	Newari speakers
Kathmandu	353,756	175,135	147,012
Lalitpur	154,998	69,868	69,872
Bhaktapur	110,157	36,882	69,274
Total(practically, Kathmandu valley)	618,911	281,885	286,158
Nepal	11,555,983	6,060,758	454,979

Outside Nepal, Nepali speakers are found in India, Bhutan, and Burma, and Newari speakers in India, Bhutan, and Tibet (chiefly Lhasa). The number of Nepali speakers outside Nepal is considerable.

The Newari language as spoken in Kathmandu valley shows three recognizable dialects corresponding roughly to the three districts of the valley, namely, Kathmandu, Lalitpur, and Bhaktapur. (The first two are closer to each other than to the third.) The Newari dialect chosen here is the Kathmandu district dialect.

The situation with Nepali is quite different. In the first place there are no recognizable, clear differences within the valley. Secondly, the few differences that exist are aligned not with the districts but with a division between the heart of the capital city and the environs. The speakers in the centre are much more influenced by Newari than those in the peripheral area.

Nepali and Newari show many instances of intimate borrowing (Bloomfield 1933) from each other both at the grammatical level and at the lexical level. This is understandable keeping in view of the fact that the speakers of these languages have been living together, particularly in the Kathmandu valley, for centuries. In addition there is some cultural borrowing as well.

Both Nepali and Newari are rich in written as well as folk literature and both have literary history going back to several centuries.

Nepali is written in the Devanagari script. Newari has its own script popularly known as the Ranjana script.

(There are some stylistic variations within the Newari script so that the script is known by other names as well.) The Newari script is fast becoming moribund. These days the Devanagari script is used for Newari writings both in public life and in literature and press.

According to some Newari scholars the ancient Newari script seems to have been in a formative stage around 10th century A.D. However, the oldest inscription in this script discovered so far dates Nepal Sambat 353 (1233 A.D.). Similarly the oldest manuscript bearing this script available so far is a book entitled Hitopades written by the Bangla Pandit Narayan in N.S.481 (1360 A.D.), the document is being preserved in the Ethnological section of the national museum in West Berlin.

It is interesting to note that the Newari script was, to begin with, used for writing the Sanskrit language. For instance, both the material evidences referred to above are in the Sanskrit language. During the reign of Jayasthiti Malla in Kathmandu (1382-95 A.D.) three books are found to be written in the Newari script, the languages used being Sanskrit and Newari mixed. About the use of the Newari script the famous Italian historian L. Petech (in his work 'Medieval History of Nepal'(1958), p.11.) has the following to say : "It (i.e. the ancient Newari script) practically starts with Jayasthiti Malla at the end of the

14th century and grows larger with the passing of the time, till the end of the dynasty in 1768/9. The language is at first Sanskrit only, but technical portions (land measurements etc.) tend more and more to be in Newari. The script is old Newari ..." (My immediate source: Malla (1971)). Thus the use of the Newari script exclusively for the native language seems to be a much later development.

Different Newari scripts existed in the Malla period such as Bhujimol, Kumol, Ranjana. Of the three, Ranjana, a later development of the other two, was the most attractive and best known.

Most of the Newari speakers in Kathmandu, for that matter all over Nepal, also know Nepali.

Newari is taught as an optional subject at the school level and upto the Diploma (i.e. undergraduate) level in the university.

The native speakers of this language call it Newā bhāe or Nepāl bhāsā.

For background information on Nepali and Newari, I have drawn chiefly on Dahal 1974 and Malla 1971 respectively.

4. Possibilities for Future Work

It is hoped that this work will be of some help to the teacher, the writer of textbooks and teaching manuals, the designer of curricula and tests; that is, all those who

are engaged, directly or indirectly, in teaching English to the speakers of Nepali and Newari. As the work contains fullscale descriptions of Nepali and Newari, it will also be useful to all those who are interested in the scientific study or the practical teaching of Nepali and Newari.

To be specific this work can be used as source material for :

(i) continuation in the direction of much more detailed descriptions of Nepali and Newari taking up specific topics.

(ii) detailed non-historical comparative study of Nepali and Newari,

(iii) teaching one of the three languages to the speakers of the other two and teaching Nepali and Newari to the respective native speakers (Teaching here includes material production as well),

(iv) study of language contact between Nepali and Newari and other sociolinguistic studies in bilingualism, code-switching, cultural borrowing, and the like.

(v) preparation of aids to translators from English to Nepali, or from Nepali to English, or from Newari to English, or from Newari to Nepali (with their distinct purposes).

P A R T   O N E

A NEPALI SKETCH

CHAPTER ONE

NEPALI PHONOLOGY

1.1. Inventory of Phonemes

The phonological system of Nepali consists of 36 phonemes: 26 consonants (nonsyllabic nonvocoids), 3 semivowels (nonsyllabic vocoids), 6 vowels (syllabic vocoids) and 1 covowel (nasalization).

1.1.1. Consonants

		Bi-labial	Apico-dental	Apico-alveolar	Lamino-alveolar	Retro-flex	Dorso-velar
Stop	vl unasp	p	t		c	ṭ	k
	asp	ph	th		ch	ṭh	kh
	vd unasp	b	d		j	ḍ	g
	asp	bh	dh		jh	ḍh	gh
Nasal	vd	m		n			ṅ
Fricative	vl				s		
Trill	vd			r			
Lateral	vd			l			

1.1.2. Semivowels

	Dorsopalatal	Dorsovelar	Glottal
	y	w	h

1.1.3. Vowels

	Front unrounded	Central unrounded	Back rounded
High	i		u
Mid	e	ə	o
Low		a	

1.1.4. Covowel Nasalization

Note 1. Aspiration is phonemic only with stops.

2. Nasals, trill, lateral, semivowels and vowels are voiced and fricative is voiceless. As such voicing is not a distinctive feature with them.

3. Laminoalveolar stops have affricated release.

4. Back vowels are rounded, front and central vowels are unrounded. Lip-rounding is, therefore, not phonemic.

5. /w/ is labialized

6. /h/ has glottal friction but no determinate vocalic colour; /y/ and /w/, on the contrary, have some vocalic colour but no glottal friction.

7. /ph/, /bh/ etc. are to be taken not as sequences but as unit phonemes. It is only for typographical convenience that they are printed /ph/, /bh/ etc.; strictly speaking they should have been printed /p^h/, /b^h/ etc.

1.2. Illustration of Phonemic Contrasts

1.2.1. Consonants

/p/	pal	tent; rear!	papa	'sweet' (baby vocabulary)	pap	sin
/ph/	phal	throw!	napha	profit	maph	forgiveness
/b/	bal	rent; burn!	baba	a name	bhab	emotion
/bh/	bhat	cooked rice	gabha ~gaba	a kind of plant	labh ~lab	prosperity
/t/	tal	lake; rhythmic movement	chata	umbrella	hat	hand
/th/	thal	plate; start!	katha	story	nath	a middle name
/d/	dal	pulse (edible seed)	sada	plain; simple	pad	fart
/dh/	dhan	paddy	badha ~bada	hindrance	kãdh ~kãd	shoulder
/c/	cal	movement; move!	dhãca	design	nac	dance (N), dance!
/ch/	chal	wave	macha	fish	pach	rub off!
/j/	jal	net	khaja	tiffin	baj	kite (bird)
/jh/	jhal	a string of plants	sajha ~ saja	common	sãjh ~ sãj	evening
/ṭ/	ṭal	patch up!	laṭa	dumb	khaṭ	cut
/ṭh/	ṭhale	chieftain	paṭha	lamb	kaṭh	wood
/ḍ/	ḍal	body structure	paḍa	baby buffalo	haḍ	bone
/ḍh/	ḍhal	shield	gaḍha ~ gaḍa	deep (colour)	bãḍh ~ bãḍ	dam
/k/	kal	time; death	kaka	uncle (paternal)	cak	hip

/kh/	khal	gambling place	pakha	elevated field	kakh	lap
/g/	gal	blame(N), melt!	luga	dress	bhag	share; run away!
/gh/	ghal	carry (on the shoulder)!	aghau ~agau	to be satiated	bagh ~bag	tiger
/m/	mal	thing	mama	uncle (maternal)	kam	work(N)
/n/	nal	sewage; barrel of the gun	chana sanka	roof stimulate!	bhan	pretence
/ṅ/			haṅa saṅka	branch doubt	bhaṅ	an intoxicant
/s/	sal	year; a kind of tree	pasa	dice	tas	card
/r/	ral ~ ryal	saliva	dhara	tap	har	necklace; defeat
/l/	lal	red	chala	skin	chal	wave

1.2.2. Semivowels

Contrast between Semivowels

/y/	yal	mane	maya	love; affection
/w/	-wal	possessor	hawa	air; wind
/h/	hal	news; put!	aha	an exclamation

Contrast between Semivowels and Consonants

/y/	yahā	here	maya	love; affection
/j/	jahā	the place where	maja	thread coating
/w/	wari	this side (of s.th.distant)	hawa	air; wind

/b/	bari	small farm	baba	a name
/h/	hat	hand	mahan	great
/s/	sat	seven	masan	crematorium

Contrast between Semivowels and Vowels

/y/	tyā ~tyahã	there	atyacar	atrocity
/i/	tiã	three times	hatiar	weapon
/w/	jwaī	son-in-law	bwāso	wolf
/u/	jua ~ juwa	gambling	bua ~ buwa	father

Privative Contrast for Semivowels

/y/	yo	this	ayu	life span
Ø	o	the letter ओ	au	Come!
/w/	wari	this side(of s.th.distant)	jawlo	boiled rice
Ø	ari	washing vessel	jalo	spider web
/h/	ho	be; affir--mative		
Ø	o	the letter ओ		

1.2.3. Vowels

/i/	ikh	vengeance	khil	stinger	bali	crop
/e/	ek	one	khel	game; play!	bhale	male; cock
/a/	agi	before	khal	mortar	tala	down

/a/	ago	fire	khal	gambling place;	bhala	spear
/u/	ukhu	sugarcane	khul	be opened!	bhalu	bear
/o/	okhar	walnut	khol	cover; open!	bhelo	well being; goodness

1.2.4. Covowel: Nasalization

Contrast between Nasalized Vowels and Oral Vowels

/ĩ/	ĩṭ	brick	bĩḍ	handle(N)	bhaĩ	floor
/i/	itihas	history	bir	brave	sabai	all
/ẽ/			bheḍa	sheep	kheleẽ	played(ISg)
/e/			geḍa	grain	khele	played(IIIPl)
/ə̃/	ə̃	responsive particle	hə̃silo	smiling		
/ə/	ə	the letter अ	həriyo	green		
/ã/	ãkha	eye	bãs	bamboo	muã ~muwã	mother
/a/	akas	sky	bas	smell, shelter	bua ~buwa	father
/ũ/	ũṭ	camel	bhũḍi	belly	raũ	hair
/u/	uṭh	stand up! get up!	bughi ~buḍi	old woman	jau	barley
/õ/	õṭh	lip	khõc	ravine		
/o/	oḍne	shawl	khoj	search		

1.3. Phonetic Correlates

The basic phonetic values of the phonemes have already been supplied in the inventory charts and the subsequent note in 1.1. Realizations different from the basic values will be

described here in general rules so that a rule may cover segeral phonemes and, conversely, the full description of an allophone may require application of several rules.

In the examples given here only the relevant segments in question will be transcribed phonetically though words are shown within square brackets [ ].

1.3.1. Consonants

0. The voiceless stops are relatively tenser than the voiced ones. The word-initial variant of a stop is relatively tenser than its other variants.

1. Fronted and Retracted Variants

Non-bilabial consonants are slightly fronted before a front vowel and slightly retracted before a back vowel, e.g.,

/ṭhik/	[ṭ$^{h<}$ik]	correct	/ṭhulo/	[ṭ$^{h>}$ulo]	big
/keṭa/	[k$^<$eṭa]	boy	/koṭha/	[k$^>$oṭha]	room

2. Variants without a separate release

1) Unaspirated stops have no separate release before a homorganic stop, lateral or nasal. (symbol of lack of release [˺])

Note

1. /l/ and /n/ become homorganic with both dental and retroflex stops by assimilation.

In the geminates /-cc-/ and /-jj-/ the first /c j/ are realized as unreleased lamino-alveolar stops [t̲˺ d̲˺] which are different both from [t̪˺ d̪˺] and [ʈ˺ ɖ˺].

Examples:

/khuʈʈa/	[khuʈ˺ʈa]	leg	/cuttha/	[cut̪˺t̪ha]	last
/bacca/	[bat̲˺ca]	child	/baggi/	[bag˺gi]	carriage
/bhutla/	[bhut̪˺la]	feather	/kaʈla/	[kaʈ˺la]	will cut (IIISg)
/apman/	[ap˺man]	insult	/kaʈnu/	[kaʈ˺nu/	to cut
/gaɖnu/	[gaɖ˺nu]	to bury	/jitnu/	[jit̪˺nu]	to win

ii) /k/ is unreleased in word-final position, e.g.,

/nak/ [nak˺] nose

3. Variant with Vocalic Release

/ɖ/ has vocalic release word-finally and before a consonant other than a homorganic stop, nasal or lateral, e.g.,

/pahaɖ/	[paharᵊ]	mountain	/caɖkan/	[carᵊkan]	slap(N)

4. Affricate Variant

Word-initial /ph/ and /kh/ become affricates [pᶲ] and [kˣ] respectively before a back vowel, e.g.,

/phokso/	[pᶲokso]	lung	/phul/	[pᶲul]	flower; egg,
/khol/	[kˣol]	cover; open!	/khursi/	[kˣusi]	glad; gladness,

5. Fricative Variant

/ph/, /kh/, and /j/ have fricative variants [ɸ], [x] and [z] respectively (i) word-finally (ii) before a consonant other than /r/ or a homorganic stop, and (iii) intervocalically.

Examples

(i)	/geph/	[geɸ]	gossip
	/mukh/	[mux]	face
	/bhoj/	[bhoz]	feast
(ii)	/aphno/	[aɸno]	one's own
	/mukhma/	[muxma]	on the face
	/khojna/	[khozna]	to search
but,	/bakhri/	[bak^{h}ri]	female goat
	/majja/	[mad̚ja]	enjoyment
(iii)	/aphu/	[aɸu]	oneself
	/ukhu/	[uxu]	sugarcane
	/daju/	[dazu]	elder brother

6. Various Realizations of /r/

/r/ is realized as (i) a minimal trill word-finally (symbol [ṙ]), (ii) a full trill before a consonant (symbol [r̈]), (iii) a tap intervocalically (symbol [ɾ]) and (iv) a weak-friction-continuant word initially (symbol [ɹ]).

<u>Examples</u>

i)	/car/	[caṙ]	four	/pir/	[piṙ]	worry
ii)	/murkhə/	[mur̈khə]	foolish	/dhərmə/	[dhər̈mə]	religion
iii)	/kurə/	[kuɾə]	matter	/pəri/	[pəɾi]	angel
iv)	/rumal/	[ɹumal]	towel	/ris/	[ɹis]	anger

7. <u>Flap Variant</u>

/ḍ/ is realized as an apico-alveolopalatal flap intervocalically, word-finally and before a consonant other than a homorganic stop, nasal or lateral, e.g.,

/ḍãḍa/	[ḍãṛa]	hill
/pəhaḍ/	[pəhaṛᵊ]	mountain
/cəḍkən/	[cəṛᵊkən]	slap(N)

8. <u>Dental and Postalveolar Variants</u>

/n/ and /l/ are assimilated to an adjacent dental and postalveolar stops giving dental and postalveolar variants respectively.

<u>Examples</u>

/əntim/	[ən̪t̪im]	last	/sutnu/	[sut̪n̪u]	to sleep
/ghənṭi/	[ghən˃ṭi]	bell	/kaṭnu/	[kaṭn˃u]	to cut
/khəlti/	[khəl̪t̪i]	pocket	/bhutlə/	[bhut̪l̪ə]	feather
/pəlṭənu/	[pəl˃ṭənu]	to lie down	/kaṭlə/	[kaṭl˃ə]	will cut (IIISg)

9. Palatalized and Labialized Variants

Consonants and /h/ are (i) palatalized before a front vowel or /y/, and (ii) labialized before a back vowel or /w/, e.g.,

/hilo/	[$h_y$ilo]	mud	/pul/	[$p_w$ul]	bridge
/mec/	[$m_y$ec]	chair	/cor/	[$c_w$or]	thief
/syal/	[$s_y$yal]	jackal	/pwal/	[$p_w$wal]	hole

1.3.2. Vocoids

1. Seminasalized Variants

Vocoids are seminasalized (i) before a nasalized vowel, and (ii) when they occur adjacent to a tautosyllabic nasal. Seminasalization spreads across the entire vocoid sequence. (Symbol [̨]).

Examples

i)/bheĩ/	[bhęĩ]	floor	/ţhaũ/	[ţhąũ]	place
/yehã/	[yęhã]	here	/bayã/	[bąyã]	left
ii) /kam/	[kąm]	work	/jyan/	[jyąn]	life
/kuna/	[kuną]	corner	/mwai/	[mwąį]	kiss
/jumra/	[jųmra]	louse	/nawaũ/	[nąwąũ]	ninth

2. Breathy Variants

Vocoids are breathy after /h/ or a voiced aspirated stop. Breathiness, like nasalization, spreads across the entire vocoid sequence. (Symbol [$_h$]).

Examples

/ghar/	[gha$_h$r]	house	/bhalu/	[bha$_h$lu]	bear
/hami/	[ha$_h$mi]	we	/jhyal/	[jhy$_h$a$_h$l]	window
/hyau/	[hy$_h$a$_h$u$_h$]	courage	/dhwãso/	[dhw$_h$ã$_h$so]	soot

1.3.3. Other Variants of /h/

1. Variant with Voiceless Onset

/h/ has a voiceless onset in word initial position, e.g.,

/hami/	[^{h}hami]	we	/hijo/	[^{h}hijo]	yesterday

2. Zero Variant

Intervocalic /h/ occurs only in slow and careful speech. In normal speech it is deleted. That is to say /h/ has a zero variant intervocalically within a morpheme, e.g.,

		slow and careful speech	normal speech	
	/mahila/	[mahila]	[ma∅ila]	second eldest
	/bahun/	[bahun]	[ba∅un]	brahmin
but	/koṭha-heru/	[koṭhaheru]	[koṭhaheru]	rooms

1.3.4. Vowels

1. Slightly Tense, Raised and Longer Variant

Vowels are slightly tense, raised and longer when nasalized, e.g.,

/bās/	[bả^·s]	bamboo	/khōc/	[khỏ^·c]	ravine

(compare with

/bas/	[bas]	shelter; smell,	/khoj/	[khoj]	search)

2. Short, Centralized and less Prominent Variant

Vowels have a short centralized and less prominent variant following a vowel (symbol [V$_{ə}$]), e.g.

/peisa/	[pei$_{ə}$sa]	money	/bhau/	[bhau$_{ə}$]	rate; price
/sae/	[sae$_{ə}$]	hundred	/kua/	[kua$_{ə}$]	small well

3. Slightly Lowered Variants

Mid-non-central vowels have a slightly lowered variant in the environment C* - ## where C* ≠ word-initial C, e.g.

/bhale/	[bhale^{v}]	male (Non-Hum)	/sano/	[sano^{v}]	small

(compare with

/lekhek/	[lekhek]	writer	/noksan/	[noksan]	harm, loss)

4. Raised and Fronted Variant

Low-central vowel has a raised and fronted variant following /y/, e.g.

/pyaj/	[pya^<j]	onion	/cetyaṅ/	[cetya^<ṅ]	lightning stroke

5. Variants with [y]/[w]-on-glide

/e/ and /o/ are optionally realized as [^{y}e] and [^{w}o] respectively word-initially and following a vowel, e.g.,

/ek/	[ek ~ ^{y}ek]	one	/okhar/	[okher ~ ^{w}okhar]	chestnut
/see/	[see ~ se^{y}e]	hundred	/khaos/	[khaos ~ kha^{w}os]	let him eat

Note : The vocative particles /e/ and /o/ are, however, always realized as [e] and [o], never as [^{y}e] and [^{w}o].

1.4. Syllable

1.4.1. Syllable Division

Syllable divisions in Nepali are predictable according to the following rules:

1. There are as many syllables as there are vowels in an utterance.
2. Any nonsyllabic preceding the first vowel or following the last vowel goes with that vowel.
3. For nonsyllabic sequences between two vowels the following syllable divisions hold good:

   1) VWV ------- V.WV

   ha.wa   air, wind   ma.ya   love, affection

ii) VrCV ------- Vr.CV

ber.se	year	sur.wal	trouser
dher.me	religion	mer.ya.da	respect

iii) VC(W)V ------- V.C(W)V

a.ma	mother	i.chya	wish, desire
mu.sa	rat, mouse	bi.swas	faith, trust

iv) VCC(C)V ------- VC.C(C)V

el.chi	lazy, idle	seṅ.ka	doubt, suspicion
ghar.jwaĩ	DaHu who permanently lives in his wife's house	khan.thyo	used to eat (IIISg.Non-Fem)
men.tri	minister	cen.dre.ma	moon

Where, V = Vowel; W = Semivowel w or y;

C = Nonsyllabic; . = Syllable boundary.

Note : Rule (iii) should be applied after rule (ii).

1.4.2 Syllable Types

Nepali has eleven types of syllable as follows:

1. V

a.ma	mother	tha.ũ	place
bhe.ĩ	floor	me.u.ka	opportunity

2. CV

mu.sa	rat, mouse	ma.ya	love, affection,
ke.ra	banana	wa.ri	this side(of s.th. distant)

3. CCV

ghri.na	hatred	bwā.so	wolf
man.tri	minister	bhya.u.ṭo	frog

4. CCCV

stri	woman; iron	smri.ti	memory

5. VC

al.chi	idle, lazy	a.in	law

6. CVC

sun	gold	yan.tra	tool, machine
ki.san	farmer	je.wan	young

7. CCVC

prem	love	syal	jackal
pras.na	question	swas.ni	wife

8. CCCVC

spriṅ	spring (coiled wire)

9. VCC

ba.iṅk	bank	pa.und	pound

10. CVCC

bir.ganj	name of a town	a.nand	a male name

11. CCVCC

traṅk	trunk(box)	frans	France

Where, V = Vowel; C = Nonsyllabic; . = Syllable boundary.

Note

1. Syllable types 8, 9 and 11 can occur only in loanwords from English.
2. Syllable type 10 can occur only in proper nouns and loanwords.
3. Syllable type 4 can occur only in Snaskrit tatsam words.
4. Syllable types 4 and 8 can occur only in educated speech. In non-educated speech CCCV(C) is realised as two syllables with an /i/ insertion at the beginning of the initial syllable, e.g., iC.CCV(C).

1.5. Segment Sequences

1.5.1. Nonsyllabic Sequences

In this section C will be used as a cover symbol for a nonsyllabic (consonant or semivowel).

Among the semivowels /w/ and /y/ can occur only as the last member and /h/ only as the first member of a nonsyllabic sequence.

1. CCC Sequences

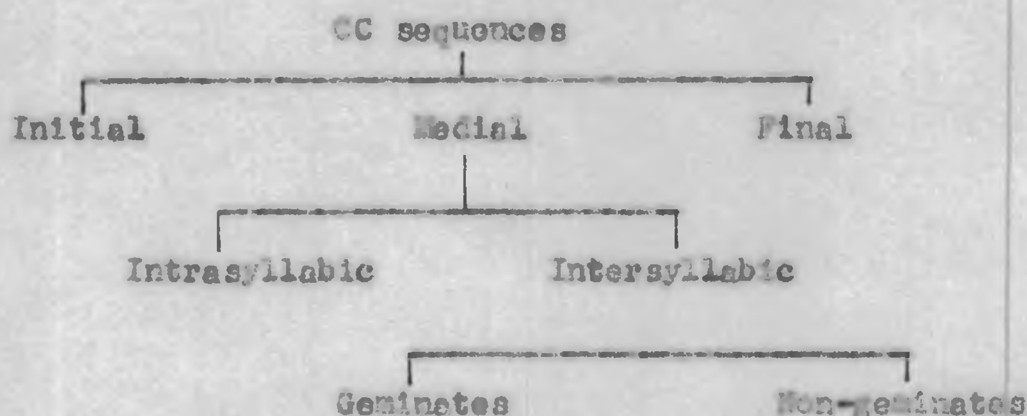
CCC sequences do not occur finally. Normally they do not occur initially either. (A very few exceptions are the tatsam Sanskrit words /stri/ "woman" and /smriti/ "memory" and

the single loanword from English /spriṅ/ "spring" which occur only in the educated speech.) Except the C-thy- sequences (where C is a C-ending verb stem and thy- the Simple Past marker) they rarely occur medially. A few examples are:

khanthyau	(you) used to eat	garthyo	(He) used to do
candrema	moon	mentri	minister
apthyaro	unmanageable	murchya	faint

2. CC Sequences

CC sequences, the illustrative matrix of which is shown at page 38, can be classified and sub-classified as follows:



Initial CC Sequences

The second member of these sequences has to be /r/, /y/ or /w/. It can also be /l/ but it is restricted to only a few loanwords from English such as

klas	class	glas	glass	plastik	plastic

The following is a list of initial CC sequences found in Nepali:

$C_1 \diagdown C_2$	r		y		w	
p	praman	proof	pyas	thirst	pwal	hole
ph	phrek	frock	phyauro	fox	phwasse	a phonestheme
b	bremma	Brahma	byaj	interest	bwāso	wolf
bh	bhranti	illusion	bhyauṭo	frog	bhwaṅpwal	big hole
t	tras	fear	tyo	that		
d	drisya	scene			dwara	by, through
dh			dhyan	medi-tation	dhwāso	soot
c			cyau	mushroom	cwasse	a phonestheme
ch			chyakaṭe	pockmarked M.person	chwali	a kind of straw
j			jyan	life	jwaī	son-in-law
jh			jhyal	window	jhwaī	a phonestheme
ṭ	ṭrek	truck	ṭyān ṭyan	a phones-theme	ṭwak	can(N)
ṭh			ṭhyak	adverbial classifier		
ḍ			ḍyak	loss		
ḍh			ḍhyak	coin	ḍhwaṅ	tin
k	kripaya	please	kyanser	cancer	kwati	broth
kh			khyak	ghost	khwau	Feed!
g	graha	planet	gyan	knowledge	gwala	milk-man
gh	ghrina	hatred	ghyampo	big pot	ghwaī	striker
m	mriga	deer	myagdi	name of a district	mwai	kiss
n	nrite	dance	nyano	warm	nwaran	birth celebra-tion
s	sresṭha	a surname	syal	jackal	swasni	wife
r			ryal	saliva	rwaī rwai	a phonestheme
l			lyau	Bring!	lwaṅ	clove
h			hyau	guts	hwaṅge	completely open

In addition to the list given above initial /s/ forms sequences with /p/, /t/, /th/, /ṭ/, /k/ and /n/, e.g.,

sperse	touch	sten	breast
ster	standard	sthan	place
sthai	permanent	sṭil	still
skul	school	snan	bath

These are however either tatsam Sanskrit words or loan-words from English which occur mainly in educated speech. In non-educated speech these words are pronounced with an initial intrusive /i/ forming /is/ a syllable; e.g., /is.kul/ "school". The word /sthai/ "permanent" is also realized as /thai/.

Final CC Sequences

Final CC sequences are very rare in Nepali and are found only in proper nouns or loanwords, e.g.,

birganj	name of a town	anend	male name
pamp	pump	sekenḍ	second(time)
marc	March	agasṭ	August
frans	France	benc	bench

Medial CC Sequences

Intrasyllabic Sequences

Intrasyllabic medial CC sequences belong to the latter of two syllables between which they occur and the second member

of these sequences has to be /y/ or /w/, e.g.,

i.chya	wish	aũ.thyo	(He) used to come
bi.swas	trust	be.swad	unpleasant
a.swin	6th month of the Hindu Calendar		

Intersyllabic Sequences

Geminates

Consonants other than aspirated stops form geminates; semivowels do not form geminates, e.g.,

jutta	shoes	khuṭṭa	leg
bacca	child	cakku	knife
jamma	total	calla	chick

Non-geminates

The most active phonemes in the formation of non-geminate intersyllabic CC sequences in Nepali Stems are /p/, /s/, /r/ and /l/. The common sequences are

(a) p, m, n, s, r, l + C and (b) C + p, k, s, r, l

Examples

ciplo	slippery	naspati	pear
amba	guava	birko	lid
ante	end	raksi	liquor
swasni	wife	khorsani	chilli
murkha	foolish	nidra	sleep(N)
alchi	lazy	bhitra	in, inside
kalpana	imagination	aglo	tall

1.5.2. Vowel Sequences

Nepali has the following vowel sequences:

(i) /ui/	dui	two	/iu/	biu	seed
/oi/	poi	husband	/eu/	taul	weight
/ai/	paisa	money	/au/	bau	father
/ai/	gai	cow			
(ii) /ii/	thiin	(She) was	/ou/	rou	weep!
/ie/	die	(They) gave	/oe/	roe	(They) wept
/ae/	gae	(They) went	/ae/	khae	(They) ate
/io/	pios	Let (s.o.) drink	/eo/	deos	Let (s.o.) give
/ao/	khaos	Let (s.o.) eat	/oo/	roos	Let (s.o.) weep

(iii)	/ei/	kei	(kehi)	something/anything
	/ue/	kuere	(kuhere)	having decomposed
	/ee/	jeendar	(jehendar)	intelligent
	/eo/	meoteri	(mehoteri)	name of a district
	/oe/	poer ~ por	(poher)	last year
	/ee/	seer	(seher)	city, town
	/ae/	saes	(sahas)	courage
	/ia/	biane ~ byane	(bihane)	morning
	/ea/	jean ~ jan	(jehan)	spouse
(iv)	/ua/	buari	(buhari)	Son's Wife, Younger BrWi
		jua	(juwa)	gambling

Of these, with a few exceptions, group (ii) can occur only intermorphemically, group (iii) can occur only as a result of ilision of intervocalic /h/ which is, however, maintained intact in slow and careful speech as shown within brackets. /ua/ can occur also as a result of ilision of intervocalic /w/, e.g., /jua/ (/juwa/) "gambling".

The few exceptions mentioned just above are :

sae	hundred	jee	prosperity, well being
bhae	danger	saed	perhaps
naō	nine times	beiman ~ beman	betrayer

1.6. Other Significant Distributional Limitations

1.6.1. Consonants

1. /ṅ/ does not occur word-initially except in the pronunciation of the Devanagari letter ङ and a few phonesthemes like /ṅacca/ "something being completely smashed due to heavy pressing", /ṅar ṅar/ "the mewing of a cat".
2. The distribution of voiced aspirated stops is restricted mainly to word-initial position (post-junctural position to be accurate). Only /bh/ is found to occur word medially also in a few learned words like /enubheb/ "experience", /sambheb/ "possible", /abhab/ 'lacking; scarcity' (always in the environment —Vb) as a result of dissimilation. Voiced aspirated stops however occur medially and finally in learned or literary speech or in conscious and careful speech. But in the colloquial speech they are normally replaced by their unaspirated counterparts in those environments.

1.6.2. Semivowels

/y/ and /w/ do not occur word finally. Intervocalic /h/, which occurs only in slow and careful speech, gets deleted in normal speech. Similarly /w/ occuring in the environment u-a also gets deleted in normal speech.

1.6.3. Vowels

All oral vowels and most of the nasalized vowels occur freely word initially, medially and finally. Of the nasalized vowels, /ẽ/ does not occur word-initially whereas /ẽ/ and /õ/ do not occur word-finally except in the multiplicatory terms like /satẽ/ 'seven times' and /naõ/ 'nine-times'. The frequency of occurrence of nasalized vowels is much lower when compared to that of the oral ones.

CC-Nonsyllabic Sequences Matrix

$C_1 \backslash C_2$	k	kh	g	gh	ṅ	c	ch	j	jh	ṭ	ṭh	ḍ	ḍh	t	th	d	dh	n	p	ph	b	bh	m	y	r	l	w	s	h
k	+	+				+				+				+					+		+		+	°*	*+	*+	°+	+	
kh														+							+			°+	+	+	*		
g			+											+		+	+	+			+	+		°*	*+	*+	*		
gh																		+						*	*+		*		
ṅ	+	+	+		+																			*	+	+		+	
c	+					+													+					°*			*		
ch																							+	°*	+		*		
j			+					+													+		+	°*	+		*		
jh																								°*			*		
ṭ	+	+								+	+							+	+				+	°*	*+	+	*		
ṭh																			+					°*			*		
ḍ	+		+			+						+		+				+			+			°*	*				
ḍh																								*			*		
t	+													+	+								+	°*	*+	+	*	*	
th																								*					
d			+													+					+		+	°	*+	+	*		
dh																								°*	*		*		
n	+					+?	+	+?		+	+	+?		+	+	+?	+	+	+				+	°*	*+	+	*	+?	
p	+					+				+				+					+	+			+	°*	*+	*+	*	+	
ph																		+						*	*	+	*	+	
b	+		+					+								+	+				+			°*	*+	+	*	+	
bh																								°*	*+		*		
m	+			+		+	+	+	+	+				+		+	+		+?	+	+	+	+	°*	*+	+	*	+	
y																													
r	+	+	+			+?	+	+						+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	*+	+	+	*	+	
l	+		+			+	+	+	+	+		+		+	+	+		+	+	+		+	+	°*		+	*	+	
w																													
s	*+					+		+		*+?				+*	+*			+*	+*		+	+	+	°*	*+	*+	°*	+	
h																								*			*		

Note
+ stands for intramorphemic intersyllabic CC sequences (Intermorphemic intersyllabic CC sequences are not included here)
° stands for intrasyllabic CC sequences
* stands for word-initial CC sequences
? stands for word-final CC sequences

CHAPTER TWO

Stems in Nepali can be studied from two points of view, namely (1) the grammatical (especially syntactic) functions they perform as they enter into larger constructions, and (2) their internal (i.e., morphological) structures. The former yields a functional classification and the latter a structural classification of stems.

Functionally Nepali stems may be Nominals, Verbs or Particles. Structurally they may be Simple or Complex; Complex stems, in turn, may be Derived, Composite or Reduplicated.

FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF NEPALI STEMS

2.1. Nominals

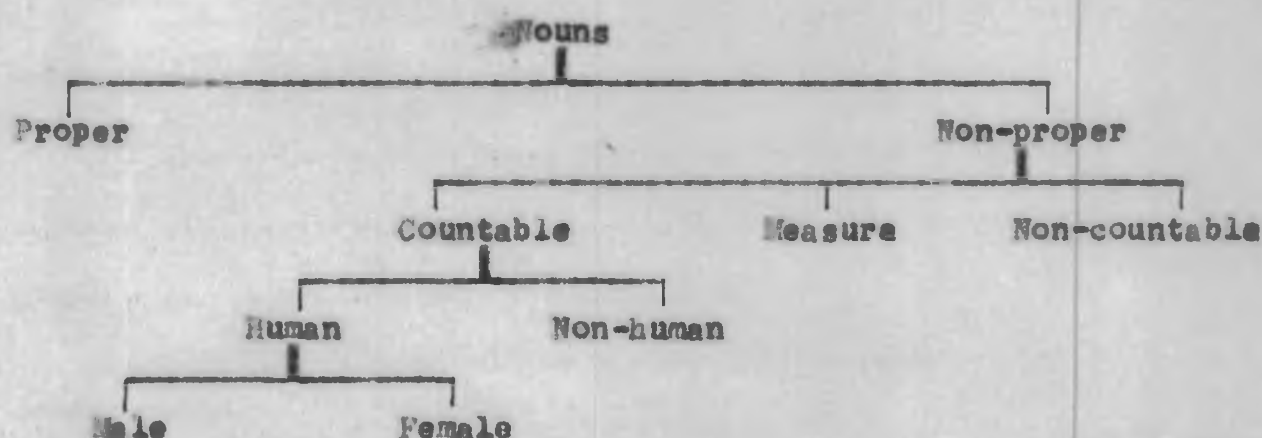
Nominal stems can be divided into five basic groups :

1. Nouns
2. Pronouns
3. Adjectives
4. Proadjectives
5. Classifiers

Of these Nouns and Pronouns inflect for Gender and Number and syntactically constitute nuclei of Noun phrases. Personal pronouns in addition, show a three-fold distinction for Person. Adjectives and Proadjectives, if declinable, agree with human nouns in Gender and Number and syntactically form nuclei of Adjective phrases. Classifiers, which occur only following a quantitative adjective or proadjective, together function as an AP or AdvP.

2.1.1. Nouns

Nouns admit of Gender and Number distinctions. Nouns can be conveniently classified and subclassified as follows :



Note : Feminine : Human Female

Non-feminine : All other nouns

This classification is based primarily on grammatical features such as syntactic cooccurrence, inflectional charecteristics and concord behaviour and only secondarily on semantic grounds.

Distinctions

1. Proper/Non-proper

Nouns which cannot be pluralized and do not go with quantitative adjectives and proadjectives are Proper nouns. Proper nouns always refer to the name of a specific object or group of objects, animate or inanimate.

Examples:

ram	name of a male person
sagarmatha	Mt. Everest

2. Countable /Measure/ Non-countable

Countable nouns can be pluralized, may take a numeral adjective obligatorily with a classifier and never go with the quantitative adjective /ali(kati)/ "little". Non-countable nouns can go with the quantitative adjective /ali(kati)/, but can neither be pluralized nor go with a numeral adjective. Measure nouns share certain qualities with Countable nouns and certain other qualifies with Non-countable nouns yet differ from both in certain other qualities. Like Countable nouns they do not go with the quantitative adjective /ali(kati)/ and like Non-countable nouns they cannot be pluralized but unlike both they take the numeral adjective obligatorily without classifier. What has traditionally been called Collective nouns are also included in this group.

Examples:

Countable nouns :	keṭa-heru	boys
	dui-janakeṭa(haru)	two boys
Non-countable nouns :	pani	water
	ris	anger
Measure nouns :	dui mana	two manas
	tin kos	three koses
	ek jhuppa	one bunch

<u>Note</u> 1 mana = 1/2 litre (approximately)

1 kos = 2 miles (approximately)

3. <u>Human / Non-human</u>

Human nouns take the classifier /-jana/ whereas the Non-human nouns take the classifier /-(we)ṭa/ whenever they are numeralized.

<u>Examples</u>	dui-jana keṭa(-haru)	two boys
	dui-(we)ṭa kukur(-haru)	two dogs

The kinship terms, however, take both the classifiers /-jana/ and /-(we)ṭa/ as free variants in informal situations, e.g.

<u>dui-jana</u> - <u>dui-(we)ṭa</u> chora(-haru) two sons

4. <u>Male / Female</u>

Declinable adjectives and verbs show Gender concord with Human nouns in Singular Number, e.g.

ramro keṭa	handsome boy	ramri keṭi	pretty girl
ram ramro cha	Ram is handsome.	sita ramri chin	Sita is pretty.

ram	[aũcha	Ram	[comes	sita	[aũchin	Sita	[comes
	ayo		came		ain		came
	aula]		will come]		aulin]		will come]

2.1.2. Pronouns

Pronouns are a small closed subclass of nominals. Pronouns may be divided into the following six types.

1. Personal,
2. Demonstrative,
3. Interrogative,
4. Relative,
5. Reflexive, and
6. Indefinite

1. Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns make a three-fold distinction of Person: first, second and third.

Plural suffix /-haru/ is optionally affixed in first person plural form.

The first person plural form /hami/ is also used in singular sense but this is restricted to the king and queen only.

The first person plural form is used in both the senses: inclusive and exclusive; the context reveals the sense in which it is used.

The second person pronouns show five distinct gradations of honour corresponding to the following five different forms:

i) Extra-intimate form,
ii) Intimate form,
iii) Honorific form,

iv) Extra-honorific form and

v) Royal form

Of these the first two are Non-honorific forms the distinction between which is more of degree than of kind.

These five varieties have their corresponding verbal agreeing forms, one and the same being used for both (iv) and (v).

i) The Extra-intimate form is used
   (a) among very intimate friends
   (b) to well acquainted children
   (c) to servants and other socially inferiors

ii) The intimate form is used
   (a) among intimate friends and acquaintances
   (b) by higher age-group to lower age-group when the latter need not be honoured
   (c) to servants and other socially inferiors

iii) The Honorific form is used
   (a) on all formal occasions
   (b) to socially superiors and superiors in age in informal occasions
   (c) as an honorific on all occasions

iv) The Extra-honorific form is used, particularly in the communities of Shahs and Ranas, to superiors commanding respect.

v) The Royal form is used only and obligatorily to the king, queen and other members of the royal family. The royal family while addressing others uses (i), (ii) or (iii) variety, never (iv) or (v) variety.

The third person pronouns make Human/Non-human distinctions the former of which further makes a three-fold honorific distinction: Non-honorific, Honorific and Royal. These forms have their corresponding agreeing verb forms.

Anaphoric pronominal forms are available for the first and second persons as well as the third person human non-honorific pronouns. Locative adverb /wahã:/ 'there' and /mausaph ~ sarkar ~ mausuph sarkar/ are used for the third person human honorific and royal forms respectively. In formal situations Locative adverb /yahã/ is used in free variation with / tapaĩ/ for the second person honorific.

The formal distinctions between the following pairs are neutralized:

i) King-Queen variety and Ordinary variety in IP pl.

ii) Extra-intimate variety and Intimate variety in IIP pl.

iii) IIP and IIIP of Royal variety

iv) One of the two free variants of IIIP Human, Non-Honorific variety and IIIP Non-human variety

Paradigm of personal pronouns

Person	Variety	Sg.	Pl.
I	King-Queen	hami	hami(-haru)
	Ordinary	ma	hami(-haru)

Person	Variety	Singular	Plural
II	Ext Int	tã	timi-haru
	Int	timi	timi-haru
	Hon	tapaĩ - yahã	tapaĩ-haru - yahã-haru
	Ext Hon	hajur	hajur-haru
	Royal	mausaph - sarkar - mausuph sarkar	mausaph-haru - sarkar-haru - masuph sarkar-haru
III Hum	Non-Hon	u - tyo	uni-haru - tini-haru
	Hon	wahã	wahã-haru
	Royal	same as II	same as II
Non-Hum		tyo	tini-haru

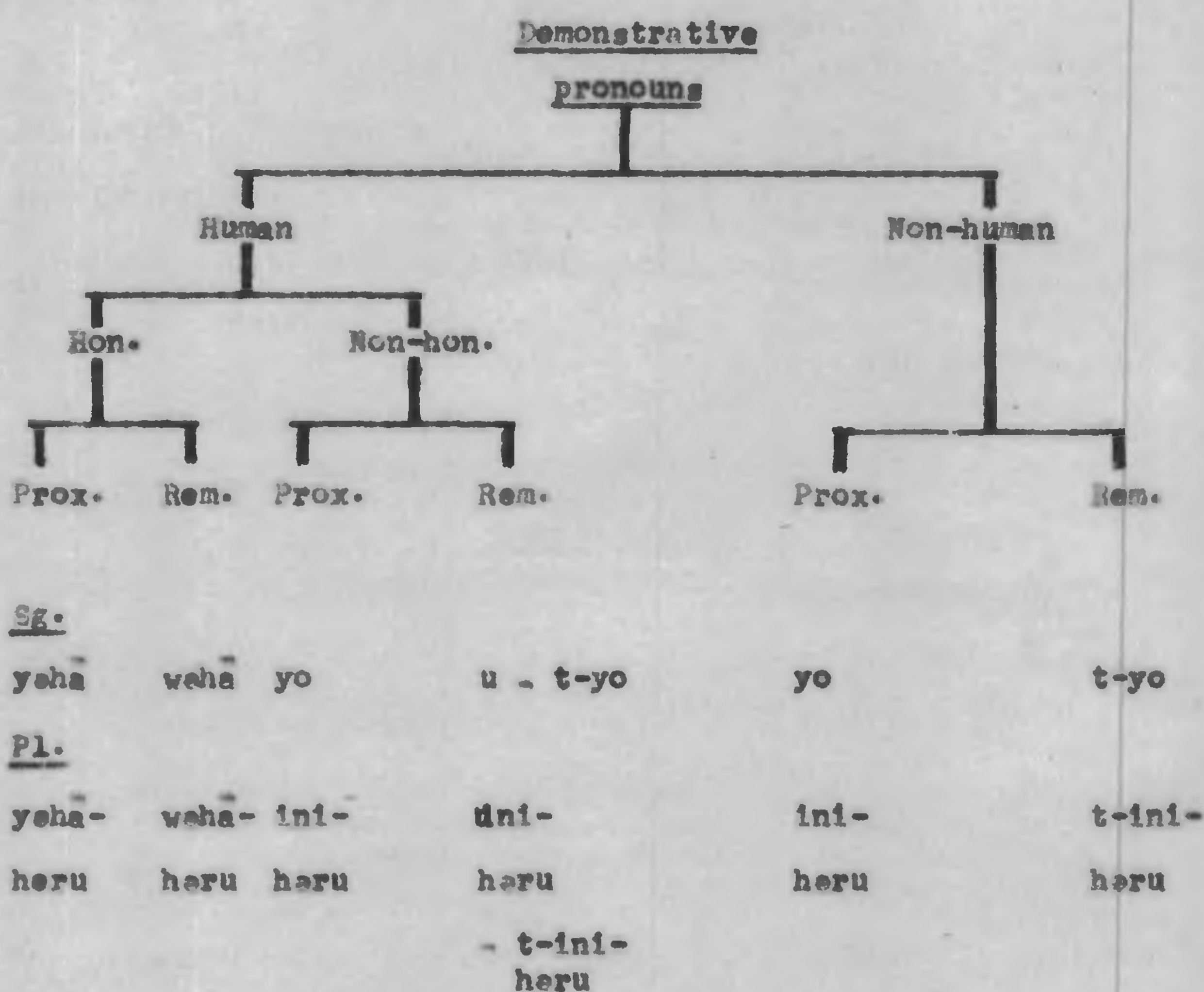
2. Demonstrative pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns make Human / Non-human distinction the first of which also makes Honorific / Non-honorific distinction and all of them, in turn, make Proximate / Remote distinction. Besides the differences in their formal shapes Honorific Demonstrative Pronouns differ from their Non-honorific counterparts in verbal concord as well.

Locative adverbs /yahã/ 'here' and /wahã/ 'there' are used as Honorific Demonstrative Pronouns.

Excepting these honorific forms, Proximate is not overtly marked; Remote is marked by /t-/.

The following diagram illustrates the demonstrative pronouns:



Sg.					
yehā	wehā	yo	u ~ t-yo	yo	t-yo
Pl.					
yehā-heru	wehā-heru	ini-heru	uni-heru ~ t-ini-heru	ini-heru	t-ini-heru

3. Interrogative and Relative pronouns

Interrogative and Relative pronouns are of two types: General and Specific of which the former makes Human/Non-human distinction. Reduplication of the singular form gives the plural form.

Interrogative

	Sg.		Pl.
General	ko	who?	ko-ko
	ke	what?	ke-ke
Specific	kun	which?	kun-kun

Relative

	Sg.	Pl.
General	jo	jo-jo
	je	je-je
Specific	jun	jun-jun

4. Reflexive pronouns

These pronouns do not mark the person distinction overtly. They have the same person as that of the personal pronoun that precedes them in larger constructions. There are only two reflexive pronouns: /aphu/ and /apas/ of which the former makes no Number distinction and usually occurs with the emphatic particle /-ai/ and the latter is used only in reciprocal sense; reduplication of the former also gives reciprocal sense.

Examples: timi pahile aphu asal hou

First you yourself be good

tyo aph-ai ayo

He himself came (Emphatic)

hamiheru apes-ma - aphu-aphu(-ma) jhagada garne hunna

We should not quarrel among ourselves.

5. Indefinite Pronouns

Indefinite pronouns make Human/Non-human distinction. Number distinction is usually marked by verbal concord.

Examples:	Human	kohi	some person(s)
	Non-human	kehi	some thing(s)

manis-heru kisim-kisim ka hunchen kohi asel hunche kohi kherab hunche

Men are of various kinds; some one is good, some one bad.

manisheru kisim-kisim ka hunchen kohi asel hunchen kohi kherab hunchen

Men are of various kinds; some are good, some bad.

kohi aema — if some [person comes / persons come]

timilai kehi cahiema — if you need [something(sg) / something(pl)]

Sometimes the plural is also marked by optional reduplication, e.g.

kohi (kohi) kherab hunchen — some are bad

When these pronouns occur with the particle /pani/ they

carry negative implication of "nobody" or "nothing" and they always take the verb in negative form,

e.g. kohi pani a-ena — nobody came

kehi pani bha-ena — nothing happened

When these pronouns are reduplicated with the particle /na/ infixed between the two they carry affirmative implication, singular sense and emphatic force,

e.g. kohi-na-kohi — some one or other

kehi-na-kehi — some thing or other

Some other indefinite pronouns are:

Sg.		Pl.	
--		sab ~ sabai	all
aru	another one	aru-aru ~ aruharu	other ones

phalano / phalani	someone indefinite	male / female	phalana-phalana	so & so

6. Allomorphic alternations of pronouns

The following paradigm shows the allomorphic alternations of Pronouns:

Pronouns		1	2	3	4	5
ma	I	ma	mai	ma	ma	ma
hami	we	ham	hami	hami	hami	hami
tã	you(Ext.Int.)	ta	taĩ	tã	tã	tã

<u>Pronouns</u>

		1	2	3	4	5
timi	you (Int.)	tim	timi	timi	timi	timi
u	he	us	us - ul	us - ul	us - u	u
uni	she	un	un	un	un - uni	uni
yo	this	es	es - el	es - el	es	yo
tyo	that/he	tes	tes - tel	tes - tel	tes	tyo
jo	that(Ref.Pn.)	jas	jas - jal	jas - jal	jas	jo
ko	who(Int.Pn.)	kas	kas - kal	kas - kal	kas	ko

Column 1 occurs before the Postp. /ko / ro/ "genitive", e.g. me-ro my/mine.

Column 2 occurs before the Postp. /le/ "actor", e.g.
/mai-le/ I (subject) / by me

Column 3 occurs before the Postp. /lai/ "patient/undergoer", e.g.
/ma-lai/ (to) me

Column 4 occurs before the Postp. /ma/mathi/baṭe/ "on/upon/through" e.g. /ma-baṭe/ through me

Column 5 occurs elsewhere, i.e. when the Pn. occurs alone or before other Postp. like /sita/saṅga/nira/tira/ "with(possesive/ commitative)/near/towards", e.g. /ma-tira/ towards me.

Pronouns other than those included above have no allomorphic alterants.

<u>Exception</u>

{aphu} 'self'------/aph/ before /-no/ 'Genitive'
/aphu/ elsewhere.

2.1.3. Adjectives

Adjectives qualify nouns. Normally they occur immediately before the noun they qualify or, as a predicative complement, immediately after the subject in copular constructions like Subject + adjective + VCop. They morphologically inflect and systematically function as nouns when the latter is deleted.

Adjectives may be divided into three groups on the basis of the Interrogative Proadjectives they correspond to:

Adjectives	Corresponding Interrogative Proadjective	
1. of Quality	kasto	of what kind?
	katro	how big?
2. of Quantity	keti	how many/much?
3. of Identity	ko	who?
	ke	what?
	kun	which?

1. Adjectives of Quality

The major bulk of adjectives belong to this type.

Examples:	ramro	beautiful	kalo	black
	aglo	tall	amilo	sour
	ṭhulo	big, large	asal	good
	alchi	idle, lazy		

These adjectives fall into two broad groups: Declinable and Non-declinable the former of which show Gender (Fem. Vs. Non-Fem.) and Number (Sg. Vs. Pl.)agreement with nouns.

Examples

Declinable

san-i keṭi	small girl
san-o [keṭa / ghar]	small [boy / house]
san-i - san-a keṭi-haru	small girls
san-a [keṭa-haru / ghar-haru]	small [boys / houses]

Non-declinable

asal [keṭi / keṭa / ghar]	good [girl / boy / house]
asal [keṭi-haru / keṭa-haru / ghar-haru]	good [girls / boys / houses]

Note For declension of adjectives refer to 4.1.3.

2. Adjectives of Quantity

These adjectives consist of cardinal numerals (which will be often described simply as numeral adjectives) and a few other adjectives, e.g.

i) Cardinal Numerals:

ek	1		dui	2	
tin	3		car	4	
pãc ~ pan	5		cha	6	
sat	7		aṭh	8	
nau	9		das	10	
bis	20		tis	30	
calis	40		pacas	50	
saṭhi	60		sat(ə)ri	70	
as(s)i	80		nəb(b)e	90	
sae	10^2		hajar	10^3	
lakh	10^5		karoṛ	10^7	
arab	10^9				
eghara	11	1 + 10	bara	12	2 + 10
tera	13	3 + 10	cauda	14	4 + 10
pandra	15	5 + 10	sora	16	6 + 10
satra	17	7 + 10	athara	18	8 + 10
unnais	19	-1 + 20			

car hajar sat sae tin — Four thousand seven hundred and three

ii) A few other Adjectives of Quantity:

kam ~ thorai	less
dherai	much, many, more
ali(kati)	a little
jam(m)ai ~ sabai	whole, all
kehi	a few, some

3. Adjectives of Identity

This sub-class includes Ordinal numerals and certain other adjectives.

i) Ordinal Numerals.

These are derived from cardinal counterparts, e.g.

pahilo	first	dosro	second	tesro	third
pācaũ	fifth	aṭhaũ	eighth	dasaũ	tenth

ii) Other adjectives of Identity are:

jetho	first	mailo	second	sãilo	third
kãilo	fourth	thãilo	fifth	kancho	last

These adjectives are used only to refer to kinship terms. They have usually three-fold distinction:

jetho the eldest mailo the middle kancho the youngest

They show Gender agreement with nouns, e.g.

Male: (a) Senior than ego

kanch-e ~ kanch-a ba — youngest uncle

(b) Junior than ego

kanch-o chora — youngest son

Female: kanch-i chori — youngest daughter

kanch-i swasni — youngest wife

kanchi-ama — Fa youngest BrWi; Fa 2nd Wi

Nouns and Pronouns, together with the following Postp /k-C/, also function as adjectives of identity, e.g.

nepal-ko raja — the king of Nepal

me-ro chori — my daughter

3.1.4. Proadjectives

Proadjectives, like Pronouns, are a small closed subclass of nominals. They may be (1) Demonstrative (2) Interrogative (3) Relative, or (4) Indefinite, each of which, in turn, may be (a) of quality (b) of quantity, or (c) of identity.

1. Demonstrative

i) of Quality:

	Sg.		Pl.	
Proximate	esto	this kind of	esta	these kind(s) of
Remote	testo	that kind of	testa	those kind(s) of

ia) of Size:

	Sg.		Pl.	
Proximate	yetro	of this size	yetra	of these sizes
Remote	tetro	of that size	tetra	of those sizes

ii) of Quantity:

Proximate	eti	this many/much
Remote	teti	that many/much

iii) of Identity:

yo	this	i	these
tyo	that	ti	those

Note: Personal pronouns also may function as proadjectives of identify, i.e.

hami bidyarthiharu	we students
u manche	that man

2. Interrogative

i) of Quality:

kasto	of what kind?	kasta	of what kinds?

ia) of Size:

katro	of what size?	katra	of what sizes?

ii) of Quantity:

Countable	Human	katijana	how many?
	Non-human	katiwaṭa	how many?
Non-countable		kati(mana etc.)	how much?

iii) of Identity:

		Sg.	Pl.	
General	Human	ko	ko-ko	who?
	Non-human	ke	ke-ke	what?
Specific		kun	kun-kun	which?

3. Relative

i) of Quality:

	Sg.	Pl.	
	jasto	jasta	of the kind(s) mentioned
ia) of Size:	jatro	jatra	of the size(s) mentioned
ii) of Quantity:	jati		as many/ much as

iii) of identity:

		Sg.	Pl.	
General	Human	jo	jo-jo	who ?
	Non-human	je	je-je	what?
Specific		jun	jun-jun	which?

4. Indefinite

i) of Quality:

jastosukai — of whatever kind

ia) of Size:

jatrosukai — of whatever size

ii) of Quantity:

jatisukai — whatever amount/quantity

iii) of Identity:

General	Human	josukai	whoever
	Non-human	jesukai	whatever
Specific		junsukai	whichever

	Sg.	Pl.	
Human	koi	koi-koi	some one
Non-human	kei	kei-kei	something
Specific	kunai	kunai-kunai	any one/ any thing

2.1.5. Classifiers

Nepali has two sets of classifiers which can be functionally described as (1) Adjectival and (2) Adverbial.

1. Adjectival:

This classifier, together with the quantitative adjective or proadjective that precedes it, functions as an AP. This class comprises only two classifiers —/jena/ and /(wa)ṭa/ — of which the former goes with Human nouns and the latter with Non-human nouns, e.g.

dui-jena manis(heru) two men dui-(wa)ṭa mec(heru) two chairs

Kinship terms in informal occasions take both /jena/ and /(wa)ṭa/ as free variants, e.g. dui jena - dui-(wa)ṭa swasni(heru) two wives

2. Adverbial:

This classifier, together with the quantitative adjective or proadjective that precedes it, functions as an AdvP of frequency, e.g. dui-paṭek/palṭa/coṭi/baji/khep etc. two times

2.1.6. A Note on Verbal Nouns and Adjectives:

Some of the non-finite verbal forms syntactically function as nouns and adjectives.

Noun: A verb in infinite form functions as a non-countable noun, e.g. dhãṭ-nu pap ho Lying is a sin.

Adjective: A verb in prospective, perfective and progressive forms functions as an adjective, e.g.

uḍ-ne sarpa	flying snake/the snake that flies
uḍ-eko caṅga	flying kite/the kite that flew
naciraheki keṭi	dancing girl/the girl that is dancing

2.2. Verbs

Verbs are those stems which inflect for Mood and Aspect. In their finite forms they function as foci of sentences.

From the point of view of syntactic function verbs may be classified into the following ten groups:

1. Copulative
2. Patient-Copulative
3. Intransitive
4. Patient-Intransitive
5. Semitransitive
6. Patient-Semitransitive
7. Transitive
8. Ditransitive
9. Transitive-Factitive
10. Ditransitive-Factitive

2.2.1. Copulative Verbs

These verbs describe the Subject in some way. They link the Subject with the Predicative Complement. The Subject is always an NP; the Predicative Complement may be an NP, an AP, an NP-ma or an NP-ko.

Semantically the NP-Complement identifies the Subject NP; the AP-Complement describes the quality or condition, the NP-ma Complement describes the condition and the NP-ko Complement specifies the owner of the Subject NP.

Examples

Subject	Pr.Comp.	V-Cop.	
NP	NP	V	
ram	mero chora	ho	Ram is my son.
ram	mantri	bhayo	Ram became a minister.
NP	AP	V	
ram	asal	cha	Ram is good.
ram	cintit	cha	Ram is worried.
NP	NP-ma	V	
ram	dubidha-ma	che	Ram is in dilemma.
NP	NP-ko	V	
yo kalam	ram-ko	ho	This pen is Ram's.

2.2.2. Patient-Copulative Verbs

These verbs link the embedded Copular construction (i.e., Subject + Pr. Complement construction, the copulative verb being obligatorily deleted) with the Patient. Semantically the content of the copular construction is something experienced by or relative to the Patient.

The Subject is always an NP; the Predicative Complement may be an AP or an NP; the Patient may be an NP-lai or NP-ko. AP Complement and NP-ko Patient do not cooccur; NP-Complement and NP-lai Patient do not cooccur either.

The positions of the Patient and the Subject are interchangeable.

Examples:

Pt.	Subject	Pr.Comp.	V-pt.Cop.
NP-lai	NP	AP	V
ma-lai	tyo raṅ	ramro	lag-yo
I-to	that colour	beautiful	felt

I felt that colour beautiful.

NP-ko	NP	NP	V
ram-ko	u	bhai	parche
Ram-to	he	younger brother	is related

He is related to Ram as his (Ram's) younger brother.

Positions of the Patient and the Subject interchanged:

Subject	Patient	Pr.Comp.	V-pt.cop.
tyo raṅ	malai	ramro	lagyo
u	ram-ko	bhai	parche

2.2.3. Intransitive Verbs

These verbs refer to an action, event or a state of being and are not goal directed. The Subject is always an NP.

Examples

ram royo	Ram wept/cried.
pani paryo	Rain fell (It rained).
bacca ḍarayo	The child got frightened.

2.2.4. Patient-Intransitive Verbs

These verbs (of experience or undergoing, existence, need etc.) take a Patient in addition to a Subject.

Semantically they describe something (expressed by the Subject) which befalls or is experienced or owned by the Patient.

The Subject is always an NP; the Patient may be an NP-lai or an NP-ko.

Examples:

Patient	Subject	V-Pt.Intr.	
malai	bhok/ḍar	lagyo	I felt hungry/ I got frightened.
I-to	hunger/fear	befell	
malai	peṭ	dukhyo	I felt stomach pain.
I-to	stomach	pained	
malai	pai-sa	cahiyo	I needed money.
I-to	money	is needed	
malai	thaha	bhayo	I came to know.
I-to	knowing	became	
malai	ciṭṭha	paryo	I won a lottery.
I-to	lottery	befell	
mero	dui choraharu/gharharu	chan	I have two sons/ I have two houses.
I-won	two sons/ houses	are	
sitako	chora	bhayo	Sita gave birth to a son.
sita-won	son	became	

ramsaṅge	dherai paisa	cha	Ram has a lot of money.
Ram-in-possession	a lot of money	exist	

yauṭa hatma	pāc aũla	hunchan	A hand has five fingers.
in one hand	five fingers	exist	

2.2.5. Semitransitive Verbs

These verbs, in addition to the Subject, take a Residual Complement which may be an Adverb of motion, an Adverb of Place or a source.

The subject is always an NP; the Residual Complement may be an NP (which, however, functions as an adverbial). PP (which may or may not function as an adverbial) or an adverb.

Examples:

Subject	Res.Comp.	V-semitr.	
ram	ghar	gayo	Ram went home.
bacca	timidekhi	darayo	The child became afraid of you.
ram	rukhbata	khasyo	Ram fell from the tree.
ram	usaṅge	ladyo	Ram quarelled with him.
ram	gharma	cha	Ram is at home.
iswar	jatatatai	cha	God is everywhere.

2.2.6. Patient-Semitransitive Verbs

These verbs take a Patient besides the Subject and the Residual Complement.

Semantically they describe something that befalls or is experienced by the Patiant. The Subject expresses that something which has a source expressed by the Residual Complement.

The Subject is always an NP; the Residual Complement is a PP (which can function as a source); the Patient, as above, may be an NP-lai or an NP-ko.

The positions of the Patient and Residual Complement can be interchanged.

Examples.

Patient	Res-Comp.	Subject	V-pt.Semitr.
malai	ram dekhi	dar	lagcha
I-to	Ram-from	fear	feel

I am afraid of Ram.

mero	ramsita	jhagada	bhayo
I-to	Ram-with	querrel	occured

I had a quarrel with Ram.

2.2.7. Transitive Verbs

These verbs refer to an action and are goal-directed. They, in their Simple Past form, take the Subject in the NP-le form and the Object in the NP form or the NP-lai form according to the following rules:

Rule 1.

Some transitive verbs take only animate objects; these objects are always in the NP-lai form, e.g.

Subject	Object	V-tr.	
ram-le	bina-lai	ruwayo	Ram caused Bina to weep.
ram-le	bina-lai	sutayo	Ram caused Bina to sleep.
ram-le	bina-lai	tarsayo	Ram frightened Bina.

<u>Rule 1(a)</u>

Some transitive verbs which take only animate objects take them in the NP-lai form alone if they are Proper nouns but in the NP form or the NP-lai form optionally if they are Non-proper nouns,

<u>example</u>

ram-le	binalai	maryo	Ram murdered Bina.
ram-le	bagh ~ bagh-lai	maryo	Ram killed a tiger.

<u>Rule 2</u>

Some take only inanimate objects; these are always in the NP form, e.g.

ram-le	jhyal	kholyo	Ram opened the window.
ram-le	mec	bhacyo	Ram broke the chain.
ram-le	gilas	phuṭalyo	Ram broke the glass.

<u>Rule 3</u>

Some are capable of taking either of the two - animate or inanimate objects -; the animate objects are in the NP form or the NP-lai form as free variants, but the inanimate ones are in the NP form e.g.

ram-le	ghar	dekhyo	Ram saw the house.

ram-le	bina ~ binalai	dekhyo	Ram saw Bina.
bagh-le	becca ~ beccalai	khayo	The tiger ate the baby.
bagh-le	masu	khayo	The tiger ate the flesh.

2.2.8. Ditransitive Verbs

These verbs, like the transitive verbs, take an object (goal). In addition they take a Residual Complement which may be a human undergoer, a source, an adverb of Motion or an adverb of Place.

The Subject is realized in the same form as it is realized with Transitive Verbs; the Object is usually an NP; the Residual Complement may be an NP (which, however, functions as an adverbial), a PP (which may or may not function as an adverbial) or an adverb.

Examples

Subject	Res.Comp	Object	V-Ditr.	
ramle	malai	kalam	diyo	Ram gave me a pen.
ramle	masita	timro nam	sodhyo	Ram asked me your name.
ramle	mabaṭa	phaida	uṭhayo	Ram made a profit through me
ramle	rukhbaṭa	yauṭa ãp	ṭipyo	Ram plucked a mango from the tree.
ramle	malai	tar	paṭhayo	Ram sent me a telegram.
ramle	usita	sahayata	magyo	Ram asked him for help.

Subject	Object	Res.Comp.	V-Ditr.	
ramle	malai	puna(ma)	paṭhayo	Ram sent me to Poona.
ramle	sabai paisa	pokharima	phyãkyo	Ram threw all the money into the pond.

Subject	Object	Res.Comp.	V-Ditr.	
ramle	kalam	khaltima	rakyo	Ram put the pen into the pocket.
ramle	baccalai	koṭhama	thunyo	Ram locked the child in the room.

2.2.9. Transitive-Factitive Verbs

These verbs describe the quality, identity or condition of the Object as perceived or affected by the Subject. Besides a Subject and an Object they take a Complement which is predicative to the Object (not to the Subject).

The Subject occurs in NP-le form; the object in NP-lai form (if animate) or in NP-lai in free variation with NP form (if inanimate); and the Predicative Complement in NP, AP, NP-ma or NP-ko form.

The NP Complement identifies the Object; the AP-Complement describes the quality or condition, the NP-ma Complement describes the condition and the NP-ko complement specifies the owner of the Object.

Examples

Subject	Object	Pred.Comp.	V-Fac.
usle	malai	pulis	(bhan)thanyo/samjhyo

He thought that I was a policeman.

Or He took me to be a policeman.

usle	malai	mantri/parisrami	banayo

He made me a minister/hardworking.

Subject	Object	Pred.Comp.	V-Fac.
usle	malai	niras	paryo

He made me disheartered (He discouraged me).

usle	malai	dubidama	paryo

He put me in dilemma.

usle	yokalam	ram-ko	(bhan)thanyo

He thought that this pen was Ram's. OR

He took this pen to be Ram's.

hitarle	kotha - kothalai	nyano	banaũcha/parcha/garcha

Heater makes the room warm.

pirle	malai	dublo	paryo

Worriness made me thin.

usle	ramlai	dosi	ṭhaharayo

He proved Ram (to be) guilty.

3.2.10. Ditransitive-Factitive Verbs

These verbs, like the Di-transitive verbs, take an object together with a Residual Complement. At the same time, like Transitive-Factitive Verbs they take an Object-Predicative Complement as well. (In English, in most of the cases, the sense conveyed by the Predicate Complement and the Di-factitive verb (in Nepali) are together conveyed by a single verb.)

The subject occurs in NP-le form, the Object and the Predicative Complement in NP form, and the Residual Complement in PP form.

<u>Examples</u>

Subject	Res.Comp.	Object	Pr.Comp.	V-DiFac.
maile	usite	gahena	bandaki	rakhe
I	he-with	ornament	pawning	kept

I pawned the ornament with him.

nyayadhisle	uslai	das rupia	jaribana	garyo
judge	he-to	ten rupees	fine	did

The judge fined him ten rupees.

usle	mabaṭa	des rupia	phaida	uṭhauyo
he	I-from	ten rupees	profit	gained

He profitted ten rupees from/through me.

usle	ramlai	dosi	sabit	garyo
he	Ram-to	guilty	proof	did

He proved Ram to be guilty, OR

He proved (that) Ram was guilty.

2.3. Particles

Particles are the residual class consisting of those stems which always stand as free forms and never into inflectional constructions. Syntactically they belong to one or more out of a number of small closed sets. They may be conveniently divided into the following sub-classes:

1. Adverbs and Proadverbs,
2. Intensifiers and Prointensifiers,
3. Postpositions,
4. Conjunctions,
5. Prosententials,
6. Sentence qualifiers,
7. Emphatic particles,
8. Negative particles,
9. Question particles,
10. Quotative particles and
11. Expletive particles

2.3.1. Adverbs and Proadverbs

They modify verbs. Semantically they are of the following sub-types: (The Proadverbs are shown separately under each sub-type).

1. of Place

		Pro-adverbs	
agaḍi	'front'	kahā	'where?'
pachaḍi	'back'	yahā	'here'
maṭhi	'above'	wahā - tehā	'there'

		Proadverbs	
tala	'below'	kahī	'somewhere'
muni	'under'	kata	'which side?'
bhitra	'in'	yata	'this side'
bahira	'out'	uta	'that side'
ṭaḍa	'far'	katai	'somewhere'
najik	'near'		
para	'far(that side)'		
wara	'near(this side)'		

2. of Time (point, length and frequency of time)

		Proadverbs	
agi/pahile	before		
pachi	after	kaile	When?
car baje	at 4 O'clock	uile	then?
aja	to-day	aile	now
hijo	yesterday	katibaje	what time?
bholi	tomorrow		
sādai	always		
kaile kaī	occasionally		
barobar	frequantly		
barambar	again and again		
pheri	again		
dui palṭa	two times		

3. of Manner

		Proadverbs	
bistarai	slowly, lightly	kasari	how
chiṭo	quickly	yasari	in this manner
turunta(i)	immediately	tasari	in that manner
jhaṭṭa(i)	at once		
acanak ~	suddenly		
akasmat			
ramrari	well		

4. of Degree

(Intensifiers, which are also a sub-group of adverbs of Degree, are treated separately.)

pani alikati umlyo — water boiled a little

usle sakbhar ~ sakesamma kosis garyo

He tried | his best.
| as far as possible.
| to the fullest degree or extent.

Proadverbs:	kati	how much?
	eti	this much

5. of Circumstance

taipani	even then
lagi	for

2.3.2. Intensifiers and Prointensifiers

They occur immediately preceding the verbs, adjectives and adverbs they intensify, e.g.

u	[dherəi / sarəi / jyadəi / əsad(d)e / khub / cəupəṭəi / əudi / ekdəm]	royo	He cried very bitterly.
u	jhən(jyada)royo		He cried still more.
u	sarəi əsəl chə		He is very good.

Prointensifier

u	kəti cə̃do hĩḍchə	How quickly he walks !
təti	saro nəkəra	Don't shout that/so loudly.

The intensifier /bilkuləi/ which is used only in negative constructions mean (not) at all, e.g.

u	bilkuləi rũdəinə	He does not cry at all.
u	bilkuləi ramro chəinə	He is not handsome at all.

2.3.3. Postpositions

Postpositions occur after nouns, pronouns, adverbs, nonfinite verb forms, other postpositions and adjectives if the following noun is deleted. They act as the axes of postpositional phrases and the whole postpositional phrase may function as an NP, AP or AdvP.

Examples

anusar, bamojim, mutabik	according to
-kana	after (occurs only with nonfinite verb)
k-C	of
-kahā	at the place of
-kheri ~ khera	at the time of
jhaĩ; jasto	like
tarpha; tira; patti	towards
dekhi(n)	from.....(to)
dwara	through (some agent/means)
nimti ~ nimit(t)a, lagi	for
purbak	with (some abstract noun)
nira; najik	near
pakha	near about(time)
pari	beyond
-bit(t)ikai	as soon as (occurs only after prospective form)
bad	after (time)

baṭa	from; out of
bare	about
bhəri	full of; whole
ma	on; in; at
lai	to (= objective case ending)
le	by; with (= ergative case ending)
səṅ(g)ə; sita	along with; in (s.o's) possession
sath	with; as soon as
sibae; bahek	except
samma	(from).....to
bhitrə	inside
bahire	outside
mathi	above, over, on top of
muni	below, under, beneath
əgi; əgaḍi	before
pəchi, pəchaḍi	after

2.3.4. Conjunctions

Conjunctions may be coordinating or subordinating. Coordinating conjunctions join two or more words, phrases or coordinate classes whereas subordinating conjunctions join only clauses at least one of which is subordinate.

1. Coordinating

re	and
ki ..... ki	either ... or

athaba - ba	or
pani ... pani	not only ... but also
na(ta) ... na	neither ... nor
tara	but
	etc.

2. Subordinating

edi	if
-ma; -bhane; -dekhi	if
ki	that
	etc.

2.3.5. Prosententials

Prosententials may consist of a single word or a phrase but function as a complete sentence. They are also known as minor sentences. They may be grouped into the following sub-types :

1. Responsive,
2. Exclamatory,
3. Vocative,
4. Question tags and
5. Initiators

1. Responsive

They occur in an answer to a call, e.g.

i) hẽ/hajur

S_1:	e Kamala	O Kamala!
S_2:	[hẽ / hajur]	[Yes / Yes (Hon)]

ii) ho/hoina/cha/chaina etc.

S_1:	u cor ho	Is he a thief?
S_2:	[ho / hoina]	[Yes / No]

iii) huncha/has/naĩ etc.

S_1:	bholi au hai	Come tomorrow, O.K.?
S_2:	[hunche - la / has / naĩ]	[O.K.(I will come) / O.K.(I will come)(Hon) / No (I won't come)]

iv) ẽ/hajur(Hon): It is used by the listener, often unconsciously, to indicate that he is monitaring the speaker and therefore, he wants the speaker to continue further.

v) ani and then? (interruption)

S_1:	u ayo mecma basyo	He came in, sat in the chair
S_2:	ani	and then?

2. Exclamatory:

aha !	(delight, pleasure)
syabas !	well done! (Compliment, praise)
ammai !	(Surprise, fear)
appa !	(Sudden burning)
dhikkar !	(disappointment, disapproval)
dhat !	(dislike, abuse)
cup !	(annoyance, irritation)
satte !	(swearing)

etc.

3. Vocative:

Human: e [daju / bahini / ama] O [brother! / sister! / mother!]

Non-human:	a kur kur a	Calling a dog
	ce ca	asking a dog to chase or drive away someone, or something

4. Question Tags

i) hagi - hogi

hijo u royo hagi - hogi

He cried yesterday, didn't he?

ii) hai - la

chito au [hai / la]	Come quickly, will you?

iii) tala ko hã	Who is down there?
timi royau ta	Did you cry?
u maryo reho	It is said that he died, is it true?

5. Initiators

khai-khai ~ khoi-khoi, e.g.

khai-khai chodnuste

Move aside, give way. or

Please, let me go.

2.3.6. Sentence Qualifiers

They modify the sentence as a whole and normally occur at the beginning of a sentence. They may consist of a word, a phrase or a clause, e.g.

saed	perhaps
sake	if(someone) can
hunebae	if possible
kura kebhane	what the matter is
bastab ma	in fact
sacai	really
sacai bhanne ho bhane	to tell you the truth
tesobhae	in that case/if so

2.3.7. Emphatic Particles

Emphatic particles occur immediately following a base which is emphasized. In case of a reduplicated base they occur between the two parts of it.

i) i/ei/nei

bhitre-i	inside/in (emphatic)
me-i	I (")
master-ei	teacher (")
bau-nei	father (")

ii) -ei-

cor-ei-cor	thieves and only thieves

iii)	matrei	only
iv)	peni	also
v)	ne	
	khau ne	eat! (emphatic)
vi)	samma peni	even

usle aphule laeko jutta samma peni becne chodene
He didn't refrain from selling even the shoes he wore.

2.3.8. Negative Particles

ne 'not'

jau	Go!	ne-jau	Don't go!
cha	is	chai-na	isn't

2.3.9. Question Particles

1. Rising intonation of the final word ; e.g.

u auche	He will come.
u auche	Will he come?

2. In addition to (1) the particle /ke/ may precede the sentence, e.g.

ke u auche	Will he come?

3. re (question + doubt)

S_1: u cor ho	He is a thief.
S_2: ho re	Really? (but I doubt.)

2.3.10. Quotative Particles

re

u bholi aunne re

he tomorrow come-not quotative particle

[Someone says / It is said that] he won't come tomorrow.

2.3.11. Expletive Particles

Expletive particles, by virtue of their being an expression of a habitual utterence, may occur at any position (but not within a word) in an utterance. They have no meaning in the context of the utterance (hence an empty morph) though taken individually outside the context they may have some meaning. Different people use different sets of expletives. Some of the frequently used ones are:

Expletive particles	Literal meaning
tepaiko	your
mane	meaning
caine	needful
yane	(no meaning)

2.4. Stem-Class Homonymy

Stem-class homonyms are those stems which are different morphemes with related meanings belonging to different stem-classes but having identical forms. Nepali has a few instances of such homonymy.

Illustrations

1.	Noun	Pronoun
sarkar	government	you, he (Royal variety)

2.	Noun	Verb
khel	game	play
khoj	search	search
cor	thief	steal
cal	movement	move
chap	imprint	print
jit	victory	win
taul	weight	weigh
dabau	pressure	supress
nap	measurement	measure
nac	dance	dance
paḍ	fart	fart
bheṭ	meeting (not gathering)	meet
mag	demand	demand, beg

mut	urine		urinate	
lekh	piece of writing		write	
har	defeat		lose	
3.	<u>Noun</u>	<u>V-Non-Fin</u>		<u>Adjective</u>
oḍhne	shawl	wear (shawl etc.) (prospective)		one who wears (shawl etc.)
4.	<u>Pronoun</u>	<u>Proadjective</u>		<u>Question Particle</u>
ke	what	what		(cf. 5.3.5.3.)
5.	<u>Pronoun</u>		<u>Proadjective</u>	
səb(əi)	all		all	
yo	this		this	
tyo	that		that	
ərko	next		next	
6.	<u>Noun</u>	<u>Adjective</u>		<u>Postposition</u>
bərabər	equal	equal		like, equal to
7.	<u>Adjective</u>		<u>Intensifier</u>	
dherəi	much, many		very	
8.	<u>Proadjective</u>		<u>Prointensifier</u>	
kəti	how much/many		how (intensely)	
əti	this much/many		this (intensely)	
9.	<u>Proadjective</u>		<u>Postposition</u>	
jəsto	the kind of		like	
10.	<u>Verb</u>		<u>Responsive Prosentential</u>	
ho	be		yes (affirmative)	

11.	Responsive Prosentential	Question Tag
lə	response in affirmative	inviting
hə̃	response to a call	enquiry to a call
12.	Adverb	Postposition
bhitrə	in	in, into, inside
bahirə	out	outside, out of
əgaḍi/əgi	before	in front of, before
pəchaḍi/ pəchi	behind, afterwards	behind, after
13.	Proadverbs	Postposition
kəhã	where	at the place of
14.	Verb-Intransitive	Verb-Transitive
selau	become cool	make cool
bol	speak	speak (s.th.)
15.	Personal Pn	Demonstrative Pn
u/tyo	he, it	that

CHAPTER THREE

STRUCTURAL CLASSIFICATION OF NEPALI STEMS

Structurally Nepali stems are either simple or complex. Simple stems are monomorphemic roots that can stand by themselves as stems. Complex stems are formed through derivation, composition or reduplication.

3.1. Simple Stems

Simple stems are mostly monosyllabic or disyllabic.

u	he	aja	to-day
ma	I	bholi	tomorrow
ā̃p	mango	parsi	day after tomorrow
ma	in, on, at	dherai	very, much
ra	and	pani	water
kan	ear	asal	good
kha	eat	najik	near
lekh	write	baṭa	from

3.2. Derived Stems

These stems are derived from bases by means of affixation or modification. The affix may be a prefix or a suffix ; the modification may be vocalic or consonantal or both. The bases may be stem-free roots or stem-bound roots.

In the listings below the commonest and most productive affixes will be taken note of primarily; the listings are not intended to be exhaustive.

3.2.1. Prefix-derived Stems

ə- "lacking in; without" (Productive)

gyan (N)	knowledge	ə-gyan (N)	ignorance
səntos (N)	satisfaction	ə-səntos (N)	dissatisfaction
mər (V)	die	ə-mər (Adj)	immortal

ən/ənə- "lacking in; without"

acar (N)	conduct	ən-acar (N)	ill conduct
mol (N)	price	ənə-mol (Adj)	priceless

ənu- "according to, following"

sasən (N)	rule	ənu-sasən (N)	discipline

əpə- "bad"

jəs (N)	credit	əpə-jəs (N)	discredit
man (N)	honour	əpə-man (N)	insult

əbhi- "over"

man (N)	honour, respect	əbhi-man (N)	arrogance, pride

u- "up"

cal (V)	move	u-cal (V)	lift

upa- "vice-, under-, sub-" (Productive)

sabhapati (N)	chairman	upa-sabhapati (N)	Vice-chairman
sacib (N)	secretary	upa-sacib (N)	under-secretary

ku- "bad; wrong" (Productive)

bela (N)	time	ku-bela (N)	bad time
bicar (N)	thought	ku-bicar (N)	bad thought

dur- "bad"

ghaṭ(a)na (N)	event	dur-ghaṭ(a)na(N)	accident
acar (N)	conduct	dur-acar (N)	evil conduct

ni- "without, -less" (Productive)

rogi (Adj)	diseased	ni-rogi (Adj)	healthy
ḍar (N)	fear	ni-ḍar (Adj)	fearless

punar- "again, re-"

janma (N)	birth	punar-janma(N)	rebirth

pra- "forward"

gati (N)	speed	pra-gati (N)	progress
darsan (N)	appearance	pra-darsan (N)	exhibition

prati- "per" (Productive)

din (N)	day	prati-din	per day
byakti(N)	person	prati-byakti	per person

bad- "bad"

nam (N)	name, fame	bad-nam	disrepute

bi- "forth"

ses (N)	remaining	bi-ses (Adj)	special
bhag (N)	part	bi-bhag (N)	Department

be- "devoid of"

iman (N)	honesty	be-iman (Adj) ~ be-man	dishonest
swad (N)	taste	be-swad (Adj)	tasteless'

sa- "good"

phel (N)	fruit	sa-phel (Adj)	successful

har- "every"

din (N)	day	har-din (Adv)	everyday
ek (Num)	one	har-ek (Adj)	everyone

3.2.2. <u>Suffix-derived Stems</u>

1. <u>Noun Stems</u>

i) Noun + Suffix ------- Noun

-aḍi "doer" (Productive)

Base /a/ ------- Ø

khel	game	khel-aḍi	player
juwa	gambling	juw-aḍi	gambler

-ai "relating to"

Base /a/ ------- /ə/

kam	work	kəm-ai	earning

-an "relating to"

sir	head	sir-an	head-end of a bed

-ar "one who deals in"

sun	gold	sun-ar	goldsmith

-ək "agent"

prəkas	light	prəkas-ək	published

-ari "one who does..."

Base /a/ ------- ∅

bhikh	begging	bhikh-ari	beggar
puja	worship	puj-ari	priest

-alo "person relating to"

khet	farm	khet-alo	hired labourer
goṭh	cowshed	goṭh-alo	shephard

-i "a native of" (Productive)

nepal	name of a country	nepal-i	a native of Nepal
japan	name of a country	japan-i	a native of Japan

-iar "instrument related to"

Base /a/ ------- /ə/

hat	hand	hət-iar	weapon

-inda "relating to"

bas	shelter	bas-inda	resident

-auli "relating to"

Base /a/ ------- Ø

purkha	ancestor	purkh-auli	ancestory

-kar "doer" (Productive)

kəla	art	kala-kar	artist
citrə	painting	citrə-kar	painter
git	song	git-kar	lyricist

-gər "doer"

jadu	magic	jadu-gər	magician

-giri "state"

neta	leader	neta-giri	leadership
gunḍa	goonda	gunḍa-giri	goondaism

-ci "addicted to"

aphim	opium	aphim-ci	addicted to opium

-je "this occurs only with ba 'father'"

ba	father	ba-je	grand-father

-ji "honorific suffix" (Productive)

guru	teacher	guru-ji	teacher(hon)
sarma	a surname	sarma-ji	Sharma(hon)

-ta "state"

satru	enemy	satru-ta	enmity
mitra	friend	mitra-ta	friendship

-baj "addicted to"

randi	prostitute	randi-baj	one who visits prostitutes
raksi	liquor	raksi-baj	drunkard

-le but le ----- e / C-"an inhabitant of" (Productive)

gaũ	village	gaũ-le	villager
pasal	shop	pasal-e	shopkeeper
patan	name of a place	patan-e	an inhabitant of Patan

-iya /"person from; doer"

Base /a/ ------- 0

pahaḍ	mountain	pahaḍ-iya	mountain dweller
jhagaḍa	quarrel	jhagaḍ-iya	one who fights

ii) Adjective + Suffix ------- Noun

-i "state" (Productive)

garib	poor	garib-i	poverty
calakh	clever	calakh-i	cleverness

-yaĩ "state"

Base /ə/ ------- 0

duṣṭə	evil	duṣṭ-yaĩ	eviliness
dhurtə	cunning	dhurt-yaĩ	cunningness

-ali "state"

Base /o/ ------- 0

həriyo	green	həriy-ali	greenness

-as "state"

Base /o/ ------- 0

miṭho	tasty	miṭh-as	sweetness

-ta "state" (Productive)

murkhə	foolish	murkhə-ta	foolishness
sundər	beautiful	sundər-ta	beauty

iii) Numeral + Suffix ------- Noun

-mi "the th day"

pəncə	five	pəncə-mi	fifth day
səptə	seven	səptə-mi	seventh day

-a "of card"

Base /a/ ----- /ə/; Base final C ----- CC

ek	one	ekk-a	one of card or dice
sat	seven	sətt-a	seven
aṭh	eight	əṭhṭh-a	eight

-ak "collectivizer"

das	ten	das-ak	decade

-ta "state"

ek	one	ek-ta	unity

iv) Verb + Suffix ----- Noun

-ak "doer" (Productive)

Base gau ------- gay

lekh	write	lekh-ak	writer
gau	sing	gay-ak	singer

-na "relating to"

kha	eat	kha-na	food
samjha	remember	samjha-na	remembrance

-ai "the act of V-ing" (Productive)

Base /a/ ------- /a/

khel	play	khel-ai	playing
bhan	say	bhan-ai	saying
bun	knit	bun-ai	knitting
kaṭ	cut	kaṭ-ai	cutting

-a "relating to"

chap	print	chapa	printed thing
cal	move	cal-a	behaviour

-au "act of Ving"

cun	elect	cun-au	election
bac	be safe	bac-au	safety

-auna "instrument to V"

khel	play	khel-auna	toy

-auri "relating to"

jit	win	jit-auri	tip (because of winning in gambling)

(v) Adverb + Suffix ------- Noun

-ia "belonging to"

base /a/ ------- 0

bhitra	in, inside	bhitr-ia	belonging to the inner circle, especially of palace

-uwa

Base /i/ ------- 0

agi	front	ag-uwa	leader, precursor

-bin "instrument"

dur	far	dur-bin	telescope, binoculars

vi) Phonesthetic Base + Suffix ----- Noun

-u

huss	huss-u	fog, mist

-era

kecc	kec-era	eye-mucus

-ka ~ ko

jhill	jhil-ka ~ jhil-ko	spark

-elo ~ eli

suss	sus-elo ~ sus-eli	whistling

-e

sul-sul	sul-sul-e	a tiny insect

2. <u>Adjective Stems</u>

1) Noun + Suffix ------- Adjective

-el "characterized by"

Base final /u/ ------- /y/

sit	dew	sit-el	cool

-eswi "characterized by"

tej	brightness	tej-eswi	bright

-ayesi "relating to"

ghar	house	ghar-ayesi	related to house-hold

-alu "full of" (Productive)

Base final /a/ ------- Ø

dud	milk	dud-alu	milky (cow etc.)
dəya	kindness	dəy-alu	kind
maya	love	may-alu	loving
bikh	poison	bikh-alu	poisonous

-alo "characterized by"

bhir	precipice	bhir-alo	sloppy

-i "inflicted with; possessing" (Productive)

dhən	wealth	dhən-i	rich
rog	disease	rog-i	diseased
pap	sin	pap-i	sinner

-ik "relating to" (Productive)

Base final /V/ ------- Ø

Base non-final /ə-, i, u/ ------- /a, ai, au/

ərthə	money	arth-ik	economic
səmaj	society	samaj-ik	social
itihas	history	aitihas-ik	historical
buddi	wisdom	baudd-ik	intellectual
kəlpəna	imagination	kalpən-ik	imaginary

-it "inflicted with; possessing"

Base final /V/ ------- Ø

dukhə	trouble	dukh-it	troubled

-in "full of, characterized by"

Base final /V/ ------- ø

reṅ - raṅg	colour	raṅg-in	colourful
sokh	fondness	sokh-in	fond

-iye "relating to; worthy of" (Productive)

Base final /e/ ------- ø

rastre	nation	rastr-iye	national
anukaran	emulation	anukaran-iya	worthy to be emulated

-aniya "worthy of"

Base final /a/ ------- ø

man	honour	man-aniya	respectful
prasamsa	praise	prasams-aniya	praise worthy

-iya "having characteristics of"

bajar	market	bajar-iya	of market

-iyar "full of"

hos	sense	hos-iyar	careful

-ilo "full of"

swad	taste	swad-ilo	tasty
nun	salt	nun-ilo	salty

-elu "of"

ghar	house	ghar-elu	domestic

-eli "full of"

jun	moonlight	jun-eli	moonlit

-suṭe "addicted to"

Base final /a/ ------- 0

kura	talk	kur-suṭe	talkative

-sule "characterized by"

sun	gold	sun-sula	golden

-tmak "full of"

srijana	creation	srijana-tmak	creative
racana	construction	racana-tmak	constructive

-nak "full of"

Base final /a/ ------- 0

khatera	danger	khatar-nak	dangerous

-man "possessing"

buddi	wisdom	buddi-man	wise

-wal "possessing" (Productive)

paisa	money	paisa-wal	wealthy
casma	spectacles	casma-wal	one wearing spectacles

ii) Adjective + Suffix ------- Adjective

-co

Base final /o/ ------- Ø

lamo	long	lam-co	elongated

-ti

kam	less	kam-ti	less

iii) Numeral + Šuffix ------- Adjective

-ai

Base aḍa ----- aḍ

tin ----- tih

car ----- cauth

aḍa	half	aḍ-ai	two and a half
tin	three	tih-ai	one-third
car	four	cauth-ai	one-fourth

-aũ (Productive)

car	four	car-aũ	fourth
bis	twenty	bis-aũ	twentieth
hajar	thousand	hajar-aũ	thousandth; thousands of

-bar

dui, tin, car ------- do, te, cau

dui	two	do-bar	two times
tin	three	te-bar	three times
car	four	cau-bar	four times

-oro

dui ------- d

ek	one	ek-oro	one sided; foolishly persistent
dui	two	d-oro	two sides; bilateral

-lo

ek	one	ek-lo	alone

iv) Verb + Suffix ------- Adjective

-əku

ləḍ	fight	ləḍ-əku	fighter

-it

Base /ə, e/ ------- /ə, i/

thək	be tired	thək-it	tired
lekh	write	likh-it	written

-ilo

hə̃s	laugh	hə̃s-ilo	smiling
ə̃ṭ	dare, venture	ə̃ṭ-ilo	daring
bhər	fill	bhər-ilo	full

-əiya

pəḍ	read, study	pəḍ-əiya	studious

-uwa

Base /a/ ------- /ə/

bhag	run away	bhəg-uwa	one who runs away

-auro

ghum	turn	ghum-auro	zig-zag

-ce

ro ------- run (cf. Rules 5 & 6 of 4.2.3.)

ro	cry, weep	run-ce	one who easily cries

v) Adverb + Suffix ------- Adjective

-ai

Base final /ə/ ------- ø

pərə	far	pər-ai	stranger

-i

Base final /ə/ ------- ø

bhitrə	inside	bhitr-i	inner
bahirə	outside	bahir-i	outer

-llo

wərə, pərə, tələ ------- wə, pə, tə

mathi	above	mathi-llo	of above
agi	front	agi-llo	of front
pəchi	back	pəchi-llo	of back
wərə	near	wə-llo	of near
pərə	far	pə-llo	of far
tələ	down	tə-llo	of dawn

vi) Phonesthetic Base + Suffix ----- Adjective

-kilo

camm	cam-kilo	shining

-e

jhil-mil	jhil-mil-e	colourful and bright

3. <u>Verb Stems</u>

i) Noun + Suffix ----- Verb

-au

Base /a/ ------- /ə/

ris	anger	ris-au	be angry
ḍar	fear	ḍar-au	be afraid of
laj	shyness	laj-au	be shy

ii) Adjective + Suffix ------- Verb

-au

Base /o/ ------- Ø

dublo	thin	dubl-au	be thin

iii) Verb + Suffix ------- Verb

a)-au "causativize" (Highly Productive)

Base /a/ ----- /ə/,

Base final /V/------- /w/

dhelk	to tilt	dhelk-au	to cause to tilt

sut	to sleep	sut-au	to cause to sleep
khol	to open	kol-au	to cause to open
bac	to save(Vtr.)	bac-au	to cause to save
cin	to recognise	cin-au	to cause to recognise
parkh	to wait	parkh-au	to cause to wait
cor	to steal	cor-au	to cause to steal
pit	to beat	pit-au	to cause to beat
sun	to hear	sun-au	to cause to hear
taul	to weigh	taul-au	to cause to weigh
gar	to do	gar-au	to cause to do
bhan	to say	bhan-au	to cause to say
hãs	to laugh	hãs-au	to cause to laugh
kha	to eat	khw-au	to cause to eat
ro	to weep	rw-au	to cause to weep

b) -yau "causativizer"

dobr	to fold(intr)	dobr-yau	to cause to fold
ikh	to be envious	ikh-yau	to cause to be envious

c) au ~ al "causativizer"

pas	to enter	pas-au ~ pas-al	to cause to enter
khas	to fall	khas-au ~ khas-al	to cause to fall
bas	sit	bas-au ~ bas-al	to cause to sit

d) -lau "causativizer"

Base final /o/ ------- /u/

si	to stitch	si-lau	to cause to stitch
pi	to drink	pi-lau	to cause to drink
dho	to wash	dhu-lau	to cause to wash

e) -el "no significant change in meaning"

cop	to immerse	cop-el	to immerse
pir	to nag	pir-el	to nag
pis	to grind	pis-el	to grind

Note: 1. Some verbs do not have causitivized form at all, e.g.,

au	to come
ja	to go

2. Some verbs do not occur in root forms at all. They always occur in their stem form.

*sel	sel-au	to cool(intr. or tr.)
*ar	ar-au	to ask S.O. to do S.th.

iv) Adverb + Suffix ------- Verb

-yau

Base final /V/ ------- ∅

bhitre	inside	bhitr-yau	to make S.O. enter
pachi	behind	pach-yau	to follow

v) Phonesthetic base + Suffix ----- Verb

-au

gun-gun	gun-gun-au	to hum
khaṭ-khaṭ	khaṭ-khaṭ-au	to knock
bhuṭ-bhuṭ	bhuṭ-bhuṭ-au	to mutter
chaṭ-paṭ	chaṭ-paṭ-au	to pant
phar-phar	phar-phar-au	to flutter (e.g., a flag)

-kar

phaṭṭ	phaṭ-kar	to speak loudly & arrogantly
jhaṭṭ	jhaṭ-kar	to jerk

-k

ṭall	ṭal-k	to glitter
jhall	jhal-k	to shine

4. Adverb Stems

i) Noun + Suffix ------- Adverb

-inda

sal	year	sal-inda	every year
roj	day	roj-inda	every day

-eni

Base final /a/ ------- ∅

barsa	year	bars-eni	per year

-aũ

din	day	din-aũ	every day

ii) Adjective + Suffix ------- Adverb

-ari

Base final /V/ ------- 0 ; C ------- CC ~ C

ramro	beautiful	ramr-ari	well
bes	good	bess-ari ~ bes-ari	very

iii) Numeral + Suffix ------- Adverbs

-ile

Base ek ----- pa

ek	one	pa-ile	first

-asi

Base final C ------- CC

ek	one	ekk-asi	suddenly

-kaḍa

sae	hundred	sae-kaḍa	percent

iv) Adverb + Suffix ------- Adverb

-aḍi 'no change in meaning'

Base final /i/ ------- 0

agi	ag-aḍi	before, in front of
pachi	pach-aḍi	after, back

v) Phonesthetic base + Suffix ----- Adverb

-ti

sərr	sər-sər-ti	going through rapidly, cursorily

3.2.3. Modification-derived Stems

1. Verb Stems

Verb base ------- Causativized stem

i) (C)VCC ------- (C)VCaC (Productive)

uphr	to jump	uphar	to cause to jump
umr	to grow(intr.)	umar	to cause to grow
utr	to climb down	utar	to cause to climb down
orl	to come down	oral	to cause to come down
uml	to boil(intr.)	umal	to cause to boil
pəgl	to melt(intr)	pəgal	to cause to melt
big4	to spoil(intr)	bigar	to cause to spoil
nikl	to come out	nikal	to cause to come out
səpr	to flourish	səpar	to cause to flourish

ii) CəC ------- CaC (Productive)

mər	to die	mar	to cause to die
bəl	to burn(intr)	bal	to cause to burn
sər	to shift(intr)	sar	to caust to shift
cəl	to move	cal	to cause to move
jhər	to drop	jhar	to cause to drop
gəl	to melt	gal	to cause to melt

iii) CuC ------- CoC

muḍ	to turn(intr)	moḍ	to cause to turn
khul	to open(intr)	khol	to cause to open

iv) Cuṭ ------- Coḍ

chuṭ	to leave(intr)	choḍ	to cause to leave
tuṭ	to break(intr)	toḍ	to cause to break

v) Cuṭ ------- Coḍ ~ Cor

phuṭ	to break(intr)	phoḍ ~ phor	to cause to break
juṭ	to assemble	joḍ ~ jor	to cause to assemble

vi) Single cases

bik	to be sold	bec	to sell
phaṭ	to tear(intr)	cyaṭ	to tear(tr)

3.3. <u>Composite Stems</u>

A composite stem is formed through the combination of at least two bases optionally with derivative affixes or Gender markers.

Composite stems may be classified as

1. Endocentric
   a) Subordinating
   b) Coordinating
2. Exocentric

3.3.1. Subordinating Endocentric Stems

1. Noun Stems

i) N-attribute + N-head ------- Noun

raj-kaj ruling-work	ruling
des-sewa country-service	service to the country
ghar-bhaḍa house-rent	house rent
ghar-jwaĩ house-son-in-law	son-in-law who lives in father-in-law's house
ban-bhoj forest-feast	picnic
maṅgal-bar Mars-day	Tuesday
griha-mantri home-minister	home-minister
yubak-saṅgaṭhan youth-organization	youth organization
sahitya-samsthan literature-institution	literary institution

caritre-nirman character-building	character building
iskul-master school-teacher	school teacher
mentri-gen minister-body	body of ministers
chatre-berge student-body	body of students
bal-kebi child-poet	child poet
logne-manche husband-man	man
swasni-manche wife-man	woman
raja-hãs ----- rajhãs king-goose	swan
bidya-dhen knowledge-wealth	wealth of knowledge
ãkha-jhyal ----- ãkhi/jhyal eye-window	window with eyelike openings

ii) Adjective + Noun ----- Noun

jethi-swasni elder-wife	elder-wife
durgem-sthan backward-place	backward place
sastriya-sangit classical-music	classical music
rastriya-bhasa national-language	national language
maila-ba middle-father	middle-uncle i.e. uncle second in rank
budhi-aula old(female)-finger	thumb
tello-kotha lower-room	lower room

iii) Numeral + Noun ------- Noun

tin-kos three-kos	three kos (1 kos = 2 miles approx)
ada - bato half-way	half of the way

2. Adjective Stems

i) Noun + Adjective ------- Adjective

rat-ando ----- ratando night-blind	night blind, i.e. blind in the night
gahũ-goro wheat-white	as white as wheat
krisi-pradhan agriculture- of prime-importance	agriculturally rich

ii) Pronoun + Adjective ------- Adjective

swe-calit self-moving	automotive

iii) Numeral + Adjective ------- Adjective

ada-baise ---- adabaise half - of youngage	middle-aged

3.3.2. Coordinating Endocentric Stems

1. Copulative

Noun + Noun + ------- Noun

jhaḍa-banja diarrhoea-vomit	cholera
chora-chori son - daughter	son and daughter

daju-bhai — brothers
elder Br younger Br

bheḍa-bakhra — sheep and goat
sheep goat

Adjective + Adjective ------- Adjective

janne-sunne — wise and experienced
one who knows one who hears

2. <u>Cumulative</u>

Noun + Noun ------- Noun

lobh-lalac — greediness
greed-greed

laj-seram — a sense of shyness
shyness shyness

dhen-doulat — wealth
wealth wealth

dan-dherme — charity works
charity religion

Verb + Verb ------- Noun

lekh-ped — study
to write to read

Adjective + Adjective ------- Adjective

jeṭho-baṭho	experienced and respected
elder-clever	

3. <u>Alternative</u>

Numeral + Numeral ------- Numeral

ek-dui	one or two
one-two	
bis-paċis	between twenty and twenty-five
twenty-twenty-five	

4. <u>Contrastive</u>

Noun + Noun ------- Noun

dukha-sukha	misery and happiness; ups and downs
misery-happiness	
jiwan-maran	life and death
life - death	

5. <u>Appositive</u>

Noun + Noun ------- Noun

krisna - bhagawan	Lord Krishna
Krishna-god	
moṭar-kar	car
a four-wheeler-car	

3.3.3. Exocentric Stems

Adjective + Noun ------- Noun

lamo + khuṭṭa ------- lamkhuṭṭe		mosquito
long	leg	

Numeral + Noun ------- Noun

cau +	baṭo	a place where fourways meet
four	way	

Noun + Adjective ------- Adjective

nak +	cuce	havinga sharp nose
nose	sharpedged	

Numeral + Adjective ------- Adjective

dui +	jibre	unreliable(or one whose words can't be relied upon)
two	tongue	
car +	kune	an object having square shape
four	cornered	

Noun + Verb ------- Adjective

makhi +	cus	close-fisted, stingy
fly	suck	

Noun + Particle ------- Adjective

caritre +	hin	corrupt
character	without	

3.4. Reduplicated Stems

These stems are compounds of a base and its duplication which may be modified or unmodified. The base may be phonesthetic or non-phonesthetic.

3.4.1. Non-phonesthetic Reduplicated Stems

1. Unmodified Reduplication

ke	what	ke + ke	what (pl)
ko	who	ko + ko	who (pl)
eti	this much	eti + eti	this much (repetative)
raṭo	red	raṭo + raṭo	1.(only) red (ones) 2.reddish
		ra:ṭo + ra:ṭo	shining red
khãda	when S.O. ate (Non-future)	khãda + khãda	eating continuously and for a long time
pachi	after; behind	pachi + pachi	afterwards; immediately - closely behind
aphu	self	aphu + aphu	among oneself (pl)
ek	one	ek + ek	one (at a time); one (each); all, sparing none
adi	half	adi + adi	half (each)

2. Modified Reduplication

(1) (C)V... ----- (C)V... + sV... (with nouns)(Productive)

gaph	gossip	gaph + saph	gossip & things alike
ghar	house	ghar + sar	house & things alike

cya	tea	cya + sya	tea & things alike
alu	potato	alu + salu	potato & things alike

(ii) CaC ----- CaC + CuC (only with some verb bases) (Productive)

kaṭ	cut	kaṭ + kuṭ (N)	cutting
cyaṭ	tear	cyaṭ + cuṭ (N)	tearing
caṭ	lick	caṭ + cuṭ (N)	licking
ṭal	mend leakage	ṭal + ṭul (N)	mending leakage

(iii) CVC ------- CVC + CaC, where V ≠ a (with verb bases) (Productive)

cor	steal	cor + car (N)	stealing
pol	burn, roast	pol + pal (N)	burning, roasting
tir	pay back	tir + tar (N)	paying back
bec	sell	bec + bac (N)	selling

(iv)

bas	sit	bas-i + bas-ai	sitting (N)
sut	sleep	sut-i + sut-ai	sleeping (N)

(v)

ghaṭ	decrease	ghaṭ-i + ghaṭ-au	decreasing (N) (comparatively)
baḍ	increase	baḍ-i + baḍ-au	increasing (N) (as in an auction)

(vi)

mukka	fist	mukka + mukki	fisticuff
ghussa	blow	ghussa + ghussi	boxing

(vii)

mar	kill	mar-a + mar-i	fighting
dekh	see	dekh-a + dekh-i	before all present

(viii)

rat	night	rat-a-rat	before the night ended
bhag	run away	bhag-a-bhag	running away
kaṭ	cut	kaṭ-a-kaṭ	fighting withweapons

(ix)

chora	son	chor-ei-chora	sons (exclusively)
din	day	din-din-ei	daily
khāda	when S.O. ate (non-future)	khāda-khād-ei	while eating

(x)

aph-	self	a + aph-	selves
kas-	whom	ke + kes	whom (pl)

3.4.2. Phonesthetic Reduplicated Stems

Phonesthetic bases are reduplicated to derive most of the adverbs of manner, e.g.

kwā + kwā	bitterly (weeping)
twal + twal-ti ~ kwar + kwar-ti	hard(gazing)
hwal + hwal-ti	profusedly (bleeding)
phaṭ-a + phaṭ	quickly (walking)
sūkke + sūkke	in the manner of (sobbing)
jham + jham	heavily (raining)

3.5. A Note on Numerals

From the point of view of their structure Nepali (cardinal) numerals can be divided into two groups : Simple and Composite. The decades 20, 30, ...90 could be possibly treated as derived from 2,3,...9 respectively. But such a treatment is avoided here as it leads to complications. These decades are also treated as simple numerals.

1. Simple Numerals

Nepali has the following simple numerals :
1 to 10; 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90; 10^2, 10^3, 10^5, 10^7, 10^9.
The allomorphs of each of these numerals are as follows:

(1)	/egha/	/ -10, e.g.,	egha-ra	1 + 10 = 11
	/eka/	/ -20,50 e.g.,	eka-is	1 + 20 = 21
	/ek/	/ elsewhere, e.g.	ek-tis	1 + 30 = 31
			ek	1
			ek sae	one hundred
			ek sae ek	one hundred and one
			sawa ek	1/4 + 1 = 1+1/4
(2)	/ba/	/ -10,20,50,60 e.g.	ba-re	2 + 10 = 12
	/ba/	/ -30,70, e.g.	ba-tis	2 + 30 = 32
	/bay/	/ -40,80,90, e.g.	bay-asi	2 + 80 = 82
	/dui/	elsewhere, e.g.	dui	2

{ 3 }	/te/	/ -10,20,30,	e.g.,	te-re	3 + 10 = 13
	/triy/	/ -40,80,90,	e.g.,	triy-asi	3 + 80 = 83
	/tri/	/ -50,60,70,	e.g.,	tri-saṭhi	3 + 60 = 63
	/tin/	elsewhere	e.g.,	tin	3
{ 4 }	/cau/	/ -10,20,70	e.g.,	cau-bis	4 + 20 = 24
	/caũ/	/ -30,60,	e.g.,	caũ-tis	4 + 30 = 34
	/caw/	/ -40,50,	e.g.,	caw-alis	4 + 40 = 44
	/caur/	/ -80,90,	e.g.,	caur-asi	4 + 80 = 84
	/car/	elsewhere,	e.g.,	car	4
{ 5 }	/pand/	/ -10	e.g.,	pand-re	5 + 10 = 15
	/pac/	/ -20,50,70,80,	e.g.	pac-asi	5 + 80 = 85
	/pẽ/	/ -30,60,	e.g.,	pẽ-tis	5 + 30 = 35
	/pẽt/	/ -40,	e.g.,	pẽt-alis	5 + 40 = 45
	/panc/	/ -90,	e.g.,	panc-annabe	5 + 90 = 95
	/pãc/	elsewhere,	e.g.,	pãc	5
{ 6 }	/so/	/ -10,	e.g.,	so-re	6 + 10 = 16
	/chey/	/ -40,80,90	e.g.,	chey-asi	6 + 80 = 86
	/chei/	/ -60,70	e.g.,	chei-saṭhi	6 + 60 = 66
	/che/	elsewhere	e.g.,	che-bis	6 + 20 = 26
{ 7 }	/set/	/ -10,70,80	e.g.,	set-re	7 + 10 = 17
	/sata/	∅ -20,	e.g.,	sata-is	7 + 20 = 27
	/sẽ/	/ -30,	e.g.,	sẽ-tis	7 + 30 = 37
	/ser/	/ -40,60	e.g.,	ser-calis	7 + 40 = 47

	/senta/	/ -50, e.g.,	senta-unne	7 + 50 = 57
	/sent/	/ -90, e.g.,	sent-annebe	7 + 90 = 97
	/sat/	elsewhere e.g.,	sat	7
ǀ 8 ǀ	/aṭha/	/ -10,20, e.g.,	aṭha-re	8 + 10 = 18
	/er/	/ -30,40,60,e.g.,	er-tis	8 + 30 = 38
	/enṭha/	/ -50, e.g.,	enṭha-unne	8 + 50 = 58
	/əṭh/	/ -70,80 e.g.,	əṭh-əsi	8 + 80 = 88
	/ənṭh/	/ -90, e.g.,	ənṭh-annebe	8 + 90 = 98
	/aṭh/	elsewhere e.g.,	aṭh	8
ǀ 9 ǀ	/nau/	everywhere, e.g. (refer to 19,29 etc.)	nau	9
ǀ 10 ǀ	/re/	/ 1,2,3,5,6,7,8- e.g.	ba-re	2 + 10 = 12
	/de/	/ 4-, e.g.	cau-de	4 + 10 = 14
	/dəs/	elsewhere e.g.	dəs	10
ǀ 20 ǀ	/is/	/ less one -; 2,3,5,7,8-,e.g.	unne-is	-1 + 20 = 19
			ba-is	2 + 20 = 22
	/bis/	elsewhere, e.g.,	bis	20
ǀ 30 ǀ	/tis/	everywhere		
ǀ 40 ǀ	/alis/	/ 2,3,4,5,6-,e.g.	bey-alis	2 + 40 = 42
	/calis/	elsewhere e.g.,	calis	40
ǀ 50 ǀ	/cas/	/ less one-, e.g.	unan-cas	-1 + 50 = 49
	/unne/	/ 1,2,7,8- e.g.,	eka-unne	1 + 50 = 51

	/panne/	/ 3,5,6- e.g.,	tri-panne	3 + 50 = 53
	/anne/	/ 4-, e.g.,	caw-anne	4 + 50 = 54
	/pacas/	elsewhere, e.g.,	pacas	50
{ 60 }	/saṭhi/	everywhere.		
{ 70 }	/hatar/	/ less one-, 1 to 8-, e.g.,	ek-halar	1 + 70 = 71
	/satari/	elsewhere, e.g.,	satari	70
{ 80 }	/asi/	/ less one-; 1 to 8 e.g.,	ek-asi	1 + 80 = 81
	/asi/	elsewhere, e.g.,	asi	80
{ 90 }	/annabe/	/ less one-; 1 to 8-,e.g.,	ek annabe	1 + 90 = 91
	/nabbe/	elsewhere		

{ 10^2 } /sae/ { 10^3 } /hajar/ { 10^5 } /lakh/

{ 10^7 } /karoḍ/ { 10^9 } /arab/

In addition to these basic whole numbers, Nepali also has the following five basic fractions:

/sawa/ + 1/4; /saḍe - sare/ + 1/2; /paune/ -1/4;
/ḍeḍ/ + 1+1/2; /aḍai/ + 2+1/2

Of these only /sawa/, /ḍeḍ/ and /aḍai/ can occur by themselves or immediately before 10^2, 10^3, 10^5 etc., where

/sawa/ = 1+1/4, e.g., sawa rupiya 1+1/4 rupee
ded rupiya 1+1/2 rupee
aḍai rupiya 2+1/2 rupee

sawa see	1+1/4 hundred (= 125)	
ḍeḍ hajar	1+1/2 thousand(= 1,500)	
aḍai lakh	2+1/2 lakh	(250,000)

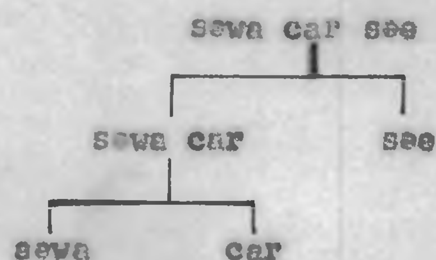
/saḍe/ and /paune/ can occur only with the numbers 1 to 99; /sawa/ also can occur with these numbers, e.g.,

sawa car	+ 1/4 + 4	= 4+1/4
saḍe car	+ 1/2 + 4	= 4+1/2
paune car	- 1/4 + 4	= 3+3/4

Similarly,

sawa car see	4+1/4 hundred	=	425
saḍe car see	4+1/2 hundred	=	450
paune car see	3+3/4 hundred	=	375

Note (i) The IC analysis of this construction is as follows:



(ii) All of these fractions are also used to refer to the hour of the day.

2. Composite Numerals

All the numerals other than the simple ones are the composite numerals of coordinating endocentric type.

<u>Examples</u>

egha-re	$1 + 10$	$= 11$
unan-tis	$-1 + 30$	$= 29$
ceũ-saṭhi	$4 + 60$	$= 64$
tin-sae	3×100	$= 300$
car-hejar	4×1000	$= 4000$

ek-lakh-car-hejar-tin-sae-sat

$1 \times 10^5 + 4 \times 10^3 + 3 \times 10^2 + 7 = 104307$

egha-re-karoḍ-unan-tis-lakh-ceũ-saṭhi-hejar-tin-sae-pac-asi

$(1 + 10) \times 10^7 + \{(-1) + 30\} \times 10^5 + (4 + 60) \times 10^3 + 3 \times 10^2$

$+ (5 + 80) = 11 \times 10^7 + 29 \times 10^5 + 64 \times 10^3 + 3 \times 10^2 + 85$

$= 112964385$

3.6. A Note on Causativization

We noticed in 3.2.2.3 and 3.2.3 that formally causativization in Nepali can be brought about through two different morphological processes:

1. through suffixation
2. through modification or internal change

Semantically also causativizations are of two types:

Type 1

to become s.th. + causativization ----- to do that th.

khul	to open(itself)	khol	to open s.th.
uml	to boil(itself)	umal	to boil s.th.
mar	to die	mar	to kill
bal	to burn(itself)	bal	to burn s.th.
khes	to drop(itself)	khesal ~ khesau	to drop s.th.

Type 2

to do something + causativization ----- to make s.o. do that th.

sut	to sleep	sutau	to make s.o. sleep
hā̃s	to laugh	hā̃sau	to make s.o. laugh
ro	to weep	rwau	to make s.o. weep
cal	to move	calau	to move s.o. or s.th.
cor	to steal	corau	to make s.o. steal
gar	to do	garau	to make s.o. do
bhan	to say	bhanau	to make s.o. say
kha	to eat	khwau	to make s.o. eat i.e. to feed

All the verbs at the left-hand side of Type 1 are intransitive whereas in Type 2 some of them (first four) are intransitive and some (last four) are transitive.

Causativization converts intransitive verbs into transitive ones and transitive verbs into ditransitive ones, e.g.

Intransitive Verb + Causativization ----- Transitive Verb

/bacca royo/	/usle baccalai rwayo/
The child cried.	He made the child cry.
/ḍhoka khulyo/	/usle ḍhoka kholyo/
The door opened.	He opened the door.

Transitive Verb + Causativization ----- Ditransitive Verb

/usle bhat khayo/	/usle malai bhat khwayo/
He ate rice.	He fed me rice.
/usle kam geryo/	/usle malai kam gerayo/
He did work.	He made me do work.
(He worked.)	(He made me work.)

CHAPTER FOUR

NEPALI INFLECTION

Stems (in Nepali) other than particles enter into inflectional constructions. Some of the inflectional markers (especially the gender markers in nouns) border on being derivative markers. An inflectional category is sometimes inherent in some stems while it is overtly expressed in others. For instance, Gender is inflectional in declinable nouns and adjectives whereas it is inherent in non-declinable ones. Person is inherent in nouns and pronouns, inflectional in verbs but irrelevant to adjectives.

4.1. Nominal Inflection

Nominal stems inflect for Gender (Non-feminine and Feminine) and Number (Singular and Plural). The traditional Case meanings are conveyed by bound postpositions like /le/ "by" /lai/ "to", /k-C/ "of", /ma/ "on", /baṭa/ "from" etc.

The nominal stem is first followed by gender inflection and then by number inflection.

4.1.1. Noun Inflection

1. Gender

Nouns make a two-fold distinction of Gender : Non-feminine and Feminine. Human female nouns belong to Feminine gender; all other nouns, including non-human female nouns, belong to Non-feminine gender.

The distinction is based primarily on i) Noun (as Subject) - Verb agreement, and ii) Adjective (as qualifier) - Noun (as qualified) agreement.

Examples

Non-feminine		Feminine	
[keṭa / gai / pasina] ayo	[boy / cow / sweat] came.	keṭi ain	girl came.
ramro [keṭa / gai / ghar]	nice [boy / cow / house]	ramri keṭi	nice girl

The Subject-Verb Gender agreement is suspended in Plural as well as Honorific forms, e.g.

[keṭa-heru / keṭi-heru] ae — [boys / girls] came.

[keṭa / keṭi] aunu bhayo — [boy / girl] came (Hon.).

There are some nouns which can be used both in Non-feminine and Feminine genders and whose gender is indicated by the accompanying verb or adjective, e.g.,

Non-Feminine	Feminine	
kalo sathi	kali sathi	black friend
sathi ayo	sathi ain	friend came

All the surnames belong to this group. Some of these nouns however take distinct Feminine-endings (as against the Non-feminine-ending Ø) when used to refer to a tribe or caste.

Apart from these all other nouns are either Non-feminine or Feminine. From the point of view of the Gender-endings they take these nouns can be divided into the following groups:

	Non-feminine declensions	(corresponding)	Feminine declensions
N_1	Ø		-
N_{11}	-		Ø
N_2	Ø		i
N_{21}	e		i
N_{22}	a		i
N_{23}	o		i
N_{24}	a ~ o		i
N_3	Ø		ni
N_{31}	e		ni

	Non-feminine declensions	(corresponding)	Feminine declensions
N_{32}	a		ni
N_4	Θ		ini
N_{41}	e		ini
N_{42}	a		ini
N_{43}	a		ini
N_5	Θ		ani
N_6	e		a
N_7	aju		u

N_1 This group consists of nouns that are inherently Non-feminine (hence take the Non-femine marker Θ) and have no formally associable Feminine counterpart. All non-human and some human male nouns belong to it.

Examples

bau	father	daju	elder Br
bhai	younger Br	bhinaju	elder SiHu
jwaĩ	DaHu; younger SiHu	mama	MoBr
manis	man	gai	cow
sãḍe	bull	ghar	house
hewa	air	ris	anger

N_{11} This group consists of nouns that are inherently Feminine and have no formally associable Non-feminine counterpart.

Examples

	ama	mother	didi	elder Si
	bahini	younger Si	bhauju	elder BrWi
	buhari	son's Wi; younger BrWi	maiju	MoBrWi
	nanda	Hu younger Si	aimai	woman
N_2	jeṭhan	Wi elder Br	jeṭhan-i	Hu elder BrWi
	bahun	M. Brahmin	bahun-i	F. Brahmin
	bahula	M. mad person	bahula-i	F. mad person
N_{21}	kal-e	M. person having black complexion	kal-i	F. person having black complexion
	chyakaṭ-e	M. person with marks of small-pox	chyakeṭ-i	F. person with marks of small-pox
N_{22}	kak-a	Fa younger Br	kak-i	Fa younger BrWi
	bhanj-a	Si son(of M.)	bhanj-i	SiDa (of M.)
	bhatij-a	Br son (of M.)	bhatij-i	BrDa (of M.)
N_{23}	boks-o	M. witch	boks-i	F. witch
	rand̩-o	sexy M. person	rand̩-i	prostitute
N_{24}	keṭ-a - keṭ-o	boy	keṭ-i	girl
	chor-a - chor-o	son	chor-i	daughter

	sal-a - sal-o	Wi younger Br	sal-i	Wi younger Si
	laṭ-a - laṭ-o	M. dumb person	laṭ-i	F. dumb person
	bahir-a - bahir-o	M. deaf person	bahir-i	F. deaf person
	lanaḍ-a - lanaḍ-o	M. lame person	lanaḍ-i	F. lame person
	andh-a - andh-o	M. blind person	andh-i	F. blind person
	kan-a - kan-o	M. one-eye blind person	kan-i	F. one-eye blind person
N_3	nati	grandson	nati-ni	grand-daughter
	nokar	servant	nokar-ni	maid-servant
	papi	M. sinner	papi-ni	F. sinner
	pulis	policeman	pulis-ni	police-woman
	kherdar	man with this rank	kherdar-ni	wife of kherdar
	magar	M. member of this tribe	magar-ni	F. member
	jyapu	M. member of this sub-caste among Newars	jyapu-ni	F. member
N_{31}	pasal-e	M. shopkeeper	pasal-ni	F. shopkeeper
N_{32}	mukhi-a	man with this rank	mukhi-ni	wife of mukhia
N_4	mit	M. bond-friend	mit-ini	F. bond-friend

(Note: Bond-friends can be had only among the same sex.)

N_{41}	cyam-e	M. sweeper	cyam-ini	F. sweeper; F. member
	poḍ-e	M. sweeper	poḍ-ini	F. sweeper; F. member
	medis-e	M. person from Tarai	medis-ini	F. member
	pakh-e	M. uncultured person	pakh-ini	F. uncultured person
N_{42}	subb-a	man with this rank	subb-ini	wife of subba
N_{43}	bisṭ-e	M. member of this sub-caste	bisṭ-ini	F. member
	dusṭ-e	M. evil person	dusṭ-ini	F. evil person
N_5	dewer	Hu younger Br.	dewer-ani	Hu younger BrWi
N_6	chatr-e	M. student	chatr-a	F. student
N_7	phuph-aju	FaSiHu	phuph-u	FaSi

Number

Nouns make a two-fold distinction of Number: Singular and Plural. Singular is unmarked; the plural marker is /heru/.

This distinction is established primarily on the basis of i) Noun (as subject)-Verb agreement and ii) Adjective (as qualifier)-Noun (as qualified) agreement.

Examples

Singular		Plural	
keṭa maryo	boy died	keṭaharu mare	boys died
ramro keṭa	nice boy	ramra keṭaharu	nice boys

From the point of view of number inflection nouns can be divided into the following four groups:

(i) Non-pluralizable Nouns

Proper nouns and non-countable nouns belong to this group.

Examples

ram	name of a M. person	pani	water
ris	anger	camal	uncooked rice

The plural marker /haru/ can be added to some of these nouns in which case the resultant forms mean not the plural of the noun in question but something like 'that noun and things alike',

e.g.	ram-haru	Ram and others
	camal-haru	rice and other things that go together or different varieties of rice

(ii) Plural Nouns

These nouns are always plural but they take the plural marker /haru/ only optionally. This group comprises cordinate copulative compound nouns and countable reduplicated nouns.

Examples

ama-babu	parents	daju-bhai	brothers
bheḍa-bakhra	goats and sheep	gahana-sahana	ornaments

(iii) Indeterminate Nouns

These nouns take both the Sg. verb-endings and Pl.Verb-endings as free variants. However when the plural marker is affixed to them they become obligatorily plural. Collective nouns fall in this group.

Examples

janata	citizens(as a collective noun)	janti	marriage procession
bathan	a herd of	jhuppa	a bunch of

(iv) Countable Nouns

These nouns have Singular and Plural forms.

Examples

manis	man	manis-heru	men
kukur	dog	kukur-heru	dogs
ghar	house	ghar-heru	houses
nadi	river	nadi-heru	rivers

The plural marker /heru/ can be optionally dropped when these nouns are modified by quantitative adjectives or proadjectives with or without classifiers, e.g.,

[dui waṭa kati waṭa dherai sabai]	ghar(-haru)	[two how many many all]	houses

(iva) Temporal Nouns

Temporal nouns differ from other countable nouns in that the plural marker /haru/ is obligatorily dropped when they are modified by quantitative adjectives or proadjectives, e.g.,

[dui]		[two]	
[keti]	barse	[how many]	years
[dherai]		[many]	

Other examples

mehina	month	din	day
ghanṭa	hour	hapta	week

3. Person

All nouns belong to the third person.

4.1.2. Pronoun Inflection

1. Gender

Among personal pronouns only III P Sg Non-Hon pronouns make gender distinction (Non-feminine Vs. Feminine) which is based primarily on Pronoun (as Subject)-Verb agreement.

Examples

Non-feminine		Feminine	
u garib cha	He is poor.	u garib cha ~ che uni garib chin	She is poor.
usle khayo	He ate.	usle khai unle khain	She ate.

The following indefinite pronouns also make gender distinction.

Non-feminine	Feminine	
arko	arko ~ arki	other
phalano	phalani	some unidentified person

2. Number

Pronouns show the distinction of number either by adding the plural marker /haru/ or by reduplication or by using a different stem (i.e. suppletion) to mark plurality. Interrogative, Relative and Indefinite plurals are formed through reduplication. Personal and Demonstrative plurals are formed by adding /haru/ or by a different stem. /haru/ occurs optionally in IP; elsewhere it is obligatory. See 2.1.2.

3. Person

Personal pronouns make a three-fold distinction of Person (I, II and III); all other pronouns belong to III P. See. 2.1.2.

4.1.3. Adjective Inflection

From the point of view of inflection adjectives may be divided into two groups: Declinable and Non-declinable.

Some of the non-declinable adjectives are:

amar	immortal	alchi	idle, lazy
asal	good	ucca	high
ustai	similar	kaḍa	hard
kanjus	stingy	kharab	bad
khali	empty	garaũ	heavy
gabhabati	pregnant	gyani	gentle and obedient
calakh	clever	ṭhik	right, correct
dayalu	kind	dani	charitable
dahine ~ daya	right	dabre ~ baya	left
naram	soft	nãya	new
phohar	dirty	bhindai	different
mahan	great	murkha	foolish
sapha	clean	sacca	true

V-Non-Fin

nacne	one who dances	uḍne	one who/which flies

Declinable Adjectives

The declinable adjectives may be further divided into two sub-groups: (1) those which inflect only for Gender and (2) those which inflect for Gender and Number in a fused manner.

1. Gender

The declinable adjectives which inflect only for Gender can be divided into the following groups on the basis of the gender markers they take:

		Non-feminine declensions	(corresponding)	Feminine declensions
A_1	Sn	e ~ a		i
	Jn	o		
A_{11}		e		i
A_{12}		Ø		i
A_2		Ø		Ø ~ ni
A_3		e		e ~ ini
A_{31}		e		e ~ ini
A_4		a		i ~ ei

		Cooccurs with Non-feminine nouns	Cooccurs with Feminine nouns	
A_1	Sn	kanch-e ~ kanch-a	kanch-i	youngest
	Jn	kanch-o		
A_{11}		chyakeṭ-e	chyakeṭ-i	pock-marked
A_{12}		bahula	bahula-i	mad

Cooccurs with Non-Feminine nouns		Cooccurs with Feminine nouns	
A_2	papi	papi - papi-ni	sinning
A_3	pakh-e	pakh-e - pakh-ini	uncultured
A_{31}	dusţ-e	dusţ-e - dusţ-ini	evil
A_4	ɖercheruw-a	ɖarcheruw-i - ɖarcheruw-ei	coward

2. Gender and Number

The declinable adjectives that inflect for Gender and Number can be divided into the following sub-groups :

	Non-feminine declensions Sg	Pl	(corresponding)	Feminine declensions Sg	Pl
A_5	o	a		i	i - a
A_6	o	a		i	i
A_7 M.	o	o - a		o	o - a
F.	o	o - a		i	i - a

Examples

	Cooccurs with Non-feminine nouns Sg	Pl	Cooccurs with Feminine nouns Sg	Pl	
A_5	kal-o	a	i	i - a	black
	egl-o	a	i	i - a	tall
	san-o	a	i	i - a	samll
	ramr-o	a	i	i - a	beautiful

	Cooccurs with Non-feminine nouns		Cooccurs with Feminine nouns		
	Sg	Pl	Sg	Pl	
	moṭ-o	a	i	i - a	fat
	sojh-o	a	i	i - a	innocent
A_6	laṭ-o	a	i	i	dumb
	bahir-o	a	i	i	deaf
	leṅgaḍ-o	a	i	i	lame
	andh-o	a	i	i	blind
	kan-o	a	i	i	one-eye-blind
A_7	ram-k-o	o - a	o	o - a	Ram's
	sita-k-o	o - a	i	i - a	Sita's

4.1.4. Proadjective Inflection

The inflection of proadjectives is complicated. Some inflect for both Gender and Number (in a fused manner), some show only Number distinction and some others don't decline at all.

1. Gender and Number

Proadjectives of Quality (e.g., kast-C "of what kind") and of identity (e.g., mer-C "my") decline in the same manner as A_7.

2. Number

Number distinction (apart from the one mentioned above) is made either by separate base forms or reduplication or zero, but never by adding /haru/.

Examples

Sg		Pl	
yo	this	i	these
kun	which	kun-kun	which (pl.)

See 2.1.4.

4.2. Verb Inflection

Verbs in Nepali inflect for Mood and Aspect. Tense is marked by the 'be' verb (/ch-C/ "be + Present"; /thy-C/ "be + Past".)

Verbs agree with Subject in Gender, Number, Person and Honorific status. (There is no Object-Verb concord in Nepali.) The Gender, Number and Person realizations may be fused together as:

Gender-Number-Person	(GNoP)
Gender-Number	(GNo)
Number-Person	(NoP)

The term Concord(C) will be used as a cover term to represent all these possible combinations.

A detailed discussion of Tense, Mood and Aspect combinations in various Verb-Finite and Verb-Non-Finite constructions will be taken up in 5.1.6. For the present only the morphological combinations of verbs and endings will be noted.

Mood		Aspect	
Imperative :	{ ə }	Simple:	Unmarked
Second Imperative:	{nu }	Habitual:	{ də }
Optative:	{ os }	Prospective:	{ ne }
Surprise:	{ e }	Perfective:	{ ek-C }
Necessity:	{ nu }	Progressive:	{ dəi }
Proposal:	{əũ}	Concurrent:	{ da }
Infinitive:	{ ne}	Anterior:	{ ere }
Conditional:	{ ema }	Terminative:	{ unjəi }

Of these the Imperative, Optative, Surprise, Necessity and Proposal Moods and Simple and Habitual Aspects occur only within Verb-Finite constructions; Conditional Mood and Concurrent, Anterior and Terminative Aspects occur only within Verb-Non-Finite constructions; Infinitive Mood and Prospective, Perfective and Progressive Aspects occur in both the types of constructions.

Allomorphic alternations are observed both in the verb stem and in the ending when the Mood and Aspect markers are added to the verb stems. The shape of the allomorph depends upon which marker is added to which class of the verb stem. A brief note on morphological classes of verb stems is given first and then the allomorphic alternations both in verb stems and (Mood and Aspect) markers are described.

4.2.2. Morphological Classes of Verb Stems

i) Stems ending in a Consonant, e.g.,

gar	do	khel	play
sut	sleep	tan	pull

ii) Stems ending in a vowel

(a) a-ending stems, e.g.,

kha	eat	ja	go

(b) i-ending stems, e.g.,

di	give	li	take

Passivized stems

bhani	be said	gari	be done

(c) o-ending stems, e.g.,

ro	weep, cry, sob	dho	wash

(d) u-ending stems, e.g.,

au	come	siu	stitch

Causativized stems

sutau	make s.o. sleep	hãsau	make s.o. laugh, smile,
khwau	make s.o. eat	rwau	make s.o. weep, cry

Note u-ending stems are always preceded by a vowel.

(e) e-ending stems, e.g.,

pherke	come back	parkhe	wait
sahe	tolerate	birse	forget

4.2.3. Allomorphic Alternations in Stems

1. C-ending stems have no stem alternation except that

ch (of ch-ending stems) (i) c ~ s / -ch

(ii) ch ~ s / elsewhere

Examples

(i)	puch + che -------- puc-che ~ pus-che	wipes
(ii)	puch ------- puch ~ pus	wipe! (Imp.)
	puch + yo ----- puch-yo ~ pus-yo	wiped
	puch + era ----- puch-era ~ pus-era	having wiped
	puch + da ------ puch-da ~ pus-da	while wiping

2. i (of i-ending stems) ----- e/ Opt./os/; Imp.Ext.Int./Θ/

Examples

di + os ------- de-os May (S.o.) give!

di + Θ ------- de Give!

3. e/u (of e/u-ending stems) ------- Θ /-Vocoid; -Imp Ext Int./Θ/

Examples

pharke + e ------- phark-e (They) came back

au + u ------- a-u Come! (Int)

siu + yo ------- si-yo stitched

banau + era ------- bana-era having made

sahe + irahekoche ----- sah-irahekoche is tolerating

pharke + i ------- phark-i Come back!(Ext Int)

sahe + Θ ------- sah Tolerate!(Ext.Int)

au + Θ ------- a Come!(Ext Int)

4. u (of u-ending stems) ----- (i) ū /-any aspect marker or negative marker beginning with /d/; -tense marker /ch/th/

(ii) un / -negative marker /na/

(iii) u / elsewhere

(This rule is to be applied after rule 3.)

Examples

(i) au + daiche ----- aū-daiche is coming

au + da ----- aū-da while coming

au + daina ----- aū-daina doesn't come

au + cha ------- aũ-cha   comes

au + thyo ------- aũ-thyo   used to come

(ii) au + na ----- aun-na   (I) don't come

au+daina ----- aũ-daina   (He) doesn't come

au + nan ----- aun-nan   (She) does not come

But,

(iii) au + necha ----- au-necha   (He) will come

au + na ----- au-na   to come

au + nale ----- au-nale   because of (s.o.'s) coming

au + nuparcha ----- au-nuparcha   (S.O.) should come

au + nus ------- au-nus   Come! (Hon)

5. V(of V-ending stems) -----   (i) Ṽ /-any aspect marker beginning with d

(ii) Vn/ -negative marker na, -tense marker ch/th

(iii) V/ elsewhere

(This rule is to be applied after rules 2, 3 and 4).

<u>Examples</u>

(i) kha + daicha ----- khã-daicha   is eating

pharka + da ------ pharkẽ-da   while returning

(ii) kha + na ----- khan-na   (I) don't eat

di + cha ----- din-cha   (He) gives

(iii) kha + u ------- kha-u Eat! (Int)

li + yo ------- li-yo (He) took

kha + ekocha ----- kha-ekocha (He) has eaten

di + necha ------- di-necha (He) will give

6. o(of o-ending stems) ------- u / -n; when nasalized

(This rule is to be applied after Rule 5)

Examples

ro + nu ------- ru-nu to cry/weep

ro + necha ------- ru-necha (He) will cry/weep

ro + daicha ------- rō-daicha (Rule 5)

------- rū-daicha (He) is crying/weeping

ro + cha ------- ron-cha (Rule 5)

------- run-cha (He) cries/weeps

but,

ro + yo ------- ro-yo (He) cried/wept

ro + era(gayo) ----- ro-era(gayo) (He)(went) crying/weeping

ro + ∅ ------- ro Cry/Weep! (Ext.Int.)

7. Exceptional individual suppletive cases

(a) ho ----- bha / $-V^{F}$, -y

Examples

ho + e ------- bha-e (They) became/took place

ho + ere ------- bha-ere having become/taken place

ho + isakyo ----- bha-isakyo has become/taken place

ho + yo ------- bha-yo became/took place

(b) ja ------- ga / $-V^F$, -y

Examples

ja + e ------- ga-e (They) went

ja + irahekocha ----- ga-irahekocha (He) is going

ja + yo ------- ga-yo (He) went

(c) lag ------- (i) lag ~ la /- non-vocoid other than /l/

(ii) lag / elsewhere

Examples

(i) lag + che ----- lag-che ~ lan-che (He) takes away

lag + thyo ----- lag-thyo ~ lan-thyo (He) used to take away

lag + daicha ----- lag-daicha ~ lã-daicha (He) is taking away

lag + daina ----- lag-daina ~ lã-daina ~ lan-na (He) doesn't/won't take away

lag + da ----- lag-da ~ lã-da while taking

lag + nus ----- lag-nus ~ la-nus Take away! (Hon)

lag + nu ----- lag-nu ~ la-nu to take away

lag + ne ----- lag-ne ~ la-ne (One) who takes away

lag + necha ----- lag-necha ~ la-necha (He) will take away

lag + nale ----- lag-nale ~ la-nale because of (S.O.) taking away

But,

(ii) lag Take away! (Ext.Int)

lag-e Take away!(Int)

lag-i(bak)syos Take away!(Royal/Ext Hon)

lag-yo (He) took away

ləg-unjel	till the time (S.O.) takes away
ləg-irəhekochə	(He) is taking away
ləg-isəkekochə	(He) has taken away (definite)
ləg-ekochə	(He) has taken away (Indefinite)
ləg-emə	if(S.O.) takes away
ləg-lə	(He) may take away

4.2.4. <u>Allomorphic Alternations in Mood Markers</u>

<u>Imperative</u>: { ə {

Imperative occurs only with Second Person pronouns. It does not make a GNo distinction. It does however make Honorific distinctions. The following paradigm gives its various realizations:

	Ext.Int	Int	Hon	Ext.Hon/Royal
C-ending	Ø	ə	nus	i(bək)syos
V*-ending	Ø	u	nus	i(bək)syos
CCə-ending	i	ə	nus	i(bək)syos
hə-ending	Ø	u	nus	i(bək)syos

Where V* = a vowel other than ə.

<u>Examples</u>

gər	gər	gər-ə	gər-nus	gər-i(bək)syos	Do!
kha	kha	kha-u	kha-nus	kha-i(bək)syos	Eat!
pərkhə	pərkh-i	pərkh-ə	pərkhə-nus	pərkh-i(bək)syos	Wait!
səhə	səh	səh-u	səhə-nus	səh-i(bək)syos	Tolerate!

Second Imperative: { nu { ----- /nu/, e.g.,

au-nu kha-nu ja-nu

come eat go

Optative: { os { ------- /os/, e.g., gar-os may(S.O.) do

Surprise: { e { ------- /i/ / III Fem, I sg.

/e/ / elsewhere

e.g., sitale gar-i-chin [Sita] did unexpectedly
ramle gar-e-che [Ram]

Necessity: { nu { ------- /nu/, e.g. gar-nu-che have to do

Proposal: {əũ { ----- /əũ/ / C-, e.g. gar-əũ Let us do

/ũ/ / V-, e.g., kha-ũ Let us eat

Conditional: { ema { ----- /e(ma)/, e.g., gar-e(ma) if (S.O.) does

Infinitive: { na { has the following allomorphs:

a) /na/ before postpositions le and sath

b) /na ~ ne/ before V-Non-Fin bhanera (together suggesting purpose)

c) /na ~ nu/ before Operator par (together suggesting Obligation)

d) /na/ before operators like sək, lag, ho etc., before postpositions lai, ko lagi nimti; when it occurs at the end of an embedded S functioning as an Object or AdvP.

e) /nu/ before honorific marker hun; before AP.

Examples

a) gar-na-le because of doing

gar-na-sath as soon as doing

b) gar-ne-bhanera - gar-ne-bhanera	with a mind to do
c) gar-ne-par-cha - gar-nu-par-cha	should do
d) gar-ne-sak-cha	can do (both ability and possibility)
gar-na-lag-yo	began to do
gar-na-hun-cha	is allowed to do or is "do-able"
gar-na-lai - gar-ne-ko lagi/nimti	to do; for doing
gar-na-sika-yo	taught how to do
gar-ne-jan-cha	goes to do
e) gar-nu-hun-cha	does (Hon)
dhersi kha-nu thik chaina	It is not good to eat much.

4.2.5. Allomorphic Alternations in Aspect Markers

Simple: Unmarked

Habitual: { de { ----- /de/ - /Ø/, e.g.,

gar-de-thyo - gar-Ø-thyo	used to do

(Note: /Ø/ allomorph is frequent; /de/ allomorph is rare and is used only in written form. Only /Ø/ allomorph can occur when followed by the negative marker.)

Prospective: { ne { ----- /ne/, e.g.,

gar-ne-cha	(He) will do
usle gar-ne kam	the work he will do

Perfective: { ek-C {

It can occur both in Verb Finite and Verb-Non-Finite construction. When it occurs in Verb-finite construction it

agrees with Subject in Gender, Number and Person. When it occurs in Verb-Non-Finite construction Stem + Perfective functions as an Adjective and it agrees with the Noun it qualifies in Number.

In Verb-Finite Construction

C is realized as

a) /i/ in third Person Feminine Sg

b) /o/ in Sg other than (a)

c) /a/ in Pl

Examples

unle gar-ek-i-chin	She has done.
maile/timile/usle gar-ek-o chu/chau/che	I/you(sg)/He have/has done.
uniharule gar-ek-a chan	They have done.

In Verb-Non-Finite Construction

C is realized as

a) /o/ when the qualified noun is in Sg

/a/ when the qualified noun is in Pl

Examples

usle/uniharule gar-ek-o- kam	the work he/they has/have done
usle/uniharule gar-ek-a kamharu	the work he/they has/have done

Progressive: { dai { ----- /dai/

Examples

gar-dai-cha	is/will be doing
gar-dai gayo	went on doing
khā-dai-cha	is/will be eating
khā-dai bhanyo	told while eating

(For a detailed discussion on Progressive markers refer to 5.1.6).

Concurrent: { da { ----- /da/, e.g.,

khā-da	while eating
gar-da	while doing

Anterior: { era { ------- /era ~ i(kana)/

Constraint: /era/ variant is blocked in negative construction, e.g.,

gar-era ~ gar-i(kana)	having done
na-gar-i(kana)	without having done

Terminative: { unjel { ------- /unjel/, e.g.,

gar-unjel	till the time of doing

4.2.6. Realization of Tense

Unlike Mood and Aspect, Tense has no overt separate markers. It is expressed by the be-verb itself.

ch	be + Present
thy	be + Past

{ ch } has no alternant. { thy } has following allomorphs:

a) /thiy/ in careful speech when 'be' functions as Main Verb

b) /thy/ elsewhere.

(<u>Note</u>: y (of /thiy/ and /thy/) ----- $\emptyset$ / $-V^F$)

The following paradigm illustrates these alternants and various realizations of C after ch and thy.

Person	Number	Gender	Present	Past	
			"be" as Main Verb or as Aux	"be" as Main Verb in normal speech or as Aux	"be" as Main Verb in careful speech
I	Sg		ch-u	th-ẽ	thi-ẽ
	Pl		ch-aũ	thy-aũ	thiy-aũ
II	Sg		ch-au	thy-au	thiy-au
	Pl		ch-au	thy-au	thiy-au
III	Sg	Non-Fem	ch-a	thy-o	thiy-o
		Fem	ch-in/e	th-in/i	thi-in/i
	Pl		ch-an	th-e	thi-e

4.2.7. <u>Semantic Interpretation of Mood, Aspect and Tense</u>

1. <u>MOOD</u>

Imperative: Speaker desires for addressee's action.

Second Imperative: Same as Imperative except that whereas Imperative can be used both in Present and Future it can be used only in Future.

Optative: Speaker desires that something may befall on addressee.

Surprise: The incident or action is against speaker's expectation.

Necessity: Circumstances compel the agent (equivalent to "to have to do s.th." in English)

Proposal: Speaker proposes it to the Hearer (equivalent to "Let us do" in English)

Conditional: Self explanatory (equivalent to 'if' construction in English)

Infinitive: Simple reference to an action or state.

2. ASPECT

Simple: (action) done or to be done at some point in time; also used to express habitual actions, universal or general truths.

Habitual: Habitual or natural action, e.g.,

u raksi khancha	He drinks liquor.
hawa bahancha	Air flows.
mastar padhaucha	Teacher teaches.

Prospective: In the offing; in a state of readiness; forecast; habitual action; for the purpose of. The last two meanings are to be assigned only to Verb-Non-Fin constructions, e.g.,

nac-ne keṭi	the girl who dances
piũ-ne pani	water for drinking

Note: Prospective + Past means counterfactive, e.g.,

gar-ne-thyo	(He) would have done.

<u>Perfective:</u> (action) has been done at some time or other (equivalent to constructions like 'have been to London', 'have seen Taj Mahal' etc. in English)

<u>Progressive:</u>

(a) Concurrently /in embedded sentences, e.g.,

u hasdai meryo (He was smiling when he died)
He died smiling.

(b) (action) has started and is in progress /with past tense, e.g.,

u gardeithyo He was doing.

(c) (action) has just started and is in progress or will be started soon /with Present Tense, e.g.,

u khadeiche He is eating.
u bholi jadeiche He will be going tomorrow.

<u>Concurrent:</u> at the time of action/happening

<u>Anterior:</u> (action) done just before the main action (equivalent to "having V + Past Participle" construction in English)

<u>Terminative:</u> till/by the period of time of doing an action

3. <u>TENSE:</u>

<u>Past:</u> always Past time.

<u>Present:</u>

(a) Present /with Habitual Aspect

(b) Immediate Future /with Simple and Prospective Aspects

(c) Present and Immediate Future /with Progressive Aspect

(d) Immediate Past /with Surprise Mood

(e) Indefinite Past /with Perfective Aspect.

C H A P T E R   F I V E

NEPALI SYNTAX

5.1. Phrase Types

Any grammatical construction which is at least a word and is less than a sentence constitutes a phrase. A phrase with a finite verb but which forms only a part of a sentence is a clause.

A phrase may, therefore, be composed of a word or a group of words linked together as modifier-to-head or head-to-head. Head-to-head constructional phrases, in turn, may be appositional, additive or alternative.

Functionally Nepali phrases can be divided into the following six types :

1 Noun Phrase (NP)
2 Adjective Phrase (AP)
3 Adverb Phrase (AdvP)
4 Postpositional Phrase (PP)
5 Non-Finite Phrase (Non-FinP)
6 Verb Phrase (VP)

5.1.1. Noun Phrase (NP)

Construction

NP ---- [(AP) + N | ProN | A-Num | Non-FinP | N-Clause]

Examples

NP ------- N

keṭa	boy

NP ------- AP + N

asal keṭa	good boy

NP ------- ProN

me	I

NP ------- A-Num

sat (bajyo) seven (struck)	It's 7 O'clock

NP ------- Non-FinP

cornu (aparadh ho)	stealing (is a crime)

pahaḍ caḍhne (garo che)   climbing a mountain (is difficult)

dherai reksi khanu (swasthalai hanikarak che)

Drinking a lot of liquor (i.e. excessive drinking) (is harmful to health).

sitalai piṭne (ram ho)   (It is Ram) who beat Sita

desko lagi marneheru (sahid kahelinchan)

Those who die for their country (are known as martyrs).

NP ------- N-Clause

(usle) ram maryo (bhanyo) (He said) Ram died.

(sabaile bhanchan)ki yo kam ramle garekohune-sakdaine

(Everybody says) that this work could not have been done by Ram.

5.1.2. Adjective Phrase (AP)

AP ---- [(ProA)(+PP)(+Int) + A | PP | ProA | A-Num + Classifier | Non-FinP | A-Clause]

Examples

AP ----- A

esel (N)   good (N)

AP ------- Int + A

dherai asal (N) very good (N)

AP ------- PP + A

gol bhanda kalo (N) (N) which is blacker than coal

coal more than black(N)

gol jesto kalo (N) (N) which is black as coal

coal like black(N)

ram jetiko aglo (N) (N) who is as tall as Ram

Ram as...as tall (N)

AP ------- ProA + A

tyo asal (N) that good (N)

AP ------- PP + Int + A

gol bhanda dherai kala (N) (N) which is much blacker than coal

coal more very black (N)

AP ------- ProA + PP + Int + A

tyo gol bhanda dherai kalo (N) that (N) which is far blacker than coal

AP ------- PP

bã̮dar jast-C(N) monkey-like (N)

agaḍi k-C(N) the front (N)

ghar k-C (N) (N) of house

rukh muni k-C(N) (N) beneath the free

Note Only those PPs which end in Postps jast-C & k-C can function as an AP.

AP ------- ProA

tyo (N)	that (N)

AP ------- A-Num + Classifier

dui-jena (N)	two (Ns)

AP ------- Non-FinP

piune (N)	(N) for drinking
nacirehek-C (N)	(N) who is dancing
leḍnelagek-C (N)	(N) who is about to fight
əgaḍi besne (N)	(N) who sat/sit(s) in front
bagh marne (N)	(N) who killed the tiger
pune baṭe aek-C(N)	(N) who has come fromPoona
sabəile menperaek-C(N)	(N) liked by all
sensar ghumek -C(N)	(N) who has travelled all around the world
ram site poilejane (N)	(N) who eloped with Ram
sə̃dhei roirəhene (N)	(N) who keeps on crying all the time
hami kahā dudh dine aune(N)	(N) who come(s) to fetch us milk
dherei reksi piune sekne (N)	(N) who can drink a lot of liquor
timile dieko (N)	(N) you gave

AP ------- A-Clause

(espali pani uhi bidhyarthi pahila bheyo) jo sə̃dhei pehila hunthyo

(This time also the same student stood first) who always used to stand first.

(dãphe uhi carako nam ho) jun nepalko pahaḍi bhagma paincha

(Damphe is the name of the same bird) which is available in the mountainous regions of Nepal.

5.1.3. Adverb Phrase (AdvP)

$$\text{AdvP} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \text{(Mod)} + \begin{bmatrix} \text{Adv} \\ \text{ProAdv} \end{bmatrix} \\ \text{A-Num.} + \text{Classifier} \\ \text{PP} \\ \text{Non-FinP} \end{bmatrix}$$

Examples

AdvP ------- Adv

bhitra	in	bholi	tomorrow
pheri	again	bistarai	slowly

AdvP ------- ProAdv

yahã	here	ahile	now

$$\text{AdvP} \longrightarrow \text{Mod} + \begin{bmatrix} \text{Adv} \\ \text{ProAdv} \end{bmatrix}$$

ṭhik cha bəja	6 O'clock sharp
ali bistarai	a little slowly
sakesamma cãdai	as soon as possible
bilkul yasari	exactly like this
ghoḍa jasto chiṭo	as swift as a horse
timi bhanda cãdai	earlier than you

AdvP ------- A-Num + Classifier

tin paṭak/palṭa/coṭi/baji/khep — three times

AdvP ------- PP

dhyan purbak	attentively
gharma	at home
ghar tira	towards home
ghar(ko) najik	near home
agaḍitira	frontward
jana bitikai/jana sath	immediately after going
ragat aune gari(kana)	so as to cause bleeding
(u) ghoḍa jasto (dagurcha)	(He runs) like a horse

AdvP ------- Non-FinP

(u) rūdai (gayo)	(He went) crying

5.1.4. Postpositional Phrase (PP)

$$PP \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} NP \\ Adv \\ Non\text{-}FinP \end{bmatrix} + Postp_1 \; (+Postp_2)(+Postp_3)$$

Constraints

1. $Postp_3$: only baṭa; k-C

   $Postp_2$: only baṭa; k-C; tira/tarpha and possibly a few others.

2. NP is represented by

i) NP-ko before lagi/nimti

ii) NP(-ko) before agaḍi/agi;
pachaḍi/pachi; mathi;
tala; muni; najik/nira;
bare and possibly a few others.

Note This ko, which is a dummy is different from the adjectivalizing Postp k-C.

Gloss of the Postps given above :

baṭa	from	k-C	of
tira/terpha	towards	lagi/nimti	for
agaḍi/agi	before, infront	pachaḍi/pachi	after, behind
mathi	on, over	tala	down, below
muni	under	najik/nira	near, close by
bare	about		

Examples

PP ------- NP + Postp

keṭa ko	of boy	keṭa sańe	with boy
keṭa jasto	like boy	keṭa bare	about boy
keṭako bhənai anusar		ghar ma	at home
according to boy's saying		ghar baṭa	from home
		koṭha bhitra	in room

PP ------- NP + Postp + Postp

ghar bhitre baṭe	from inside the home
rukh muni tire	towards under the tree

PP ------- NP + Postp + Postp + Postp

rukh muni tire baṭe	from beneath the tree

PP ------- Adv + Postp

bhitre tire	towards inside
agaḍi ko	of the front
tale baṭe	from below

PP ------- Adv + Postp + Postp

bhitre tire ko	of (the one) which is towards inside
tale tire baṭe	from towards underneath

PP ------- Non-FinP + Postp

ragat aunagari kana	so as to cause bleeding
keṭale bhaneko bamojim	according to what the boy said
jane bitikai	as soon as (NP) went
khane lagda khari	when (NP) was about to eat
pugna sath	as soon as (NP) arrived

PP ------- Non-FinP + Postp + Postp

janu bhanda agaḍi	before going

5.1.5. Non-Finite Phrase (Non-FinP)

A Non-Finite Phrase consists of a verb root preceded by an optional modifier and followed by one of the several possible Aux-Non-Fin Expansions for which refer to 5.1.6.2.

A Non-FinP can function as an NP, AP, AdvP or a PP. For examples refer to their respective sections.

5.1.6. Verb Phrase (VP)

A verb Phrase (not to be interpreted in Chomskian sense here) consists of a verb stem plus an auxiliary. The auxiliary may be finite or non-finite. Thus we have

VP ------- [V + Aux-Fin / V + Aux-Non-Fin.]

Aux-Fin may contain :

Mood alone, e.g.,

V + Mood

ger + a   Do!

Tense alone, e.g.,

V + Tense (fused)

ch-C   am/is/are

Note   'Be' is the only verb that can take tense alone. In all other cases Tense does not occur alone.

Aspect + Tense, e.g.,

V + Aspect + Tense

gar + dai + ch-C am/is/are doing

Aspect + Mood, e.g.

V + Aspect + Mood

gar + iraha + nu Be doing!

Aspect + Mood + Tense, e.g.

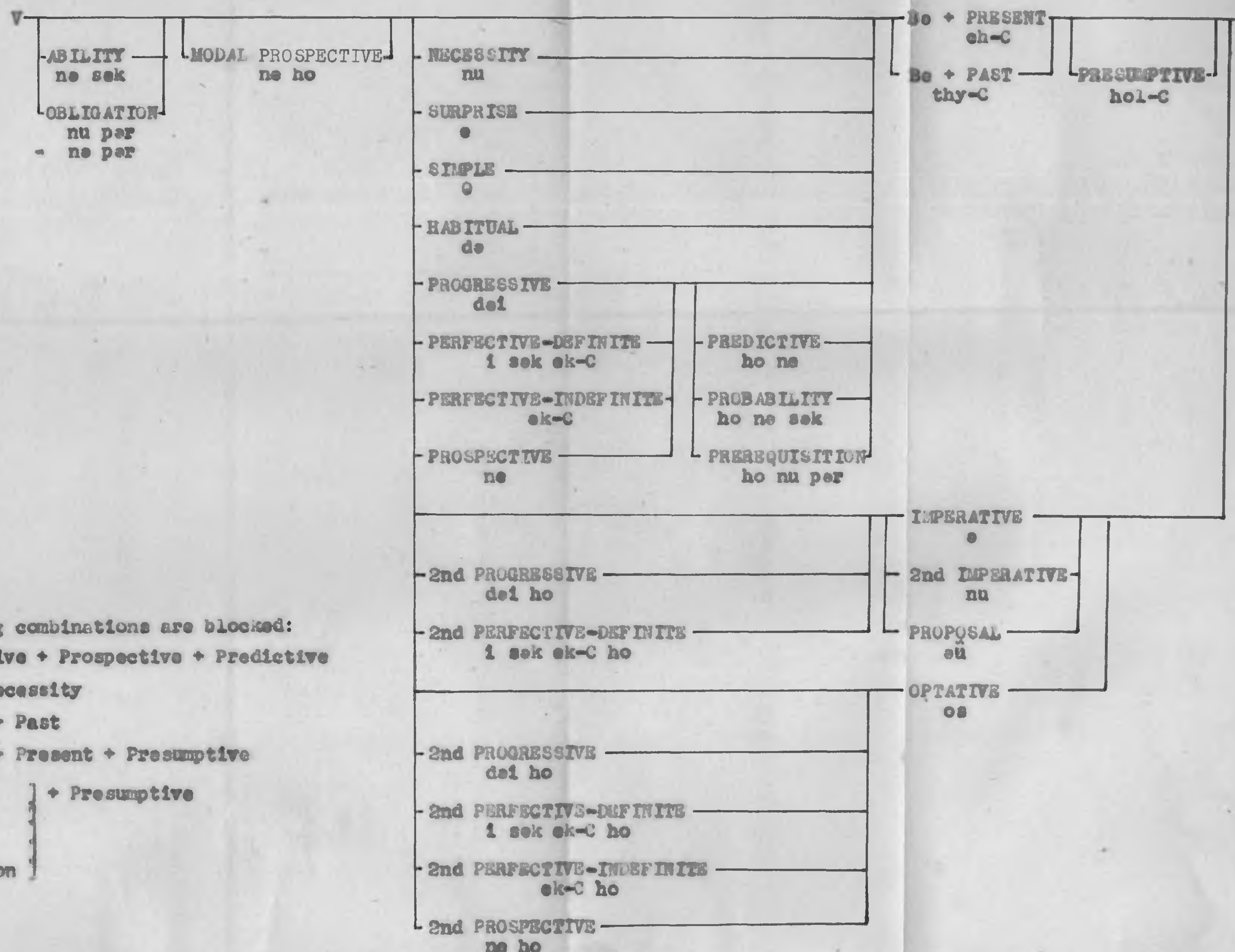
V + Aspect + Mood + Tense

gar + isakeko + hunasak + ch=C might have done

and several other combinations of Mood, Aspect and Tense as shown in Aux-Fin-Expansion below.

Aux-Non-Fin contains Mood and Aspect as shown in Aux-Non-Fin-Expansion(cf.5.1.6.2.).

1. Aux-Fin EXPANSION



Constraints

The following combinations are blocked:

1. Modal Prospective + Prospective + Predictive
2. Obligation + Necessity
3. Surprise + Be + Past
4. Surprise + Be + Present + Presumptive
5. [Predictive / Probability / Prerequisition] + Presumptive

1.1. Tense markers

Be + Present	:	ch-C
Be + Past	:	thy-C

1.2. Aspect markers

Simple	:	∅
Habitual	:	de
Progressive	:	dei
Perfective Definite	:	i-sak-ek-C
Perfective-Indefinite	:	ek-C
Prospective	:	ne
2nd Progressive	:	Progressive + ho
2nd Perfective-Definitive	:	Perfective-Definitive + ho
2nd Perfective-Indefinite	:	Perfective-Indefinitive + ho
2nd Prospective	:	Prospective + ho

1.3. Mood Markers

Ability	:	ne sek
Obligation	:	nu per ~ ne per
Imperative	:	a
2nd Imperative	:	nu
Proposal	:	eū
Optative	:	os
Necessity	:	nu

Surprise	:	e
Modal Prospective	:	ne ho
Predictive	:	ho ne
Probability	:	ho ne sek
Prerequisition	:	ho ne per
Presumptive	:	ho l-C

1.4. <u>Semantic Interpretation of Aspects</u>

2nd	[Progressive, Perfective-Definite, Perfective-Indefinite, Prospective]r	:	be +	[Progressive, Perfective-Definite, Perfective-Indefinite, Prospective]r

1.5. <u>Semantic Interpretation of Moods</u>

Ability : The speaker believes/thinks that the person in question possesses the ability to do s.th.

Obligation : The speaker believes/thinks that the person in question should do s.th.

Modal Prospective	:	The evidence shows that .....
Predictive	:	Speaker predicts with confidence
Probability	:	Speaker guesses
Prerequisition	:	The present fact or situation shows what must have happened in the past
Presumptive	:	Speaker's presumption/reservation

Semantic values of Tenses and other Aspects and Moods have been already discussed in 4.2.7.

<u>Note</u>

[Prospective]
[Predictive] + Past ----- Counterfactive
[Probability]

1.6. <u>Surface Realization Rules</u>

1. Simple + Be + Past ------- y-C,
   i.e. Ø + thy-C ------- y-C., e.g.,
   gar + Ø + thyo ------- gar-yo did

2. Be + Present + Presumptive
   ch-C + hol-C ------- hol-C / after V + other overt ending
   l-C / after V
   where V = Verb Stem, e.g.,
   gar-dai + che + hol-C ----- gar-dai-hol-C presumably (s.o.) is doing
   gar-Ø + che + hol-C ------ gar-la presumably (s.o.) will do

3. Realization of C of hol-C
   C ------- an / Pl
   a / Non-Fem. Sg.
   in / Fem Sg

<u>Examples</u>

uniheru geriraheka hol-an — Presumably they are doing.

u geriraheko hol-a — Presumably he is doing.

uni geriraheki hol-in — Presumably she is doing.

4. $\begin{bmatrix} \text{2nd Progressive} \\ \text{2nd Perfective-Definite} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \text{Imperative} \\ \text{Second Imperative} \\ \text{Optative} \end{bmatrix}$

i.e., $\begin{bmatrix} \text{irahek-C ho} \sim \\ \text{irakhek-C ho} \\ \text{isekek-C ho} \end{bmatrix}_r + \begin{bmatrix} \text{a/u} \\ \text{nu} \\ \text{os} \end{bmatrix}$ -------- $\begin{bmatrix} \text{irah} \sim \\ \text{irakh} \\ \text{isek} \end{bmatrix}_r - \begin{bmatrix} \text{a/u} \\ \text{nu} \\ \text{os} \end{bmatrix}$

<u>Examples</u>

kam ger-iraheko ho + nu ----- kam ger-irah-nu — Be working.

kam ger-isekeko ho + os ----- kam ger-isek-os — May he have done the work!

5. $\begin{bmatrix} \text{Progressive} \\ \text{Perfective-Def.} \end{bmatrix}$ + Predictive

$\begin{bmatrix} \text{irahek-C} \sim \\ \text{irakhek-C} \\ \text{isekek-C} \end{bmatrix}_r$ + ho ne ----- $\begin{bmatrix} \text{irah} \sim \\ \text{irakh} \\ \text{isek} \end{bmatrix}_r$ - ne

<u>Example</u> ger-iraheko + ho ne-che ---- ger-irah-ne-che
Predictably (s.o.) will be doing

<u>Note</u> The alternant /dai/ does not occur before the verb <u>ho</u> "be, become".

6. Progressive : [dai / i-rahek-C / i-ra* / i-rakhek-C / i-rakhya*]

7. Perfective-Definite : [i-sakek-C / i-sakya*]

8. Perfective-Indefinite : [ek-C / ya*]

ya ----- 0 / a-, u-

<u>Note</u>

The alternants marked * in 6, 7 and 8 occur only in colloquial speech.

9. Predictive : ho ne ------- hune ~ hun

This rule is applicable only in those cases where Rule 5 is not applicable.

(<u>Note</u> For allomorphic alternations of the verb <u>ho</u> refer to 4.2.3.6 and 4.2.3.7.)

10. ho + os ------- hos, e.g.,

gar-eko ho + os ------- gar-eko-hos   I wish (it) has been done by him.

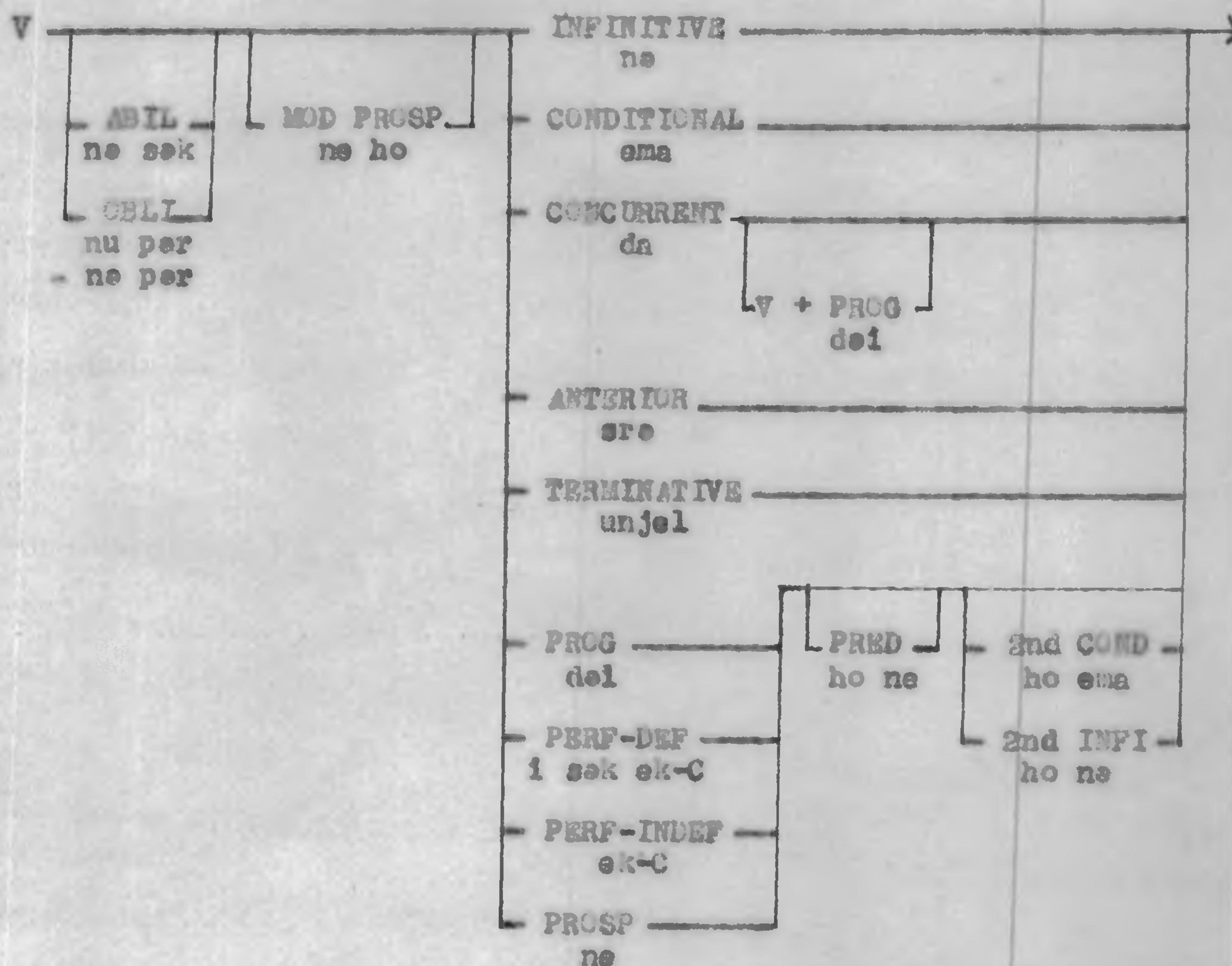
<u>Illustrations (of Aux-Fin Expansion)</u>

ger-nu-che	(He) has to do
ger-e-che	(He) did (against my expectation)
ger-Ø-che	(He) does/will do
ger-<u>da</u>-/<u>Ø</u>-thyo	(He) used to do
ger-dai-che	(He) is doing
ger-isakeko-che	(He) has done(in the definite past)
ger-eko-che	(He) has done(in the indefinite past)
ger-ne-che	(He) will do
ger-ne-thiene	(He) would not have done
ger-e	Do!
ger-nu	Do!
ger-aũ	Let us do!
ger-os	May he do! (I wish that he does)
ger-irahe-nu	Be doing!
ger-isak-os	May(he) has done!
ger-nasek-che	(He) can do
ger-nuper-che	(He) should do
ger-nebhe-yo	It has been decided that(he) would do.
ger-nasek-nebhe-yo	(He) became able to do
ger-iraheko-hune-che	(He) will be doing (I predict)
ger-nebhe-isakeko-hunesak-che	Probably it has been decided that (he) would do

(yahā nokeri pauneko lagi usle esto kam) ger-nasek-nebhe-isakeko-hunuper-che

(To get a job here) it is prerequired that (he) has already become able to do (this sort of work).

2. Aux-Non-Fin Expansion



Constraints

1. MODAL PROSPECTIVE + PROSPECTIVE is blocked.

2. 2nd INFINITIVE occurs only if the Postp le "because" follows it.

3. PREDICTIVE occurs only if [2nd CONDITIONAL / 2nd INFINITIVE] follows it.

2.1. Aspect Markers

Concurrent	: da
Anterior	: erə
Terminative	: unjel
Progressive	: dei
Perf-Def	: isəkek-C
Perf-Indef	: ek-C
Prospective	: ne

2.2. Mood Markers

Modal Prospective	: ne ho
Predictive	: ho ne
Infinitive	: ne
Conditional	: ema
2nd Infinitive	: ho ne
2nd Conditional	: ho ema

2nd Infinitive and 2nd Conditional have same meanings as Infinitive and Conditional respectively.

For the semantic values of all other markers refer to 4.2.7 and 5.1.6.1.4. and 5.1.6.1.5.

For allomorphic alternations in Aspect and Mood markers refer to 4.2.5. For allomorphic alternations of the stem ho refer to rules 6 and 7 of 4.2.3.

2.3. Surface Realization Rules

[Progressive / Perfective-Def] + [2nd Conditional / 2nd Infinitive], i.e.

[irahek-C ~ irakhek-C / isekek-C]r + [ho ema / ho ne]r' ----- [irah ~ irakh / isək]r - [ema / ne]r'

Examples

gər-irakheko + bhee(ma) ----- gər-irakh-e(ma) If (s.o.) is doing

gar-isakeko + hu na-le ----→ gar-isak-na-le

because (s.o.) has done

Note

This rule is applicable only if Predictive does not occur. If Predictive occurs Rule 5 of 5.1.6.1.6 will be applicable and the forms of 2nd Conditional and 2nd Infinitive remain intact. For surface realization of PROG,PERF-DEF, and PERF-INDEF refer to Rules 6, 7 and 8 of 5.1.6.1.6.

Illustrations

gar-e(ma)	If (s.o.) does
gar-da	while doing; while (s.o.) did
gar-unjel	till the time of doing; till the time (s.o.) did
[gar-isakeko bhae / gar-isake]	If (s.o.) has done
[gar-iraheko hune huna-le / garirahne hunale]	because (I predict that s.o.) will be doing
gar-da-gar-dai	In course of doing; while doing

(bholi sammama u yo kam) gar-na-sak-na-bha-isakeko-hu-ne-hu-na(-le)

(because by tomorrow he) will have been able to do(this work)...

5.2. Nepali Phrase Combinations

A phrase may consist of more than one phrase of the same type combined together with or without a connective (i.e., XP ----- XP + XP + ...). These constituent phrases may stand in additive, alternative, cumulative, appositional or amplificatory relationship with one another.

1. NP ----- NP + NP + ...

Additive

kitab + (re) kalam	book and pen
kitab + kapi + (re) kalam	book, copy and pen

Alternative

kitab + ba kalam	book or pen
kitab + (ba)kapi + ba kalam	book, copy or pen

Appositional

pradhan mantri + giri	Prime minister, Giri

sansarko sab bhanda aglo curura + sagarmatha

the highest peak of the world, Sagarmatha (Mt. Everest).

AP ------- AP + AP + ...

Additive

ramri + (re) agli (keţi)	beautiful and tall (girl)

Alternative

ramri + ba egli (keṭi) beautiful or tall (girl)

Cumulative

(melai) calis + pecas (rupiya deu)

(to me) forty + fifty (rupee Give!)

(Give me) about forty or fifty (i.e. between forty and fifty) (rupees).

Amplificatory

ti + agaḍika + duijena + bā̃dar-jasta (keṭaheru)

those + of front + two + monkey-like (boys)

those two monkey-like (boys) in front

AdvP ------- AdvP + AdvP + ...

Additive

hijo + aje + (re) bholi yesterday, today and tomorrow

Alternative

bholi + ba parsi tomorrow or the day after tomorrow

Amplificatory

bholi bihane carbeje tomorrow morning at 4

PP ------- PP + PP + ...

Additive

ghar agadi + (ra)(ghar) pachadi	in front of and behind the house

Alternative

ramko (lagi) ba syamko lagi	for Ram or Shyam

Amplificatory

ghar bahira + caur ma	outside the house on the lawn

Non-FinP ------- Non-FinP + Non-FinP + ...

Additive

cornu + (ra)thagnu (aparadh hun)	stealing and cheating (are crimes).
(u) nacdai + (ra) gaudai (gayo)	(He went) dancing and singing.

Alternative

(usle) corera + ba thagera (matra jibika calaudaicha)

(He is maintaining his daily life simply) by stealing or cheating.

5.3. Sentence Types

This study of sentence types from the structural point of view is not intended to be exhaustive. The section comprises some highlights on principal (major) sentence types with illustrations followed by brief notes on Circumstantials, Adsententials and Correlation between Syntactic functions and Morphological forms.

5.3.1. Some Highlights on Principal Sentence Types

The following diagram illustrates Nepali sentence patterns in a nutshell :



where, Ads stands for Adsentential

Pt	"	"	Patient complement
S	"	"	Subject
R	"	"	Residual complement
Cm	"	"	Circumstantial
O	"	"	Object complement
Pr	"	"	Predicative complement
V	"	"	Verb phrase (Finite)
& where, ____	"	"	elements inside the propositional core
-----	"	"	elements outside the propositional core

Constraints

1. V cannot occur alone. It has to be accompanied at least by S or, in its absence, by 'Pt + Pr' or 'R + Pr'.
2. Pt and O are mutually exclusive.

Given these constraints, the propositional core comprises the following thirteen sentence patterns:

1.		S			Pr	V
2.	Pt	S			Pr	V
3.		S				V
4.	Pt	S				V
5.		S	R			V
6.	Pt	S	R			V
7.		S		O		V
8.		S	R	O		V
9.		S		O	Pr	V
10.		S	R		Pr	V
11.		S	R	O	Pr	V
12.	Pt				Pr	V
13.			R		Pr	V

Note 1. Whenever O and Pr occur together Pr is the 'Predicative' complement to 'O'; elsewhere Pr is the 'Predicative complement to 'S'.

2. S + R ------- R + S /Pt-

3. Both S + R + O + V and S + O + R + V are possible.

4. R may be more than one in number.

Illustrations

1. S + Pr + V

ram jasus ho	Ram is a spy.
ram asal cha	Ram is good.
ram [mantri / niras] bhayo	Ram became [a minister / disheartened].
ram dosi ṭhaharyo guilty was proved	Ram was proved to be guilty.
ram sachi basyo witness sat	Ram remained a witness.
ram mero bhai parcha	Ram is related to me as my younger brother.
yo kalam ramko ho	This pen is Ram's.
ram dubidama cha	Ram is in dilemma.
ram pahila bhayo first became	Ram stood first.

2. Pt + S + Pr + V

malai yoṭhaũ ramailo lagyo I-to this place pleasant felt	I found this place pleasant.
malai timro topi ṭhik chaina your cap fit is not	Your cap is not fit for me. Your cap does not fit me.
malai ram jasus jasto lagcha spy-like feel	Ram looks like a spy to me.

3. S + V

ram maryo	Ram died.
pani paryo	It rained.
pani umlyo	Water boiled.
jhyal khulyo	Window opened.
gilas phuṭyo	Glass broke.
ledaī bhayo	War occurred.

4. Pt + S + V

melai bhok lagyo I-to hunger felt	I felt hungry.
melai banta bhayo vomit occurred	I vomitted.
melai joro ayo fever came	I got fever.
melai peṭ dukhyo stomach pained	I had a stomach-ache.
malai gal paryo blame befell	I was blamed.
melai sanco chaina well-being exist-not	I am not well.
sitako chora bhayo Sita's son occurred	Sita gave birth to a son.

ramko duijena choraheru chen Ram has two sons.
two sons exist

ram sahe dherei paisa che Ram has a lot of money.
Ram-with a lot of money exist

euṭa hatma pãc eũla hunchen A hand has five fingers.
in-one-hand five fingers exist

5. S + R + V

ram gher gayo Ram went home.
ram timi dekhi ḍerayo Ram became afraid of you.

ram rukhbaṭa khasyo Ram fell from the tree.
ram gopalsanga laḍyo Ram quarrelled with Gopal.
ram gharma che Ram is at home.
isor jatatatai che God exists everywhere.

S + R + R + V

āp rukhbaṭa bhaĩma khasyo The mango fell from the tree to the ground.

6. Pt + R + S + V

malai ramdekhi ḍar lagche I am afraid of Ram.
I-to Ram-from fear feel

mero ramsahe jhagaḍa bhayo I had a quarrel with Ram.
my Ram-with quarrel occurred

sitako ramsaṅe biha bhayo   Sita married Ram.

Sita's Ram-with marriage took place

7. S + O + V

usle malai piṭyo	He beat me.
usle jhyal kholyo	He opened the window.
usle [ghar / bagh(lai)] dekhyo	He saw a [house / tiger].

8. S + R + O + V

usle malai bhat khwayo	He fed me rice.
usle rukhbaṭe āp ṭipyo	He plucked a mango from the tree.
usle [sitalai / sitasaṅe] biha garyo	He married Sita.
usle malai ramlai piṭnalegayo	He made me beat Ram.
usle malai paisa paṭhayo	He sent me money.
usle malai aṅgreji sikayo	He taught me English.
usle masite timro nam sodyo	He asked me your name.
usle masite maphi magyo	He asked me to pardon him.
he I-to pardon begged	
usle mabaṭe phaida uṭhayo	He made a profit out of me.

S + R + R + O + V

usle malai ramsaṅe paricaya garayo

he I-to Ram-with introduction caused to do

He introduced me to Ram.

usle malai nepalbaṭa paisa paṭhayo	He sent me money from Nepal.
Nepal-from money sent	
usle sitalai ramsaṅa biha garidiyo	He married Sita with Ram. (i.e. He performed the marriage between Sita and Ram).

S + O + R + V

usle sabai paisa khalṭima rakhyo	He kept all the money in (his) pocket.
usle ramlai puna paṭhayo	He sent Ram to Poona.
usle malai ṭaukoma hanyo	He hit me on my head.

9. S + O + Pr + V

usle malai cor ṭhanyo	He took me for a thief.
he I-to thief thought	
usle malai niras paryo	He made me disheartened.
disheartened caused/made	
usle malai parisrami banayo	He made me hard-working.
hard-working made	
usle timro nam ram bhanṭhanyo	He thought that your name was Ram.

10. S + R + Pr + V

u jā̃cma pas bhayo	He passed the examination.
he in the exam. successful became	

11. S + R + O + Pr + V

malle uslai das rupiya sapat die — I lent him ten rupees.

I he-to ten rupees lending gave

12. Pt + Pr + V

malai jaḍo chaina — It is not cold to me.

I-to cold is not — I do not feel cold.

13. R + Pr + V

punama jaḍo chaina — It is not cold in Poona.

in Poona cold is not

5.3.2. Circumstantials

Circumstantials consist of Adverbial phrases and Post-positional phrases. They can occur as an optional element in any of the sentence types. A sentence may contain one or more than one circumstantial. The position of circumstantials in a given sentence pattern depends upon

a) type of sentence pattern,

b) type of circumstantial,

c) number of circumstantials etc.

The normal order within circumstantials is -

$$T_1 + T_2 + T_3 + M_1 + M_2 + P$$

where,

T_1 = Adverb of Time - when, e.g.

por sal	last year	uhile uhile	in those days
ahile samma	till now	pāc barse agaḍi	five years ago

T_2 = Adverb of Time--how often, e.g.

sādhai	always	kahile kāhi	sometime, occasionally
barobar	frequently	pheri	again

T_3 = Adverb of Time-at-which, e.g.

car baje	at four O'clock	bihane	in the morning
hijo	yesterday	maṅgal bar	on Tuesday

M_1 = Adverb of Manner - instrumental/source, e.g.

laṭhile	with stick	haijale	of cholera

M_2 = Adverb of Manner - how, e.g.

bessari	hard	chiṭo chiṭo	hurriedly

P = Adverb of Place, e.g.

gharma	at home	ghar baṭa	from home
ghar tira	towards home	rukh muni	beneath the tree

The sequence within T_3 is

day + part of the day + clock time,

e.g. hijo bihane car baje

yesterday morning at four O'clock

Illustrations

Cm + S + O + Cm + Cm + Cm + Cm + R + V

uhile uhile + usle + melai + sãdhai + bihana saberai +
In those days + by him + to me + always + early in the morning +
leṭhile + bessari + ṭaukoma + hanthyo
with stick + with great force + on the head + used to hit

"In those days he always used to hit me on my head with a stick early in the morning"

Cm + S + Cm + Cm + Cm + Cm + R + V

des berse agaḍi + u + dinahũ + bihane + chebaje + saikel cedhera +
ten years ago + he + every day + in the morning + at 6 + riding
iskul + janthyo
on a bike + school + used to go

"Ten years ago every day he used to go to school at 6 in the morning on bike."

S + Cm + V

u	[heijale] [hijo] [punama]	meryo	He died	[of cholera] [yesterday]. [in Poona]

Pt + Cm + Cm + S + V

melai + acel + peṭakkai + bhok + lagdaine
to-me + these days + at all + hunger + don't feel
"These days I don't feel hungry at all".

S + Cm + R + V

u ram saṅe nepal gayo

He went to Nepal with Ram

S + Cm + Cm + R + V

u + hijo + cãdai + ghar + gayo

he + yesterday + early + home + went

"Yesterday he went home early."

u + hijo + bihana + ghar ma + thiena

he + yesterday + in the morning + at home + was not

"He was not at home yesterday morning."

Cm + Pt + R + Cm + S + V

hijo + mero + u saṅe + naramro sita + jhagaḍa + bhayo

yesterday + my + with him + fiercely + quarrel + happened

"Yesterday I quarreled with him fiercely."

S + Cm + Pr + V

u + nepal armi ma + kaptan + cha

he + in Nepal army + Captain + is

"He is a Captain in Nepal army."

Pt + S + Cm + Pr + V

malai + yo thaũ + kahilai + ramailo + lagena

to me + this place + never + pleasant + didn't feel

"I never felt this place pleasant."

S + O + Cm + V

usle melai [jor site / lathile] pityo — He beat me [hard / with a stick].

S + Cm + O + V

usle [chito chito / cemcale / hotel ma] bhat khayo — He ate rice [hurriedly / with a spoon / in the restaurant].

S + R + Cm + O + V

usle melai [chito chito / cemcale] bhat khwayo — He fed me rice [hurriedly / with a spoon].

usle melai ramro site anreji sikayo

He taught me English well.

S + O + Cm + Pr + V

usle melai kahilai niras parena

He never made me disappointed.

S + R + R + Cm + R + O + V

usle + melai + nepal bata + baink marphat + punama +

he + to me + from Nepal + through bank + to Poona +

paisa + pathayo

money + sent

"He sent me money to Poona from Nepal through bank."

5.3.3. Adsententials

Adsententials are those parts of a sentence that lie outside the propositional core of the sentence and normally occur, if at all they occur, preceding the core. They modify the sentence as a whole and, more often than not, act as a semantic link between the sentence of which it is a part and the sentence preceding it. They may consist of a word, a phrase or a clause.

Sentence qualifiers (2.3.6) function as Adsententials.

Examples (Adsententials underlined)

saed ram bholi aũdaina (hola)

Perhaps Ram won't come tomorrow.

[sacai bhanne ho bhane / bastabma] uslai ke pani aũdaina

[To tell you the truth / In fact] he doesn't know anything.

satta es barema malai kehi pani thaha chaina

By God! I don't know anything about it.

kripaya cup lagnus

Please be quiet.

hune bhae aja rati yahĩ basa

If manageable stay here tonight.

teso bhae bholi timi naau

Then/If so/In that case don't come tomorrow.

5.3.4. Function-Form Correlation

1. S ------- (i) NP-le ~ NP / V-tr, V-ditr, V-tr-fac, V-ditr-fac; Present Simple, Habitual, Progressive

(ii) NP-le / V-tr elsewhere

(iii) NP / elsewhere

Note Whenever NP-le is in free variation with NP, NP-le is more frequent than NP except when the verb is in Progressive aspect and takes an inanimate object in which case the latter is more frequent than the former.

2. O ------- (i) NP-lai / V-tr-lai, V-tr-fac

(ii) NP-lai ~ NP / anim, V-tr

(iii) NP / V-ditr, V-ditr-fac; inanim, V-tr

3. Pt ------- (i) NP - [saṅge / site / ma] / V-Pt-intr

(ii) NP-ko / V-pt-intr, V-pt-semitr

(iii) NP-lai / V-pt-cop, V-pt-intr, V-pt-semitr

4. Pr ------- [NP / AP / PP]

5. R ------- [AdvP of Place / NP-lai / NP-sanа/sita / NP-dekhi / NP-baṭa/dwara / NP-ko lagi]

Examples

1.(i) usle - u melai sadhai piṭche	He always beats me.
usle - u raksi khanche	He drinks liquor.
usle - u dinahũ cinema herche	He sees a film daily.
usle - u melai paisa dinche	He gives me money.
usle - u melai gijaũdaiche	He is teasing me.
usle - u paisa cordaithyo	He was stealing money.
usle - u baccalai bhat khwaũdaiche	He is feeding rice to the child.
(ii) usle melai harayo	He defeated me.
usle jhyal kholyo	He opened the window.
usle melai katha sunayo	He told me a story.
(iii) u dheni cha	He is rich.
u maryo	He died.
u gher jãdaiche	He is going home.

2.(i) usle malai [piṭyo / gijayo / harayo] He [beat / teased / defeated] me.

(ii) usle timro amalai - timro ama dekhyo He saw your mother.

usle baglai - bag maryo He killed a tiger.

(iii)	usle malai [paisa / becca] diyo	He gave me [money / the child].
	usle timro ghar dekhyo	He saw your house.
3.(i)	ram saṅe dherai paisa che	Ram has a lot of money.
(ii)	ramko gopalsaṅga jhagaḍa bhayo	Ram had a quarrel/fight with Gopal.
	ramko dherai baccaharu chan	Ram has many children.
	sitako chora bhayo	Sita got(gave birth to) a son.
(iii)	malai yo philim ramro lagena	I did not find this film good.
	malai riṅata lagyo	I felt giddy.
	malai sarpadekhi ḍar lagcha	I am afraid of snakes.
4.	u merobhai ho	He is my younger brother.
	u garib che	He is poor.
	yokalam ramko ho	This pen is Ram's.
	u dubidama che	He is in dilemma.
5.	u iskul/iskulma gayo	He went to school.
	u mecma basyo	He sat on a chair.
	āp rukhbaṭa meroṭaukoma khasyo	The mango fell from the tree on my head.
	u punabaṭa nepal gayo	He went to Nepal from Poona.

usle melai paisa diyo	He gave me money.
me u sańe/site bajhē	I quarrelled with him.
me bagdeki deraũchu	I am afraid of tiger.
usle mebaṭe phaida uṭhayo	He made profit through me.
usle piundwara khabar paṭhayo	He sent the message through a peon.
usle ramkolagi kalam kinyo	He bought a pen for Ram.

5.4. Sentence Variations

The term 'variation' implies the notion of something being 'derived' or 'transformed' from something 'basic'. The 'basic' is the norm and the 'derived' or 'transformed' is its variant.

Here we shall discuss the processes involved in the derivation or transformation of

1. 're' - Statements,
2. Exclamatory Sentences,
3. Passive Sentences,
4. Emphatic Sentences and
5. Questions

from the basic, simple, active sentences. We shall also examine how negative constructions are derived from affirmative ones.

The process of derivation may involve (a) change in intonation pattern, (b) addition of a particle. It may lead to deletion of certain constituent part(s) obligatorily or optionally.

This section will conclude with brief notes on Zero Anaphora and on Reordering within a Sentence.

Imperative and Optative sentences are not discussed here because they are not variants of simple statements. They are as basic as simple statements. Refer to Aux-Fin-Expansion chart (5.1.6.1.)

5.4.1. re-Statement

When re is added to a statement at the end of it, it suggests that the statement is either a cherished traditional belief (usually superstitious) of the speaker's community or a rumour heard by the speaker who is not sure of it.

Examples

biralole baṭo kaṭyo bhane alakchin huncha re

It is believed that the crossing of the road by a cat is a sign of bad omen.

amerikama seto sun paincha re

It is said that white gold is available in America.

cainijheru bãdarko masu khanchan re

It is said that Chinese eat monkey's flesh.

The particle re can be replaced by the finite verb forms bhanchan "(All/People/They) say" or bhanincha "(It) is said" without any change in meaning. It is to be noted that in this case the statement is reduced to an embedded sentence and that the subject of the embedding sentence is obligatorily deleted both in active and passive sentences.

5.4.2. Exclamation

Exclamatory sentences can be formed in two ways: (1) by changing the intonation pattern of a statement, and (2) by adding exclamatory particles. For (1) refer to 2(ii) of 5.4.5.

Exclamatory particles may occur alone as a sentence by itself or be followed by a sentence which may be a statement, a question or a command/request. The sentence following an exclamatory particle may have its subject and verb deleted.

For a list of exclamatory particles refer to 2.3.5.2.

Examples

sette maile uslai pahile kahilei dekheko chaina

By God!/I swear! I have never seen him before.

dhat yesto kam pani garne ho

You fool! is it a thing to be done.
(What a shame for you to do such a thing.)

here siba bicarako sarbanasai bhayo

Alas! poor fellow is completely ruined.

aha kya ramro — Waw! how beautiful!

che kasto ghinlagdo — How dirty it is!

cup nakara — Silence! don't shout/talk.

syabas sadai esai garnu — Well done! always do like this.

dhikkar jabo esto kam pani garna sakenau

How humiliating/embarrasing! You could not do even such a thing.

dhikkar eti pani garna sakdainau

Damn it! can't you do even this much?

5.4.3. Passivization

When an active sentence is passivized three things undergo change:

1. The Active Verb Stem is changed into the corresponding Passive Verb Stem by affixing the passive marker /i/. Passive stems follow the same alternation rules as the other i-ending verb stems for which refer to 4.2.3.
2. The Object of the active sentence becomes the Subject of the passive sentence. This Subject has the same formal realization as that of the Subject of an intransitive verb and agrees with the passive verb in Gender, Number and Person.
3. The Subject of the active sentence, if not deleted, occurs along with the postposition /dwara/ or /bate/ "by" and syntactically functions as a Circumstantial in the passive sentence.

Examples

Active

biralo-le musa(-lai) mar-yo — The cat killed the rat.
cat-by rat(-to) killed

Passive

biralo-dwara musa mar-i-yo — The rat was killed by the cat
cat-by rat was killed

Active

ram-le	[me-lai]	piṭ-yo	Ram beat	[me]
	[hami-lai]			[us]
	[timi-lai]			[you(Sg)]
	[timiheru-lai]			[you(Pl)]
	[us-lai]			[him]
	[un-lai]			[her]
	[uniharu-lai]			[them]

Passive

ram-baṭe	[me piṭ-i-ẽ]	[I was beaten]	by Ram
	[hami piṭ-i-yaũ]	[We were beaten]	
	[timi piṭ-i-yau]	[You were beaten]	
	[timiharu piṭ-i-yau]	[You were beaten]	
	[u piṭ-i-yo]	[He was beaten]	
	[uni piṭ-i-in]	[She was beaten]	
	[uniharu piṭ-i-e]	[They were beaten]	

In Nepali passive constructions are used mainly when the Subject of the active constructions is not focussed, i.e., when it is not the centre of attention. The Subject (of the active construction) is, therefore, normally deleted in passive constructions, e.g.

yahā̃ hawaijahaj bana-in-che
Aeroplane is made here.

ecei bejarma cini pa-ī-deine

Now-a-days sugar is not to be found (i.e. not available) in bazaar.

kyanserko kehi upecar cheine bhen-in-che

It is said that cancer has no remedy.

Passive stems go with both the tenses, all aspects and all moods other than Obligation, Imperative, Second Imperative and Proposal moods.

Examples

euṭa kam gar-i-nuthyo arkei kam gar-i-echo

Whereas one particular work had to be done, the other work had been done.

bhulle yo kam gar-i-eche

By mistake this work has been done.

pahile pahile yo kam yahā gar-in-thyo

In those days this work used to be done here.

ajkal yo kam yahā gar-ī-deine

These days this work is not done here.

ahile yo kam gar-ī-daiche

Now this work is being done.

car baje bhitra yo kam garisak-i-eche

This work has been done by four O'clock.

esto kam pahile pani gar-i-eko thyo

This type of work had been done before also.

yo kam niket bhabisema gar-i-neche

This work will be done in near future.

5.4.4. Emphasis

An element in a sentence can be emphasized in three ways:

1. adding emphatic particles
2. reduplicating Verb-Fin
3. Converting the Verb-Fin into Verb-Non-Fin and ending the sentence with the element emphasized + ho. The element emphasized takes an emphatic particle optionally.

1. Adding Emphatic Particles

i) nai "that particular person, thing etc. and not any one else as a substitute".

Examples

S + R + Cm + O + V

usle melai aje sinema dekhaunu parche

He should show me a movie today.

S-emphasized

us-ai-le - - - -

He (not any other fellow) should show me a movie today.

R-emphasized

- melainai - - -

He should show me (not any one else as a substitute to me) a movie today.

S-emphasized

- - ajai - -

He should show me a movie right today. (not on some other day).

O-emphasized

- - - sinemai -

He should show me a movie (not any other thing as a substitute to it) today.

V-emphasized

- - - - dekhaunai parche

He must show me a movie today.

Allomorphic Variations of { nai }

/ai/ / [C] —
[a]
[o]

base a, o ------- Ø, e.g.

kalam	pen	kalam-ai
paisa	money	pais-ai
chiṭo	quickly	chiṭ-ai

/nai/ / [i] —, e.g.
[u]
[e]

mathi	up	mathi-nei
alu	potato	alu-nei
pasale	shop-keeper	pasale-nei

/i/ / e —

aja	to-day	aja-i
tala	down	tala-i

ā (of ā ending words) ------- ī, e.g.

yahā	here	yahī

When a word ends in ei the consonant immediately preceding it is reduplicated, e.g.

sabei	all	sabbei
sẽdei	always	sẽddei

Personal proper nouns and pronouns when emphasized may change in one of the three ways.

(a) according to the rules just mentioned above, e.g.

ram	Ram	ram-ei
kamala	Kamala	kamal-ei
timi	yore	timi-nei

(b) It may take /nei/, e.g.

ram	ram-nei
kamala	kakala-nei
timi	timi-nei

(c) It may take /aphai/ oneself, e.g.

ram	ram - aphai
kamala	kamala - aphai
timi	timi - aphai

Other emphatic particles are :

(ii) pani also

(iii) matrai only

pani and matrai can occur wherever / nai / occurs.

(iv) na

na can occur only following an Imperative Verb form, e.g.

bholi au	Come tomorrow!
bholi au-na	Come tomorrow (Emphatic)!

(v) ta

ta can occur only following a finite verb form, e.g.

maile sabai bhat khae ta timi ke garna sakchau

I did eat all the rice. What can you do?

(vi) [abasse / pakka] (pani) definitely, certainly.

ram bholi [abasse / pakka] (pani) aũcha

Ram will definitely/certainly come tomorrow.

2. Reduplicating Verb-Fin

ram bholi aũcha	Ram will come tomorrow.
ram bholi aũcha aũcha	Ram will definitely come tomorrow.

u bihana dekhi khelirahekocha khelirahekocha

He has been playing since morning. ("has been playing" emphasized)

3. Converting Verb-Fin into Verb-Non-Fin.

Examples

ramle sitalai piṭyo	Ram beat Sita.

Subject emphasized.

sitalai piṭne ram(ai) ho	It is Ram who beat Sita.

Object emphasized.

ramle piṭeko sitalai(nai) ho	It is Sita whom Ram beat.

Note Verb cannot be emphasized this way.

5.4.5. Questions

In Nepali questions can be asked in three different ways:

1. using interrogative pronouns, proadjectives, proadverbs or prointensifiers,
2. changing intonation pattern, and
3. adding question tags(particles).

The first one is 'basic' and the last two are 'derived' or 'transformed'.

1. Using Interrogative Pronouns etc.

Unlike in English no positional change of the pronouns etc. takes place.

Examples

u ko ho — Who is he?
he who is

(Compare u ram ho — He is Ram)
he Ram is

yo ke ho — What is this?
this what is

timilai kesto(kisimko) chata manpercha
to-you what kind of umbrella like
What kind of umbrella do you like?

timilai ketro bakas cahinche
to-you how big box is needed
How big a box is needed to you?

timilai ketiwaṭa mec(heru) cahinche
to-you how many chairs are needed
How many chairs are needed to you?

u kehā che — Where is he?
he where is

u kehile aūche — When does/will he come?
he when comes

u keti chiṭo degurne sekche — How fast can he run?
he how fast run can

2. Changing Intonation Pattern

i) Statement ------- Question

Statement

u bholi aūche — He will come tomorrow.

Question

(ke) u bholi aūche — Will he come tomorrow?

ii) Statement ------- Question!

Statement

u meryo — He died

Question

u meryo! — He died!?

This question implies the following senses:

a) The speaker just hears some one saying u meryo "He died".

b) This is a piece of news he is hearing for the first time.

c) He is surprised and shocked. (he may be delighted, annoyed etc. depending upon the content of the sentence he hears.)

d) He does not anticipate an answer. The addressee may, however, answer him, e.g.

S_1:	u maryo	He died.
S_2:	u maryo:	He died?
(S_1:	ho u maryo	Yes he died)

3. Adding Question Tags

Questions constructed by adding question tags can be divided into two groups:

1. First-hand questions
2. Catch-up questions

First hand questions can be asked without any conversation preceding it. Catch-up questions must be preceded by a certain statement. The question catches up this statement made by the addressee and turns it into the question. Catch-up questions can be further divided into two sub-groups:

i) Catch-up statement + question tag

ii) Simply question tag.

In (ii) the catch-up statement is not repeated. Normally it contains only the question tag. It may, at times, contain a verb but it is a different verb altogether.

3.1. First-hand Questions

i) Polarity or Yes/No questions

Statement ------- Statement + ho (ki hoina)

This question is asked to test the knowledge of the addressee, e.g.

dui re dui car hunche ho(ki hoina) Two and two make four, yes or no?

ii)(a) re-Statement ----- re-Statement + ho - hoina

This question is asked to confirm the rumour the questioner has heard. It can also be asked to test the knowledge of the addressee, e.g.

amerikama seto sun paincha re ho - hoina

It is said that white gold is available in America. Is it true?

(Note The addressee may or may not know the information.)

ii)(b) Statement ------- Statement + [hote / hoinate]

Same as (ii-a) except that the questioner believes that the addressee knows the true answer e.g.

amerikama seto sun paincha re [hote / hoinate]

It is said that white gold is available in America. Is it true?

(Note The addressee, the questioner believes, knows the correct information. re here (i.e. section ii) can be replaced by bhanchan "(They) say" or bhanicha "(It) is said" or by the non-finite forms bhaneko "saying" without any change in meaning.)

iii) Statement ------- Statement + hagi

The questioner believes that the statement is true.

u royo hagi	He cried, didn't he?
timi hijo iskul gaenau hagi	You didn't go to school yesterday, did you?

iv) Question ------- Question (+ hā)

ram kata gayo (hā)	Where did Ram go?
tala ko (hā)	Who is down there?

v)(a) Imperative Sentence ------- Imperative Sentence + hai

The questioner is insisting and inviting confirmation.

bholi au hai	Come tomorrow, O.K.?

(b) <u>Imperative Sentence</u> ------- <u>Imperative Sentence</u> + haita

The questioner is more forceful and is demanding acceptance and promise. He may be threatening as well, e.g.

bholi au haita	Come tomorrow, will you?
abadekhi kahilai yaso nagara haita	From now on never do like this, will you?

3.2. <u>Catch-up questions</u>

i) Catch-up statement + question tags

a) Statement ------- Statement + ta

The questioner is inviting confirmation, e.g.

timi bholi āuchau ta	Are you coming tomorrow? (confirm it.)

b) Statement ------- Statement + re

The questioner is skeptical, e.g.

S_1: u birami che — He is sick.

S_2: u birami che re — Is he sick?(I don't believe it.)

c) Statement ------- Statement + re

The questioner is inquisitive, e.g.

S_1: u birami che — He is sick.

S_2: u birami che re — Did you say he was sick?

ii) Simply Question Tags

a) S_1: u birami che — He is sick.

S_2: ho re — Really? (I don't believe it, I am doubtful)

b) S_1: uslai cij͡tha paryo — He won a lottery.

S_2: sãcai (ho) — Really? (Are you serious?)

c) S_1: bholi ma timilai sinema dekhaũla — Tomorrow I will show you a movie.

S_2: satte — Do you swear?

d) S_1: . . . . .

S_2: ke re — What did you say?(I didn't hear you. Say again.)

e) S_1: . . . . .

S_2: ke re: — What did you say? (threatening)

5.4.6. Negation

Negation of a construction affects only its VP. In other words the process of negation (of a construction —Finite or Non-Finite) involves conversion of the VP (of the construction) from its affirmative form to its negative form. With Non-Finite constructions and Non-Statement/Question Finite constructions the process involves simply an insertion of the negative particle /ne/ at some appropriate place within the affirmative construction. With Statement/Question Finite constructions the process involved is a bit more complicated.

The affirmative Finite VP ends in one of the three be-verbs-forms: /ch-C/, /thy-C/ or /h-C/. Negation of Statement/Question Finite constructions therefore amounts to the negation of these three verb forms which is discussed below in the form of "Affirmative ------- Negative" rules.

1. Finite Constructions.

1.1. Statement/Question

Rule 1. ch-C ------- (i) dein-C/ Stem (+ HABI) —
(ii) ne-ch-C / Stem + SURP —
(iii) chein-C / elsewhere

Subrules
(1) dein ----- din - n / C: ISg/IIISgFem; Stem: e/u-ending
dein - n/ C: IPl/II; Stem: V-ending
n/ C: ISg/IIISgFem; Stem: e/i/o-ending
din / C: ISg/IIISgFem; Stem: C-ending
dein / elsewhere.

(2) Realization of C

P	No.	G	Affirmative	Negative
I	Sg		u	e
	Pl		əū	əū
II			əu	əu
III	Sg	Non-Fem	e/ə/ən	e/e/ən
		Fem	in/e/in	ən/e/ən
	Pl		ən	ən

Note

1. In Rule 1(ii) the realization of C in Negative constructions is the same as its realization in Affirmative constructions(as given above).

2. IIISg has three sets of C-realizations as follows: (their corresponding pronominal forms are given within brackets).

		Affirmative	Negative	
Neutral	Non-Fem	e	e	(u)
	Fem	in	ən	(uni)
Intimate	Non-Fem	ə	e	(u)
	Fem	e	e	(u)
Sub-Honorific	Non-Fem	ən	ən	(uni)
	Fem	in	ən	(uni)

Neutral form is used in general descriptions. Intimate form is used (i) among intimate friends, (ii) with socially inferiors and (iii) with younger age group. Sub-honorific form is used (i) with respectable persons in general description, and (ii) with younger age group whom the speaker shows some regards.

3. Sub-honorific affirmative /in/ is in free variation with /ən/ in Rule I(ii) and (iii).

4. Some communities, especially those mixed up with Newar communities don't make Non-Fem/Fem distinction in III Sg. the forms used in both the cases being those given under Non-Fem heading above.

5. Exception: [Neutralization of C].

tapaĩ (həru) gərnu-hun-ch-ə gərnu-hun-n-ə
wahā (həru) gərnu-hun-ch-ə gərnu-hun-n-ə

You Sg/Pl(Hon) do don't do
He/She/They(Hon) do don't do

Illustrations

/gər/ do; /au/ come; /kha/ eat

(i) gər-ch-C do (simple)

Affirmative	Negative
gər-ch-u	gər-din-ə
gər-ch-əũ	gər-dəin-əũ
gər-ch-əu	gər-dəin-əu
gər-ch-ə/e/ən	gər-dəin-ə/e/ən
gər-ch-in/e/in	gər-din-ən/e/ən
gər-ch-ən	gər-dəin-ən

aū-ch-u	aū-din-ə ~ aun-n-ə
aū-ch-əū	aū-dəin-əū ~ aun-n-əū
aū-ch-əu	aū-dəin-əu ~ aun-n-əu
aū-ch-ə/ə/ən	aū-dəin-ə/ə/ən
aū-ch-in/e/in	aū-din-ən/ə/ən ~ aun-n-ən/ə/ən
aū-ch-ən	aū-dəin-ən
khan-ch-u	khan-n-ə
khan-ch-əū	khā-dəin-əū- ~ khan-n-əū
khan-ch-əu	khā-dəin-əu ~ khan-n-əu
khan-ch-ə/ə/ən	khā-dəin-ə/ə/ən
khan-ch-in/e/in	khan-n-ən/ə/ən
khan-ch-ən	khā-dəin-ən

gər-də-ch-C ~ gər-ch-C   do (Habitual)

gər-də-ch-u ~ gər-ch-u	gər-din-ə
gər-də-ch-əū ~ gər-ch-əū	gər-dəin-əū
gər-də-ch-əu ~ gər-ch-əu	gər-dəin-əu
gər-də-ch-ə/ə/ən ~ gər-ch-ə/ə/ən	gər-dəin-ə/ə/ən
gər-də-ch-in/e/in ~ gər-ch-in/e/in	gər-din-ən/ə/ən
gər-də-ch-ən ~ gər-ch-ən	gər-dəin-ən

(ii) gər-e-ch-C   do (Surprise)

gər-i-ch-u	gər-i-nə-ch-u
gər-e-ch-əū	gər-e-nə-ch-əū
gər-e-ch-əu	gər-e-nə-ch-əu

gər-e-ch-ə/e/ən gər-e-nə-ch-ə/e/ən

gər-i-ch-in/e/in gər-i-nə-ch-in/e/in

gər-e-ch-ən gər-e-nə-ch-ən

(iii) Miscellaneous

(u birami) ch-ə/chəin-ə (He) is/isn't (sick)

(u sangə dherəi paisə)ch-ə/chəin-ə (He) has/doesnot have (a lot of money)

(u) gər-i-raheko-ch-ə/gər-i-raheko-chəin-ə (He) is doing/isn't doing

(usle) gər-i-sekeko-ch-ə/gər-i-sekeko-chəin-ə (He) has done/hasn't done

(usle) gər-eko-ch-ə/gər-eko-chəin-ə (He) has done/hasn't done

(usle) gər-ne-ch-ə/gər-ne-chəin-ə (He) will do/won't do

Rule 2

thy-C ------- (i) thy-en-C ~ dəinə-thy-C ~ nə-thy-C/Stem + RABI-

(ii) thy-en-C / elsewhere

Subrules

1. thy-en-C ~ dəinə-thy-C ~ nə-thy-C -------

thy-en-C ~ dəinə-thy-C/ (i) C: all; Stem: C-ending

(ii) C: IIISg Non-Fem/IIIPl; Stem: V-ending

thy-en-C ~ dəinə-thy-C ~ nə-thy-C/C: other than IIISg Non-Fem/IIIPl; Stem : V-ending

2. dəinə ------- dinə ~ dəinə /C:ISg/IIISgFem; Stem: other than a/i/e-ending

dəinə / elsewhere

3. en ------- in / C: ISg/IIISg.Fem

4. thy ------- th / $-V^F$

5. Realization of C

P	No.	G	Affirmative	Negative
I	Sg		ẽ	ə
	Pl		əũ	əũ
II			əu	əu
III	Sg	Non-Fem	o/o/e	ə/e/ən
		Fem	in/i/in	ən/ə/ən
	Pl		e	ən

This is applicable only when C is preceded by the negative marker /en/. In other negative constructions the realization of C remains the same as that of its affirmative counterpart. In other words C of deine-thy-C and na-thy-C is the same as the C of thy-C.

Notes

1. thy-C ------- y-C / Stem + SIMP ---- e.g.

gər + Ø + thy-o ----- gər-y-o (He) did

gər + Ø + th-en-ə ----- gər-ən-ə (He) didn't do.

2. In slow speech thy-C may be realized as thiy-C, e.g.

Normal speech	slow speech	
(u gherma) thy-o	thiy-o	(He) was (at home)

3. For three sets of C-realizations in IIISg refer to Note 2 in Rule 1.

Illustrations

(i) Habitual

/gər-də-thy-C - gər-thy C / used to do

/aū-də-thy-C - aū-thy C / used to come

khan-thy-C / used to eat

Affirmative

gər-də-th-ē	-	gər-th-ē
gər-də-thy-əū	-	gər-thy-əū
gər-də-thy-əu	-	gər-thy-əu
gər-də-thy-o/o/e	-	gər-thy-o/o/e
gər-də-th-in/i/in	-	gər-th-in/i/in
gər-də-th-e	-	gər-th-e

Negative

gər-th-in-ə	-	gər-dinə - dəinə-th-ē
gər-th-en-əū	-	gər-dəinə-thy-əū
gər-th-en-əu	-	gər-dəinə-thy-əu
gər-th-en-ə/ə/en	-	gər-dəinə-thy-o/o/e
gər-th-in-ən/ə/ən	-	gər-dəinə - dəinə-th-in/i/in
gər-th-en-en	-	gər-dəinə-th-e

Affirmative

aū-də-th-ē	-	aū-th-ē
aū-də-thy-əū	-	aū-thy-əū
aū-də-thy-əu	-	aū-thy-əu

au-da-thy-o/o/e - au-thy-o/o/e

au-da-th-in/i/in - au-th-in/i/in

au-da-th-e - au-th-e

Negative

au-th-in-e - au-dine - daina-th-e - aun-na-th-e

au-th-en-au - au-daine-thy-au - aun-na-thy-au

au-th-en-au - au-daine-thy-au - aun-na-thy-au

au-th-en-a/a/an - au-daina-thy-o/o/e

au-th-in-an/a/an - au-dine - daina-th-in/i/in - aun-na-th-in/i/in

au-th-en-an - au daine-th-e

Affirmative

khan-th-e

khan-thy-au

khan-thy-au

khan-thy-o/o/e

khan-th-in/i/in

khan-th-e

Negative

khan-th-in-e - kha-daine-th-e - khan-ne-th-e

khan-th-en-au - kha-daine-thy-au - khan-na-thy-au

khan-th-en-au - kha-daine-thy-au - khan-na-thy-au

khan-th-en-a/a/an - kha-daine-thy-o/o/e

khan-th-in-an/a/an - kha-daine-th-in/i/in - khan-na-th-in/i/in

khan-th-en-an - kha-daine-th-e

(ii) <u>Simple</u>

gər-y-C did

gər-ē	gər-in-ə
gər-y-əũ	gər-en-əũ
gər-y-əu	gər-en-əu
gər-y-o/o/e	gər-en-ə/ə/ən
gər-in/i/in	gər-in-ən/ə/ən
gər-e	gər-en-ən

(iii) <u>Miscellaneous</u>

(u birami) thy-o/th-en-e

(u seṅ ə dherəi paisa) thy-o/th-en-e

(u) gər-i-raheko-thy-o/gər-i-raheko-th-en-e

(usle) gər-i-sakeko-thy-o/gər-i-sakeko-th-en-e

(usle) gər-eko-thy-o/gər-eko-th-en-e

(usle) gər-ne-thy-o/gər-ne-th-en-e

(He) was/wasn't (sick).

(He) had/didn't have (a lot of money).

(He) was doing/wasn't doing.

(He) had done/hadn't done.

(He) had done/hadn't done.

(He) would have done/wouldn't have done.

<u>Rule 3</u>

h-C ------- h-<u>oin - ein</u>-C

Subrule

Realization of C

P	No.	G	Affirmative	Negative
I	Sg		ũ ~ o	ə
	Pl		əũ	əũ
II			əu ~ o	əu ~ ə
III	Sg.	Non-Fem	o/o/un	ə/ə/ən
		Fem	un/o/un	ən/ə/ən
	Pl		un	un

Note For three sets of C-realizations in III Sg refer to Note No.2 in Rule 1.

Illustrations

h-C be

h-ũ ~ h-o   h-oin ~ əin-ə

h-əũ   h-oin ~ əin-əũ

h-əu ~ h-o   h-oin ~ əin-əu ~ h-oin ~ əin-ə

h-o/o/un   h-oin ~ əin-ə/ə/ən

h-un/o/un   h-oin ~ əin-ən/ə/ən

h-un   h-oin ~ əin-ən

1.2. Non-Statement/Question

Rule 4

Stem + [IMP] [2ND IMP] [PRO] [OPT]r -----nə + Stem + [IMP] [2ND IMP] [PRO] [OPT]r

Examples

gar-e	Do!	na-gar-e	Don't do!
gar-nu	Do!	na-gar-nu	Don't do!
gar-aũ	Let us do.	na-gar-aũ	Let us not do.
gar-os	May he do!	na-gar-os	May he not do!

Rule 5

Stem + i + [PROG / PERF-DET]$_r$ + [IMP / 2ND IMP / PRO / OPT]$_{r'}$ ---- Stem + i + na + [PROG / PERF-DEF]$_r$ + [IMP / 2ND IMP / PRO / OPT]

Examples

gar-i-rakh-a - rah-u	Be doing!
gar-i-rakh - rah-nu	Be doing!
gar-i-rakh - rah-aũ	Let us be doing.
gar-i-rakh - rah-os	May he be doing!
gar-i-sak-e	Complete doing.
gar-i-sak-nu	Complete doing.
gar-i-sak-aũ	Let us complete doing.
gar-i-sak-os	May he complete doing!

Negative

gar-i-na-rakh-a - Rah-u	Don't be doing.
gar-i-na-rakh - rah-nu	Don't be doing.

gar-i-na-rakh - rah-aũ	Let us not be doing.
gar-i-na-rakh - rah-os	May he not be doing.
gar-i-na-sak-a	Don't complete doing.
gar-i-na-sak-nu	Don't complete doing.
gar-i-na-sak-aũ	Let us not complete doing.
gar-i-na-sak-os	May he not complete doing.

Rule 6

Stem + [PERF-INDEF / PROSP]$_r$ + hos ----- Stem + [PERF-INDEF / PROSP]$_r$ + na + hos

- na + Stem + [PERF-INDEF / PROSP]$_r$ + hos

Examples

gar-eko-hos	May he has done.
gar-ne-hos	May he do.
gar-eko-na-hos - na-gar-eko-hos	May he hasn't done.
gar-ne-na-hos - na-gar-ne-hos	May he not do.

2. Non-Finite Constructions

Rule 7

V-Non-Fin ----- na + V-Non-Fin.

Examples

gar-na/na-gar-na	to do/not to do
gar-nu/na-gar-nu	to do/not to do

ger-e(ma)/na-ger-e(ma)	if (s.o.) does/doesn't do
ger-da/ne-ger-da	when (s.o.) did/didn't do
ger-<u>era</u> - <u>i(kana)</u>/na-ger-i(kane)	having done/without having done
ger-unjel-/na-gerunjel	till the time (s.o.) does/ doesn't do
ger-iraheko/nager-iraheko(manche)	(The man) who is doing/ isn't doing
(usle) ger-eko/na-gr reko(kam)	(The work)(he) did/didn't do
(usle) ger-ne/na-ger-ne(kam)	(The work)(he) will do/won't do

<u>Note</u> When V-Non-Fin contains more than one Aspect/Mood marker the negative marker /na/ may be placed before any one of the Aspect/ Mood markers or before the entire V-Non-Fin without any change in the cumulative meaning of the construction, e.g.

<u>Affirmative</u> gerne bhaeko huno bhaema
1 2 3 4

<u>Negative</u>

na + 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 :	na-gerne bhaeko hune bhaema
1 + na + 2 + 3 + 4 :	gerne-na-bhaeko hune bhaema
1 + 2 + na + 3 + 4 :	gerne bhaeko na-hune bhaema
1 + 2 + 3 + na + 4 :	gerne bhaeko hune na-bhaema

<u>Constituent meanings</u>

1. (s.o.) is going to do
2. it has been decided
3. it is predicted that it will happen
4. if

<u>Cumulative meaning</u>

Affirmative : If predictably (s.o.) is decidedly going to do

Negative : If predictably (s.o.) is decidedly not going to do

5.4.7. A Note on Zero Anaphora

Personal, reflexive and demonstrative pronouns and demonstrative proadverbs can be optionally deleted if the immediate context or the situation at hand makes the reference obvious to the listener.

Examples

1. (timi) kahile ayau — When did (you) come?
   (you) when came

2. ramle (aphno) ghar becyo — Ram sold (his) house.
   Ram (of-self) house sold

3. ram (aphno) chorasite khelirahekothyo
   Ram (of-self) with-son was-playing
   Ram was playing with (his) son.

4. (tyo) ke ho (timile) (malai) (tyo) dekhau
   (that) what is (you) (to-me)(that) show
   What is (that)? (you) show (that)(to me).

5. ma puna pugdakheri (tyahã) pani-parirahekothyo
   I Poona at-the-time-of-reaching (there) water-was-pouring-in
   When I reached Poona it was raining (there).

5.4.3. A Note on Phrase Reordering within a Sentence

Ordering of phrases in Nepali sentences is very flexible. Very many permutations of the constituent phrases are possible, e.g.

1. hijo usle malai aphisma paisa diyo
yesterday he to-me in-office money gave
Yesterday he gave me money in the office.
(This may be taken to be the unmarked order.)

Reorderings

2. hijo malai usle aphisma paisa diyo
3. usle hijo malai aphisma paisa diyo
4. usle malai hijo aphisma paisa diyo
5. malai hijo usle aphisma paisa diyo
6. malai usle hijo aphisma paisa diyo
7. hijo usle aphisma malai paisa diyo
8. hijo malai aphisma usle paisa diyo
9. usle malai aphisma hijo paisa diyo
10. malai usle aphisma hijo paisa diyo

and so forth and so on.

It must be admitted, however, that not all these permutations are equally acceptable nor are they without stylistic differences in use. Thus permutations among the first three elements in the above example (Nos. 1 to 6) are much more common than the corresponding permutations among the last three elements or the permutations between the first three elements and the last three.

5.5. Nepali Sentence Combinations

Sentences in Nepali may be combined in two different ways: (1) by embedding, and (2) by conjoining.

5.5.1. Nepali Sentence Embedding

There are four types of sentence embedding in Nepali:

I. Sentence embedded as Noun Phrase,

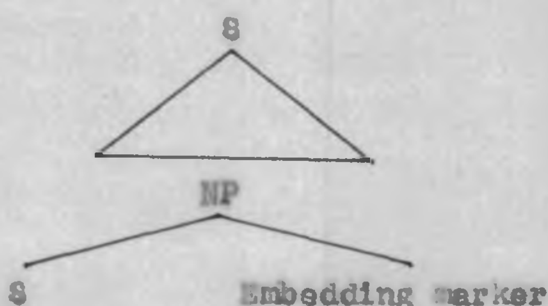
II. Sentence embedded as Relative Clause,

III. Sentence embedded as Circumstantial, and

IV. Sentence embedded as Adverb Phrase.

In illustrations the embedded sentences along with subordinating conjunctions, postpositions etc., if any, serving as embedding markers are enclosed within square brackets [ ] to make them conspicuous.

I. Embedded as Noun Phrase



The "embedded sentence + embedding marker" can be placed at any position before or within the embedding sentence (not within a phrase though).

The markers are <u>bhanere</u>, <u>bhani</u>, <u>bhanne kura</u> and <u>bhanne</u>. Most of the verbs (of the embedding sentence) can take any one of these markers. Some can take only the first two of them. Some may take no marker at all. <u>bhan-</u> will be used as a cover term for all these markers in the examples.

<u>Examples</u>

(Embedded sentences are in their unmarked position.)

1. malai [ram jitcha bhan-] thaha thiyo
   I-to Ram will-win knowing was
   I know that Ram would win.

2. usle [ram dosi cha bhan-] patta lagayo
   he-by Ram guilty is found-out
   He found out that Ram was guilty.

3. usle [ram bholi aũdaina] bhanyo
   he-by Ram tomorrow will not-come said
   He said that Ram would not come tomorrow (i.e. the following day).

4. ramle malai [[u ko ho / u kaha bascha / u yaha kina ayo] bhanera] sodhyo
   Ram-by I-to [[he who is / he where lives / he here why came] marker] asked
   Ram asked me [who he was / where he lived / why he came here].

By way of extraposition the embedded sentence can also occur after the embedding sentence in which case the embedding marker ki precedes it, e.g.

usle bhenyo [ki ram bholi aũdaina]

he-by said that Ram tomorrow will-not-come

He said thatRam would not come tomorrow(i.e. the following day). Note the exact correspondence between the English and Nepali constructions in this case.

Extraposition of the embedded sentence is rare in Nepali especially when it is a question.

The NP made out of the embedded S can occupy any position in the matrix S that an NP normally occupies except that it cannot be the axis of a postposition.

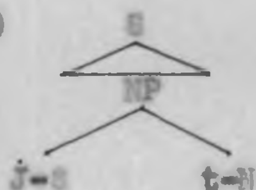
II. Embedded as Relative Clause

Sentences embedded as relative clause can be divided into two groups:

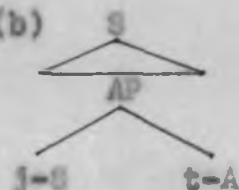
1. embedded in (a) NP, (b) AP, or (c) AdvP

2. embedded in (a) NP, (b) AP, or (c) AdvP where the nucleus is a bare demonstrative.

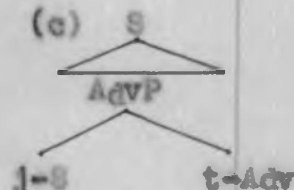
1.(a)



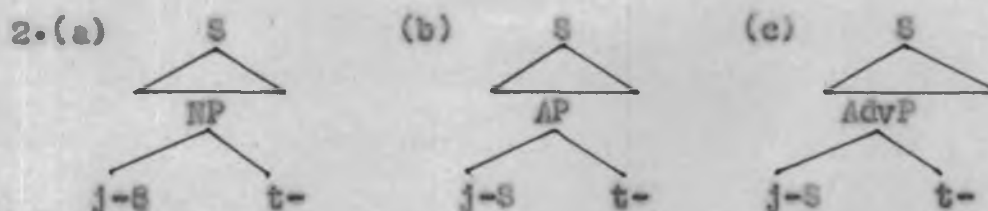
(b)



(c)



2.(a) (b) (c)



The embedded Relative Clause as also the phrase in which it is embedded are marked off by [ ].

Examples

1(a) [[jun cij meile magekothie] tyo cij usle lyayo
which thing I-by had-asked-for that thing he-by brought
He brought that thing which I had asked for.

(b) [[jeti esel u dekhinche] teti
to-which-degree good he appears-to-be to-that-degree
esel] u cheine
good he is-not
He is not as good as he appears to be.

(c) [[jeti chito u degurnesekche] teti chito] kohi peni
fast can-run any one else
degurnesekdaine
can-not-run
No one can run as fast as he can.

2(a) meile [[je usle magyo] tyo] pae
I-by which he-by asked-for that got
I got what he asked for.

(b) [[jasto u dekhincha] tasto] u chaina

like-which he appear-to-be like that he is-not

He is not as he appears to be.

(c) [[jasari maile uslai sawal gare] tasari

in-which-way I-by he-to questioned in-that way

usle malai jawaph diyo

he-by I-to answered

He answered me the way I questioned him.

Note

1. The embedded clauses may undergo further transformations resulting in Non-Fin phrases. The embedding sentence may undergo certain corresponding changes.

1(a)′[[maile mageko] cij] usle lyayo

I-by asked-for thing he-by brought

He brought the thing I asked for.

(English has no equivalent Non-FinP. The nearest is a passive phrase -- He brought the thing asked for by me which is equivalent to the Nepali passive phrase "madwara magieko cij" (the passive of "maile mageko cij") (cf. 5.4.3.))

1(b)′[[dekhine jati] asal] u chaina

as-appears to-which-degree good he is-not.

He is not as good as he appears to be.

1(c)′ [[u jati] chito dagurna] kohi pani sakdaina

he to-which-degree fast run any one else can-not

No one can run as fast as he can.

2(a)′ meile [[usle mageko] (kura)] paē

I got the thing he asked for.

2(b)′ [[u dekhine jestai[] (u) chaine

He is not quite what he appears to be.

2(c)′ [[meile uslai sewal gareko jasari]] usle malai jawaph diyo

He answered me the way I questioned him.

Note that 'j-' disappears only in NP but not in AP or AdvP and that 't-' disappears in all cases.

(English has no Non-Fin phrases equivalent to any of the Non-Fin phrases given above).

2. The NP, AP, AdvP with the t-element as a nucleus occupies its normal position in the embedding S.
3. The j-marked phrase within the Relative Clause occupies its normal position in that clause. (The j-marked phrase is not front-shifted as with the wh-marked phrase in English.)
4. The relative clause can be pulled out and extraposed either at the beginning or at the end for the sake of emphasis, e.g.

   u teti asal chaine [jeti asal u dekhincha]

   he to-that-degree good is-not to-which-degree good he appears to-be

   He is not that good as he appears to be.

   [je usle magyo tyo] meile paē

   what he-by asked-for that I-by got (with front shifting)

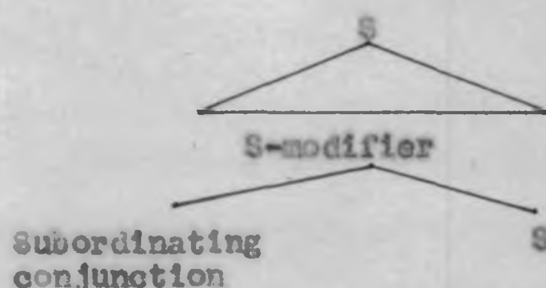
   I got what he asked for.
5. j-: jo, je, jun, jas "which"; jesto "of which kind"; jetro "of which size"; jasari "in which manner"

t-: tyo, tes "that"; testo "of that kind"; tetro "of that size"; teseri "in that manner"

III. Embedded as Circumstantials

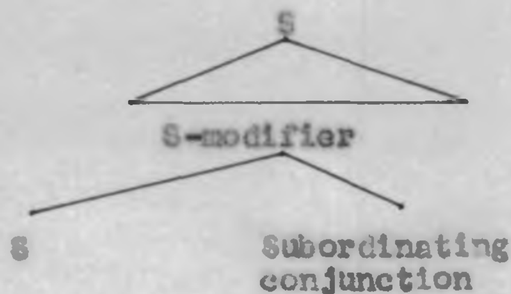
Sentences embedded with the subordinating conjunctions kinebhene "because", edepi "although", ki "whenever", ki "(so) .....that" and (edi) .....bhene "if" are discussed in this section. These conjunctions can be divided into three groups on the basis of their positions relative to the embedded sentences:

A. Subordinate conjunction preceding the embedded sentence.



kinebhene "because"; edepi "although"

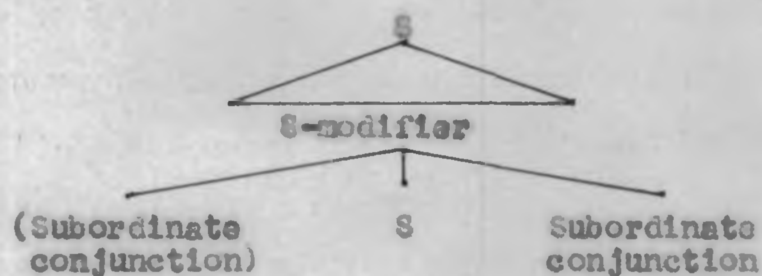
B. Subordinating conjunction following the embedded sentence.



ki "whenever"; ki "(so).....that"

Note: The embedded sentence preceding the second ki (i.e. ki "(so).....that") must contain a proadjective/proadverb such as eti "so (dimension/quantity", esto "so (quality)", eseri "so (manner)."

C. Discontinuous subordinate conjunction flanking the embedded sentence the first half being optionally deletable.



(edi) ..... bhene "if".

The position of the embedded sentence relative to the embedding sentence depends upon the type of subordinating conjunction with which they are connected. The embedded sentence precedes or follows the embedding sentence as follows:

with kinebhene:	always follows
with edepi :	normally precedes
with ki "whenever" :	normally precedes
with ki "(so).....that" :	always precedes
with (edi).....bhene :	normally precedes

Examples

1. aje u ephis jadeine [kinebhene u birami che]
   today he office will-not-go because he sick is
   Today he will not go to office because he is sick.

[2. edepi u birami cha] u aphis jādeicha
although he sick is he office is-going
Although he is sick he is going to the office.

3. [pani paryo ki] mero jiu dukhera āuche
rain fell whenever my body having ached comes
Whenever it rains my body starts aching.

4. [u eti garib che ki] usle ekjor ceppal pani
he so poor is that he-by one-pair chappal even
kinnasekdeina
can-not-buy.
He is so poor that he cannot even buy a pair of chappals.

5. [(edi) malai ciṭṭha paryo bhane] ma japan janechu
I-to lottery fell if I Japan will-go
If I win a lottery I will go to Japan.

The embedded clauses may undergo further transformations resulting in "Non-FinP + Postposition". The Non-FinP ends in "Stem-e" and the postpositions correspond to the subordinating conjunctions are as follows:

kinabhane	=	ko(huna)le	"because"
edepi	=	tapani	"although"
(edi) .....bhane	=	(ma)	"if"

Note

1. The derived "Non-FinP + Postposition" normally precedes the embedding sentence.

2. If the embedded sentence has the same subject/patient as the embedding sentence the subject/Patient in the embedded sentence is optionally deleted.

1: [(u) birami bhae-ko(huna)le] aja u aphis jādaina
(His) being sick today he will not go to office.

2: [(u) birami bhae-tapani] u aphis jādaicha
In spite of (his) being sick he is going to office.

3: [(malai) ciṭṭha pare(-ma)] ma japan janechu
(I) winning a lottery I will go to Japan.

Note The clause followed by the subordinating conjunctions ki "whenever" or ki "(so).....that" has no "Non-FinP + Postposition" counterpart. Conversely there are a few cases in which the "Non-FinP + Postposition" has no counterpart with a "clause + subordinating conjunction".

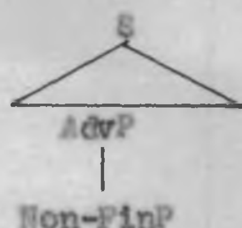
Examples

1. [dudh kinne (-lai)] masita paisa chaina
milk buy (-for) I-with money is not
I have no money to buy milk.

2. [(timi) jahā gaepani] timile dukha paunechau
(you) wherever go(Non-Fin) you-by misery will-get
Wherever you go you will suffer.

3. [u [jana sath / jane bittikai]] pani parnathalyo
he leave (Non-Fin) as soon as rain started falling
As soon as he left it started raining.

IV. Embedded as Adverb Phrase



Sentences embedded as AdvP are always realized as Non-FinP. They can be divided into groups on the basis of the aspect sense they convey and the Non-Fin-endings they correspond to as follows:

1. Perfective : V-ere
2. Non-perfective : V-ne
3. Progressive : V-dai
4. Prospective : V-ne

where V stands for Verb-stem.

The embedded sentence has the same Subject as the matrix sentence; the Subject in the embedded sentence is regularly deleted.

Examples

1. ram [ro-ere] gayo — Ram went after weeping.
   Ram having-wept went

2. ram [khel-ne] gayo — Ram went to play.
   Ram to-play went

3. ram [rū-dai] gayo — Ram went weeping
   Ram weeping went

4. ramle [bholi ghar jane] nirnae garyo
   Ram-by tomorrow home go(Prospective) decision did
   Ram decided to go home tomorrow.

5.5.2. Nepali Sentence Conjoining

Sentences in Nepali can be combined with the help of certain coordinating conjunctions that can be divided into the following three groups:

A. /re/ "and"; /ba/ ~ /athaba/ "or"

B. /na ...na/ "neither...nor";
/ki...ki/ ~ /ya...ya/ "either...or"

C. /tara/ "but".

The reasons for this grouping will become apparent in what follows.

The sentences to be combined must have parallel internal order of phrases.

In citing examples only the first and most frequent alternant in each case will be used for convenience.

Group A

Step 1

The conjunction is placed between S_1 and S_2. If S_1 and S_2 have some shared elements they can be symbolized as follows.

1. XA & XB
2. AY & BY
3. XAY & XBY

where A and B stand for unshared elements, X and Y for the shared elements that precede or follow, and & for /re/ "and" or /ba/ "or".

Step 2

Step 2 operates only when there is at least one shared element present.

XAY & XBY ------- I. XA & BY (common)

II. XAY & BY (less frequent)

III. XAY & XBY(possible but very rare)

where X or Y can be a null element.

Examples

1.(a)	ram hijo ayo	Ram came yesterday.
(b)	syam aje gayo	Shyam went today.
2.(a)	ram maryo	Ram died.
(b)	syam maryo	Shyam died.
3.(a)	ram ayo	Ram came.
(b)	ram gayo	Ram went.
4.(a)	ram bholi jãdaiche	Ram is going tomorrow.
(b)	ram parsi jãdaiche	Ram is going the day after tomorrow.

Step 1

1. ram hijo ayo ra syam aje gayo

   Ram came yesterday and Shyam went today.

2. ram maryo ba syam maryo

   Ram died or Shyam died.

3. ram ayo re ram gayo

Ram came and Ram went.

4. ram bholi jādaiche ba ram parsi jādaiche

Ram is going tomorrow or Ram is going the day after tomorrow.

Step 2

1. not applicable.

2. ram ba syam maryo — Ram or Shyam died.

3. ram ayo re gayo — Ram came and went.

4. ram bholi ba parsi jādaiche — Ram is going tomorrow or the day after tomorrow.

Note

1. The conjunction /re/ "and" can be optionally deleted everywhere, e.g. ramle malai kapi (re) kalam diyo

Ram gave me a note-book and a pen.

2. Constructions like

ram re syam mare — Ram and Shyam died.

are not to be taken as an output of the combination of simple sentences:

a) ram maryo — Ram died.

and b) syam maryo — Shyam died.

(Note the Subject-Verb agreement). These are to be taken as simple sentences, ram re syam "Ram and Shyam" being combined at phrase level.

Group B

Step 1

The conjunction (&'...&) and the sentences to be combined (S_1 and S_2) are placed as follows: $\&' S_1 \& S_2$. As in Group A if S_1 and S_2 have some shared elements they can be symbolized as follows:

1. &'XA&XB
2. &'AY&BY
3. &'XAY&XBY

Step 2

Step 2 operates only when there is at least one shared element present.

&'XAY&XBY ---------	I(a)	X&'AY&BY
	(b)	X&'AY&B
	II(a)	&'XAY&BY
	(b)	&'XAY&B
	III	&'XAY&XBY

where X or Y can be a null element. The ordering is from most common to least common.

Step 3

Step 3 applies optionally to the resultant of Step 2 in those cases where Y contains more than one phrase.

If the resultant of Step 2 ends in a sequence "&BY" i.e., "&$BY_1Y_2...Y_n$", Y_1, Y_2, etc. are deleted successively yielding less common variants until Y_n is reached.

Examples

1(a) ram hijo ayo	Ram came yesterday.
(b) syam aje gayo	Shyam went today.
2(a) ram royo	Ram wept.
(b) ram hāsyo	Ram laughed.
3(a) ram royo	Ram wept.
(b) syam royo	Shyam wept.
4(a) ramle bhat pekayo	Ram cooked rice.
(b) ramle masu pekayo	Ram cooked meat.
5(a) ramle melai paisa diyo	Ram gave me money.
(b) ramle melai kelam diyo	Ram gave me a pen.
6(a) ramle melai paisa diyo	Ram gave me money.
(b) ramle uslai paisa diyo	Ram gave him money.

Step 1

1. ne ram hijo ayo ne syam aje gayo
   Neither Ram came yesterday nor Shyam went today.

2. ne ram royo ne ram hāsyo
   Neither Ram wept nor Ram laughed.

3. ne ram royo ne syam royo
Neither Ram wept nor Shyam wept.

4. ne ramle bhat pakayo ne ramle masu pakayo
Neither Ram cooked rice nor Ram cooked meat.

5. ne ramle melai paisa diyo ne ramle melai kalam diyo
Neither Ram gave me money nor Ram gave me a pen.

6. ne ramle melai paisa diyo ne ramle uslai paisa diyo
Neither Ram gave me money nor Ram gave him money.

Step 2

1. not applicable.

2.I(a)	ram ne royo ne hāsyo	Ram neither wept nor laughed.
(b)	same as (a)	
II(a)	ne ram royo ne hāsyo	Neither Ram wept nor laughed.
(b)	same as (a)	
III	ne ram royo ne ram hāsyo	Neither Ram wept nor Ram laughed.
3.I(a)	ne ram royo ne syam royo	Neither Ram wept nor Shyam wept.
(b)	ne ram royo ne syam	Neither Ram wept nor Shyam.
II	Same as I	
III	Same as I(a)	

4.I(a) ramle ne bhat pakayo ne masu pakayo
Ram neither cooked rice nor cooked meat.
(b) ramle ne bhat pakayo ne masu
Ram neither cooked rice nor meat.

II(a) na ramle bhat pakayo na masu pakayo

Neither Ram cooked rice nor cooked meat.

(b) na ramle bhat pakayo na masu

Neither Ram cooked rice nor meat.

III na ramle bhat pakayo na ramle masu pakayo

Neither Ram cooked rice nor Ram cooked meat.

5.I(a) ramle malai na paisa diyo na kalam diyo

Ram neither gave me money nor gave a pen.

(b) ramle malai na paisa diyo na kalam

Ram neither gave me money nor a pen.

II(a) na ramle malai paisa diyo na kalam diyo

Neither Ram gave me money nor gave a pen.

(b) na ramle malai paisa diyo na kalam

Neither Ram gave me money nor a pen.

III na ramle malai paisa diyo na ramle malai kalam diyo

Neither Ram gave me money nor Ram gave me a pen.

6.I(a) ramle na malai paisa diyo na uslai paisa diyo

Ram neither gave me money nor gave him money.

(b) ramle na malai paisa diyo na uslai

Ram neither gave me money nor him.

II(a) na ramle malai paisa diyo na uslai paisa diyo

Neither Ram gave me money nor gave him money.

(b) na ramle malai paisa diyo na uslai

Neither Ram gave me money nor him.

III na ramle malai paisa diyo na ramle uslai paisa diyo

Neither Ram gave me money nor Ram gave him money.

Step 3

In the examples given above Step 3 is applicable only to I(a), II(a) and III of No.6 yielding:

I(a)′ ramle na malai paisa diyo na uslai diyo

Ram neither gave me money nor gave him.

II(a)′ na ramle malai paisa diyo na uslai diyo

Neither Ram gave me money nor gave him.

III′ na ramle malai paisa diyo na ramle uslai diyo

Neither Ram gave me money nor Ram gave him.

Group C

Step 1

The conjunction is placed between S_1 and S_2. If S_1 and S_2 have some shared elements they can be symbolized as follows:

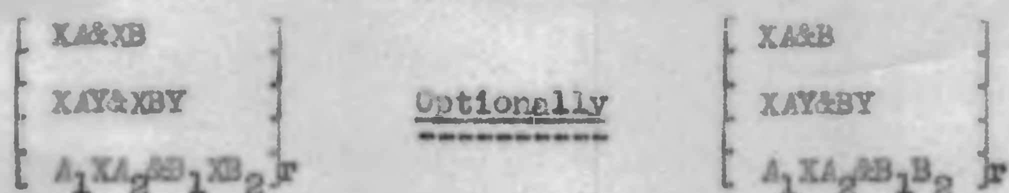
1. XA&XB
2. XAY&XBY
3. $A_1XA_2\&B_1XB_2$

where X and Y stand for shared elements, A, A_1, A_2, B, B_1, and B_2 for unshared elements and & for /tara/ "but".

If a noun and a pronoun refer to one and the same person/object they are regarded as a shared element in this section.

Step 2

Step 2 operates only when there is at least one shared element present.



Forms on the right are more common, much more so if the second X is not a pronominal equivalent of the first X.

Examples

1. ram ayo tara syam aena

   Ram came but Shyam did not come.

2. ram haryo tara (u) niras bhaena

   Ram lost but (he) did not lose his heart.

3. ram pas bhayo tara (u) cuttha bhayo

   Ram became successful but (he) became last.

4. ramle malai paisa diyo tara maile (tyo) liina

   Ram gave me money but I did not take (it).

Note

1. We have discussed so far the conjoining of two sentences only. Conjoining of more than two sentences is also possible with re "and", ba "or" and na...na/ki...ki "neither...nor/either...or". With na...na/ki...ki the na/ki is repeated as many times as the number of sentences to be combined. With re and ba, using "&" as a cover symbol, the following possibilities may be noted:

1. S_1, S_2,...& S_n : common with both ra and ba

2. S_1 & S_2 & S_3...: very rare with ra; not so rare with ba

3. S_1, S_2, S_3 ...: quite common with ra; impossible with ba

2. If the application of the foregoing rules for shortening sentence combinations result in discrepancies of Gender Concord and Case Government the shared element is made congruent to the nearest concording or governing element, e.g.,

i) radha nacin — Radha danced.
krisne nacyo — Krishna danced.
radha ba krisne nacyo — Radha or Krishna danced.
krisne ba radha nacin — Krishna or Radha danced.

ii) krisne nacyo — Krishna danced.
krisnale gayo — Krishna sang.
krisne nacyo re gayo — Krishna danced and sang.
krisnale gayo re nacyo — Krishna sang and danced.

3. Fuller version is preferred when emphasis, impatience etc. are to be conveyed, e.g.

i) timi jesta keti ae (re) keti gae
you-like how many came (and) how many went
"Many (persons) like you have come (and) many (persons) have gone".

ii) ne u ayo ne usle ciṭṭhi paṭhayo
neither he came nor he letter wrote
"Neither he came nor he wrote a letter".

iii) u haryo tare u niras bhaena
he lost but he disheartened did-not-became
"He lost but he did not lose his heart".

P A R T T W O

A NEWARI SKETCH

CHAPTER SIX

NEWARI PHONOLOGY

6.1. Inventory of Phonemes

The phonological system of Newari consists of 38 phonemes: 27 consonants (nonsyllabic nonvocoids), 3 semivowels (nonsyllabic vocoids), 6 vowels (syllabic vocoids) and 2 covowels (nasalization and length).

6.1.1. Consonants

			Bi-labial	Apico-alveolar	Lamino-alveolar	Dorso-palatal	Dorso-velar
Stop	vl	Unasp	p	t	c		k
		asp	ph	th	ch		kh
	vd	unasp	b	d	j		g
		asp	bh	dh	jh		gh
Nasal	vd	unasp	m	n		n̄	ṅ
		asp	mh	nh		n̄h	
Fricative	vl				s		
Trill	vd			r			
Lateral	vd	unasp		l			
		asp		lh			

6.1.2. Semivowels

	Palatal	Velar	Glottal
	y	w	h

6.1.3. Vowels

	Front unrounded	Central unrounded	Back rounded
High	i		u
Mid	e	ə	
Low	æ	a	

6.1.4. Covowels

Nasalization	~
Length	:

Note

1. All stops, nasals and laterals form unaspirated/aspirated pairs except the velar nasal which does not have an aspirated counterpart.
2. Nasals, trill, laterals, semivowels and vowels are voiced and fricative is voiceless. As such voicing is not a distinctive feature with them.

3. Laminal stops are normally affricates.
4. /ph/, /bh/, /mh/, /lh/ etc. are to be taken as unit phonemes, not sequences of phonemes. It is only for typographical convenience that they are printed /ph/, /bh/, /mh/, /lh/ etc. Strictly speaking they should have been printed /pʰ/, /bʱ/, /mʱ/, /lʱ/ etc.
5. /h̊/ and /r/ have relatively low frequency of occurrence and they occur mainly in loanwords.
6. /w/ is labialized.
7. /h/ has glottal friction but no determinate vocalic colour; /y/ and /w/, on the contrary, have vocalic colour but no glottal friction.
8. Back vowel is rounded whereas front and central vowels are unrounded. Lip-rounding is, therefore, not phonemic.
9. All the vowels form oral/nasalized pairs; all the vowels also form short/long pairs except the low front vowel which is always long and has no short counterpart.
10. The contrast between short vowels and long vowels is neutralized in close syllables. The vowels are half-long if the syllable is word-final, if not they are short.
11. The phonetic length of vowels is inherent with the quality when the environment is identical. In an ascending order of inherent length the vowels are / i u e ə æ a /.
12. <u>Cover Symbols:</u> V = Vowel; W = Semivowel w or y; C = Nonsyllabic; C* = Nonsyllabic other than W; . = Syllable boundary.

6.2. Illustration of Phonemic Contrasts

6.2.1. Consonants

/p/	pa	chop(tree etc)	khapa	door
/ph/	pha	chop(wood etc)	napha	profit
/b/	ba	disunite	laba	garlic
/bh/	bhalu	bear(N)	səbha	meeting
/t/	ta	cut(meat etc)	bata	a metal container
/th/	tha	knit	kwətha	room
/d/	da	beat	kəda	hard
/dh/	dha	say	gədha:	ass
/c/	ca	cut(paper etc)	məca	child
/ch/	cha	offer(to god)	məcha	feel shy
/j/	ja	become full	baja	musical instrument
/jh/	jha	come(Hon)	sajha	common
/k/	ka	take	taka	stitch(N)
/kh/	kha	hang(s.th.)	makha	hen
/g/	ga	suffice	daga	vindictive feeling
/gh/	gha	carry		
/m/	ma	search	lama	Tibetan monk
/mh/	mhasu	yellow		
/n/	na	melt	cana	gram
/nh/	nha	make paste		
/n̈/	n̈a	buy		
/n̈h/	n̈ha	wear(shoes etc)		
/s/	sa	pull	pasa	friend
/r/	raju	a male name	tara	star
/l/	la	spread(mat etc)	dala	a bamboo container
/lh/	lha	press(by s.th.)		

/ṅ/ in contrast with /n/, /k/ and /g/

/ṅ/	siṅ	a sirname	raṅ	colour	bhaṅ	an intoxicant
/n/	tin	tin	man	mind	ban	arrow
/k/	sik	spirit	cak	chalk	dhak	arrogance
/g/			thag	cheat	bhag	share

/ṅ/ in contrast with /n/

/ṅ/	saṅka	doubt, suspicion
/n/	manka'mana	a place name

6.2.2. Semivowels

Contrast among Semivowels

/y/	ya	do!	paya:	a cultural item
/w/	wa	come!	awa:	a sub-caste of Newar
/h/	ha	shout!	taha:	snake

Contrast between Semivowels and Consonants

/y/	ya	do	maya	love, affection
/j/	ja	become full	maja	thread coating
/w/	wa	spilt	n̄ewa:	Newar
/b/	ba	disunite	n̄aba:	sunlight
/h/	ha	shout	sahi	signature
/s/	sa	pull	sasi	louse-egg

Contrast between Semivowels and Vowels

/y/	pya	leech	myu	Sell!
/i/	pia ~ piya	waited (IP)	imiu	their
/w/	khwa	Blow (fire)!		
/u/	khua ~ khuwa	a sweet preparation made out of milk-cream		

Privative contrasts for Semivowels

/y/	yaũ	light	pya	leech	mye	tongue
Ø	aũ	dysentery	pa	axe	me	a term of refusal
/w/	waũ	green	pwa'	stomach, hole		
Ø	aũ	dysentery	pa'	turn(N)		
/h/	heji	Bring!				
Ø	eji	grandmother				

6.2.3. Vowels

/i/	ila'	having painted	kimi	hookworm	mi	fire
/e/	ela'	liquor	yemi'	resident of Kathmandu	me	a term of refusal
/æ'/	æ'bu'	tired of anticipation	sæ'mi	a caste within Newar	mæ'	black gram
/u/	ulu	feel like vomiting	bhumi	a male name	mu	gather
/ə/	əla'	red colour used by women for painting their toes	ləmi	one who arranges marriage	mə	negative particle
/a/	alu	potato	nami	famous	ma	beam

6.2.4. Covowels

Nasalization: Contrast between Oral Vowels and Nasalized Vowels

si	louse	sĩ	wood
chye	exclamatory particle (dislike)	chyẽ	house
hu	Wipe!	hũ	Go!
thwe	this	thwẽ	beer
ti:	mole	tĩ:	reed
kwe:	below	kwẽ:	bone
kae:	son	ghãe:	grass
ku:	spade	kũ:	corner
le:	water	lẽ:	dress
da:	fat(N)	dã:	money
kei	pimple	leĩ	raddish
sau	master; merchant	saũ	principal (money lent)

Length: Contrast between Short Vowels and Long Vowels

si	louse	si:	wax
mye	tongue; song	mye:	buffalo
bhutu	dwarf(F.human)	bhutu:	kitchen, oven
mhe	body	mhe:	lead(metal)
la	meat, flesh	la:	saliva
sĩ	wood	sĩ:	from/by wood
kyẽ	pulse(food)	kyẽ:	younger sister
kũ	smoke	kũ:	corner
lẽ	road, path, way	lẽ:	dress

6.3. Phonetic Correlates

The basic phonetic values of the phonemes have already been supplied in the Inventory Charts and the subsequent note in 6.1. Realizations different from the basic values will be described here in general rules so that a rule may cover several phonemes and, conversely, the full description of an allophone may require application of several rules.

In the examples given here only the relevant segments in question will be transcribed phonetically though words are shown within square brackets [ ].

6.3.1. Consonants

0. The voiceless stops are relatively tenser than the voiced ones. The word-initial variant of a stop is relatively tenser than other variants.

1. Fronted and Retracted Variants

Non-bilabial consonants have slightly fronted variants before /i/ and /y/ and slightly retracted variants before /u/ and /w/.

Examples

/kiˀ/	[k˂iˀ]	insect	/kuˀ/	[k˃uˀ]	spade
/lyaˀ/	[l˂yaˀ]	account(N)	/lwa/	[l˃wa]	fight(V)

2. Laterally Released, Nasally Released and Unreleased Variants

Unaspirated stops are laterally released before a homorganic lateral, nasally released before a homorganic nasal and unreleased before a homorganic stop. That is, in all the three cases, they have no separate release. (Symbol of lack of separate release [˺].)

Examples

/metlebi/	[met˺lebi]	selfish
/retne/	[ret˺ne]	a male name
/pitte/	[pit˺te]	bile

3. Affricate Variants

Initially /ph/ and /kh/ are realized as affricates [pᶲ] and [kˣ] respectively before /u/ and /w/.

Examples

/phukə̃:/	[pᶲukə̃:]	all	/phwegĩ:/	[pᶲwegĩ:]	beggar
/khuke:/	[kˣuke:]	six times	/khwebi/	[kˣwebi]	tear(N)

4. Fricative Variants

/ph/, /kh/, /b/, /j/ and /g/ have fricative variants intervocalically and finally.

Examples

/sephu:/	[səɸu:]	book	/geph/	[gəɸ]	gossip
/akhe:/	[axe:]	alphabet	/tãkh/	[tãx]	button
/ebu/	[eβu]	father	/gerib/	[geriβ]	poor

/eji/	[ezi]	grandmother	/pyaj/	[pyaz]	onion
/mhige'/	[mhiɣe']	yesterday	/bhag/	[bhaɣ]	share

5. WFC and Tap Variants

/r/ is realized as a weak-friction-continuant (WFC) initially and as a tap intervocalically.

Examples

/rus/	[ɹus]	Russia	/meri/	[meɾi]	bread
/ras/	[ɹas]	a heap	/duru/	[duɾu]	milk
/resam/	[ɹesam]	silk	/berâ'/	[beɾâ']	peanut

6. Palatalized Variant

Consonants other than /r/, /l/ and /lh/ are palatalized before /i/ and /y/, e.g.

/tisa/	[$t_y$isa]	ornament	/sya/	[$s_y$ya]	kill

6.3.2. Vocoids

1. Seminasalized Variants

Vocoids are seminasalized (i) before a nasalized vowel, and (ii) when they occur adjacent to a tautosyllabic nasal. (Symbol [̨]). Seminasalization spreads through the entire vocoid sequence.

Examples

i)	/theû/	[thę̨û]	today	/leî/	[lę̨î]	radish
	/dwâ'/	[dw̨â']	in	/pyâ'/	[py̨â']	out

/kwẽʼ/	[kyę̃ʼ]	bone	/kyẽʼ/	[kyę̃ʼ]	younger Si
/khwaũ/	[khw̨ą̃ũ]	cold	/hyaũ/	[hy̨ąų̃]	red
ii) /n̄a/	[n̄ą]	fish	/jhəṅgəʼ/	[jhə̨ṅgəʼ]	bird
/mi/	[mį]	fire	/səntan/	[sə̨ntą̨n]	offspring
/mwə/	[mw̨ə̨]	husk	/myə/	[my̨ə̨]	song; tongue
/anə/	[anə̨]	there	/anti/	[ąnti]	liquor-jar

2. <u>Breathy Variants</u>

Vocoids are breathy after /h/ or a voiced aspirated consonant. Breathiness, like nasalization, spreads across the entire vocoid sequence. (Symbol [$_h$])

<u>Examples</u>

/hi/	[hi$_h$]	blood	/ghaʼ/	[gha$_h$ʼ]	wound
/hweʼ/	[hw$_h$e$_h$ʼ]	hole	/jhyaʼ/	[jhy$_h$a$_h$ʼ]	window
/bhweʼ/	[bhw$_h$e$_h$ʼ]	feast	/hyu/	[hy$_h$u$_h$]	wash!
/lhaʼ/	[lha$_h$ʼ]	hand	/mhyæʼ/	[mhy$_h$æ$_h$ʼ]	daughter

3. The vocoid sequence /wə/ is phonetically realized as a single half-long vocoid [ə>$_w$·] rather than [wə>$_w$] in close syllables, e.g.

/rwəg/	[rə>$_w$·g]	disease	/mwəj/	[mə>$_w$·j]	enjoyment

6.3.3. <u>Vowels</u>

1. <u>Fronted and Retracted Variants</u>

Central vowels are fronted when they occur adjacent to /y/ or /i/, retracted and semirounded when they occur adjacent to /w/ or /u/, and central unrounded when they occur between the two.

Examples

/pwa:/	[pwa>$_{w}$:]	stomach	/pya:/	[pya<:]	is wet
/kəu/	[kə>$_{w}$u]	blacksmith	/kəi/	[kə<i]	pimple

but /kwəi/ [kwəi] will be burnt

/pyau/ [pyau] (s.th.) wet

2. Raised and Lowered Variants

With nasalization vowels are slightly raised, with length they are slightly lowered, and with both nasalization and length they have the same height as their counterparts without nasalization and length.

Examples

/si/	[si]	louse	/lə/	[lə]	reap!
/sĩ/	[sĩ^]	wood	/lə̃/	[lə̃^]	way
/si:/	[si^{v}:]	wax	/lə:/	[lə^{v}:]	water
/sĩ:/	[sĩ:]	by wood	/lə̃:/	[lə̃:]	dress

3. Short, Centralized and less Prominent Variants

High vowels have a short, centralized and less prominent variant following a vowel.

Examples

/kəi/	[kəi$_{ə}$]	pimple	/kəu/	[kəu$_{ə}$]	blacksmith
/dai/	[dai$_{ə}$]	elder Br	/sau/	[sau$_{ə}$]	merchant

4. Half-long Variants

Vowels are half-long before a word-final consonant.

Examples

/sik/	[si·k]	spirit	/gərib/	[gəri·b]	poor
/rus/	[ru·s]	Russia	/kentur/	[kentu·r]	small box
/myec/	[mye·c]	chair	/əṅgrej/	[əṅgre·j]	Englishman
/bəs/	[bə·s]	bus	/gwebər/	[gwebə·r]	cow-dung
/tā̃kh/	[tā̃·kh]	button	/əcar/	[əca·r]	pickle

5. Short Variant

/æ:/ is realized as [æ] preceding the classifier /gu/ when its g gets deleted, e.g.

Slow and careful speech		Normal speech		
/yæ:gu/	[yæ:gu]	/yæ:u/	[yæu]	(the thing I) do

6.4. Syllable

6.4.1. Syllable Division

Syllable divisions in Newari are predictable according to the following rules:

1. There are as many syllables as there are vowels in an utterance.
2. Any nonsyllabic preceding the first vowel or following the last vowel goes with that vowel.

3. For nonsyllabic sequences between two vowels the following syllable divisions hold good:

i) VWV ------- V.WV

mye.wa	papaya	ma.ya	love

ii) VC*(W)V ------- V.C*(W)V

a.lu	potato	ya.kwe	armpit
ka.la:	wife	mu.sya	soyabean

iii) VC*C*(W)V ------- VC*.C*(W)V

əṅ.gə:	wall	khyam.pwa:	anus
kas.ti	honey	gwəl.bhya.ra	tomato

iv) VC*C*C*V ------- VC*.C*C*V

mən.tri	minister	cən.drə.ma	moon

where, V = Vowel; W = Semivowel w or y; C* = Nonsyllabic other than W; . = Syllable boundary.

6.4.2. Syllable Types

Newari has eight basic syllable types as follows:

1. V

a.pa	stone
le.ĩ	radish
mə.u.ka	chance

2. VC*

əṅ-gə:	wall
ə.in	law
ə.in.tə	laws

3. WV			4. WVC*	
wa.se'	medicine		wan.chwe	throw
ma.ya	love		be.yan	description
n̄ha.we'.sa	toy		me.yeṅ.ka	(I) didn't take
5. C*V			6. C*VC*	
lū	gold		mel.ta	chilli
pa.sa	friend		dur.bin	binoculars
ke.ki'.ca	comb		tu.run.te	immediately
7. C*WV			8. C*WVC*	
khwe.bi	tear(N)		khyam.pwa'	anus
mu.sya	soybean		bi.swas	faith
aṅ.khwe.ra	water jar		te.pyeṅ.ke	straight(Adv)

These eight different types of syllable can be represented by a single formula as follows' (C*)(W)V(C*).

Newari also has other syllable types but these are restricted to the borrowed items/names and are found mainly in educated speech. They are as follows'

9. VC*C*	pa.und	pound
10. WVC*C*	je.yent	a male name
11. C*VC*C*	bir.genj	a town in Nepal
12. C*WVC*C*	byenc	bench
13. C*C*V	tri.ret.ne	a male name
14. C*C*VC*	pran	life
15. C*C*VC*C*	phrenc	French

Including these seven types Newari has the following fifteen types of syllable:

V	WV	C*V	C*WV	C*C*V
VC*	WVC*	C*V*C*	C*W*V*C*	C*C*V*C*
VC*C*	WVC*C*	C*VC*C*	C*WVC*C*	C*C*VC*C*

(Note: these inside the box can occur only in non-native words.)

These fifteen types of syllable can be represented as

$$(C^*)\left(\begin{bmatrix} C^* \\ W \end{bmatrix}\right) V(C^*)(C^*)$$

6.5. Segment Sequences

6.5.1. Non-syllabic Sequences

But for the initial C*W sequences Newari essentially does not favour non-syllabic sequencing. Among the semivowels W can occur only as the last member and h only as the first member of a nonsyllabic sequence.

Note V = Vowel; W = Semivowel w or y; C = Nonsyllabic; C* = Nonsyllabic other than W; . = Syllable boundary.

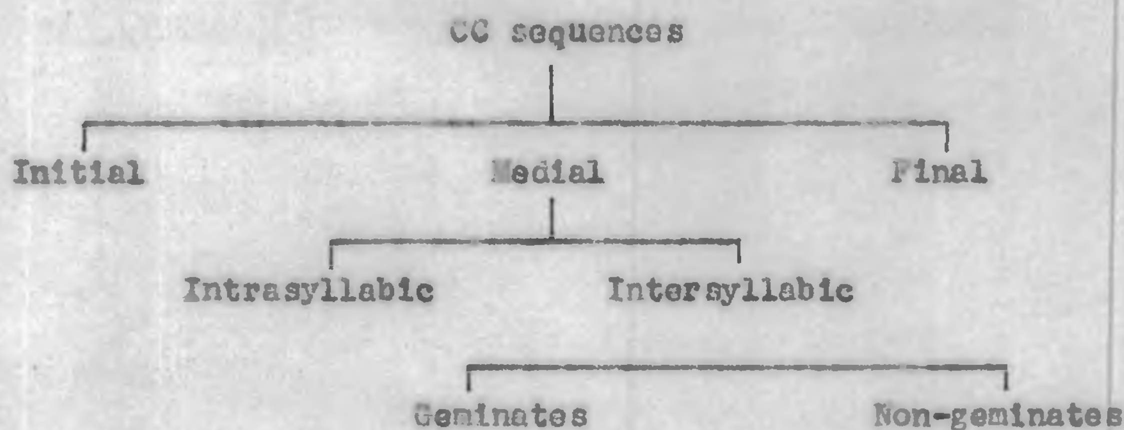
1. CCC Sequences

CCC sequences do not occur initially or finally. They rarely occur medially and whenever they do the last member of the sequence has to be /w/, /y/ or /r/, e.g.

khyampwa'	anus	laptye	a kind of leaf
hyengwa'	charcoal	mentri	minister

2. CC Sequences

CC sequences, the illustrative matrix of which is shown at page 276, can be classified and sub-classified as follows:



Initial CC Sequences

The second member of these sequences has to be /w/ or /y/. It can also be /r/ or /l/ but these are restricted to only a few loanwords such as :

krisna	a male name	bhrastacar	corruption
glas	glass	plastik	plastic

The following is a list of initial CC Sequences found in Newari :

$C_1 \backslash C_2$	/w/		/y/	
/p/	pwa'	stomach	pya	leech
/ph/	phwẽ	Beg!	phye	Lick!
/b/	bwe'	crane	byã'	frog
/bh/	bhwẽ'	paper	bhyara	sheep
/t/	twa'	beak	tyəpca	navel
/th/	thwe	this	thyẽ	Make (s.o.) sleep!
/d/	dwẽ'	bull	dyẽ	Sleep!
/dh/	dhwẽ'	fox	dhyeba	mon?ey
/c/	cwe	urine	cye'	servant
/ch/	chwe	wheat	chyẽ'	head
/j/	jwẽ	Catch!	jya	work
/jh/	jhwe'	row	jhya'	window
/k/	kwe'	crow	kyẽ'	younger sister
/kh/	khwe	Weep!	khye:	egg
/g/	gwæ'	moustache	gya	Be afraid!
/gh/	ghwa	Push!	ghye'	ghee
/m/	mwe	husk	mye	tongue; song
/mh/			mhyæ'	daughter
/n/	nwe'	carrying pole	nyepal	Nepal
/s/	swã'	flower	sye'	marrow
/r/	rweg	disease		
/l/	lwa	Fight!	lye	Select!
/lh/	lhwẽ	Lift!	lhye	Carry(load)!
/h/	hwe'	hole	hyẽ'	duck

Final CC Sequences

Final CC sequences do not occur in Newari except in a few non-native proper nouns or loanwords used mainly in educated speech, e.g.

phrans	France	anend	a male name
phrenc	French	birganj	name of a town.

(Note: It has been already noted that Newari native words end in an open syllable.)

Medial CC Sequences

Intrasyllabic Sequences

Intrasyllabic medial CC sequences belong to the latter of the two syllables between which they occur and the second member of these sequences has to be /w/ or /y/, e.g.

ya.kwe	armpit	mu.sya	soybean
a.pwe'	more/much	ba.jya	grandfather

Intersyllabic Sequences

Geminates

Consonants other than /ṅ/ and [redacted] aspirated consonants form geminates; semivowels do not form a geminate.

Examples

dabba	small tin	reddi	useless
pitta	bile	lucca	crafty

bicchye	scorpion	mejja	enjoyment
dikke	sad	jamma	total
twannā:	the leg between knee and foot	sanna	a variety of dried fish

It is however to be noted that the geminates are in free variation with a single consonant in most of the words e.g.

twannā: ~ twanā: sanna ~ sana

Non-geminates

The frequency of occurrence of non-geminate intra-morphemic intersyllabic CC sequences in the native vocabulary is remarkably low. The common ones are: one out of m, n, ṅ, s, r, l followed by one out of p, t, c, g, n, s.

Examples

khempa	thigh	cimta	fire-tongs
bhemca	bride	anti	small liquor-jar
menca	chin	aṅge:	wall
kesti	honey	desna	mattress
marca:	ear-ring	serge:	sky
persi	sari	melta	chilli

6.5.2. Vowel Sequences

Newari has the following five vowel sequences: ui, ei, ai, eu and au.

Examples

khui	sixty; will steal	gui	ninety, will tear(intr)
kei	pimple	wei	will come (Non-IP)
dai	elder Br	yai	will do (Non-IP)
bheu	cat	keu	blacksmith
sau	merchant	paū	sour

In addition to these five vowel sequences Newari also has ten other vowel sequences as follows: iu, eu, æ:u, ie, ue, ee, æ:e, ae, ia and ua. But we get these sequences only as a result of the deletion of the inter-vocalic g (of the classifier /gu/) or y (of the emphatic particle /ye/ or IP Past /ya/ or Non-Fin /ya/) or w. This deletion of a non-syllabic takes place in normal colloquial speech. The non-syllabic is however retained in slow and careful speech.

Examples

Slow and careful speech	Normal speech	
imigu (chyē)	imiu	their (house)
myegu (chyē)	myeu	next (house)
(jī:) yæ:gu (jya)	yæ:u	(the work I) do/will do
(jī: thwa) mi:ye (makhu)	mi:e	(I won't) sell (it) at all.
(thwa) lūye (makhu)	lūe	(This is not) gold at all.
(thwa) lēye (makhu)	lēe	(This is not) a road at all.
(wa jimi) kæ:ye (makhu)	kæ:e	(He is not my) son at all.
(wē: thwa) kaye (maka:)	kae	(He didn't take it) at all.

(ji: chente) piya	pia	(I) waited (for you).
(vē: chente) piyacwene	piacwene	(He) is waiting (for you).
khuwa	khua	a sweet preparation made out of milk-cream.

This deletion also results in VVV sequences, e.g.

suigu (chyē)	suiu	whose house?
veigu (chyē)	weiu	his house
(wē:) yaigu (jya)	yaiu	(the work he) does/will do
(jī:) biyagu (dhyeba)	biau	(the money I) gave

6.6. Other Significant Distributional Limitations

6.6.1. Consonants

1. Except in loanwords

i) Consonants do not occur word finally (i.e. native Newari words end in an open syllable).

ii) voiced aspirated consonants and /d/ do not occur medially.

2. /ṅ/ does not occur initially.

6.6.2. Semivowels

Semivowels do not occur finally.

6.6.3. Vowels

1. /æ/ and /æ̃/ do not occur at all (i.e. these vowels can occur only in company with vowel length, e.g., /æ:/ and /æ̃:/. Phonetically, however, /æ:/ is realized as [æ] preceding the classifier /gu/ when g gets deleted (cf. 6.3.3.5), elsewhere it is always realized as [æ:].).

2. /ã/ does not occur finally.

3. /ẽ/ and /ẽː/ do not occur initially.

4. Ṽs do not occur initially or medially except in loanwords.

5. Vːs and Ṽːs rarely occur initially.

The following chart illustrates the distribution of vowels in a nutshell.

	Initial				Medial				Final			
	<u>V</u>	<u>Ṽ</u>	<u>Vː</u>	<u>Ṽː</u>	<u>V</u>	<u>Ṽ</u>	<u>Vː</u>	<u>Ṽː</u>	<u>V</u>	<u>Ṽ</u>	<u>Vː</u>	<u>Ṽː</u>
/i/	+	L	R	R	+	L	+	+	+	+	+	+
/u/	+	L	R	R	+	L	+	+	+	+	+	+
/e/	+	-	R	-	+	L	+	+	+	+	+	+
/o/	+	L	R	R	+	L	+	+	+	+	+	+
/æ/	-	-	R	RR	-	-	+	+	-	-	+	+
/a/	+	L	R	R	+	L	+	+	+	-	+	+

where, + stands for "occurs freely",

- stands for "does not occur",

L stands for "occurs only in Loanwords", and

R stands for "rarely occurs".

<u>Note</u> In this section initially, medially and finally means word-initially, word-medially and word-finally.

$C_1 \backslash C_2$	k	kh	g	gh	ṅ	c	ch	j	jh	ñ	ñh	t	th	d	dh	n	nh	p	ph	b	bh	m	mh	y	r	l	lh	w	s	h
k	+					+						+						+						°*	*	*		°*	+	
kh		+																						°*				°*		
g			+			+																		*		*		°*		
gh																								*				*		
ṅ	+	+	+																											
c	+					+										+								*				*		
ch						+																+		°*				*		
j								+												+				°*	+			*		
jh																								*				*		
ñ										+																				
ñh																														
t												+						+						°*	*+	+		*		
th												+								+				°*				*		
d														+								+		°*	*+	+		*		
dh																								*	*			*		
n			+			?+	+	?+				+	+	?+		+		+				+						°*	+?	
nh																														
p						+						+						+				+		°*	*	*		°*	+	
ph																		+						*	*			*		
b																				+				°*	*+	*		*		
bh																								°*	+			*		
m	+					+						+		+				+		+		+		°*	*	+		*		
mh																								*				*		
y																														
r	+	+	+			+		+				+	+	+		+		+	+	+		+			+	+		°*	+	
l	+	+				+	+					+		+				+	+			+		°*		+		*		
lh																								*				*		
w																														
s	+											+				+						+		°*	*+	+		°*	+	
h																								*				*		

Note + stands for intersyllabic medial CC-nonsyllabic sequences
° stands for intrasyllabic medial CC-nonsyllabic sequences

CHAPTER SEVEN

Stems in Newari can be studied from two points of view, viz., (1) the grammatical (especially syntactic) functions they perform as they enter into larger constructions, and (2) their internal (i.e., morphological) structures. The former yields a functional classification and the latter a structural classification of stems.

Functionally Newari stems may be Nominals, Verbs or Particles. Structurally they may be Simple or Complex. Complex stems, in turn, may be Derived, Composite or Reduplicated.

FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF NEWARI STEMS

7.1. Nominals

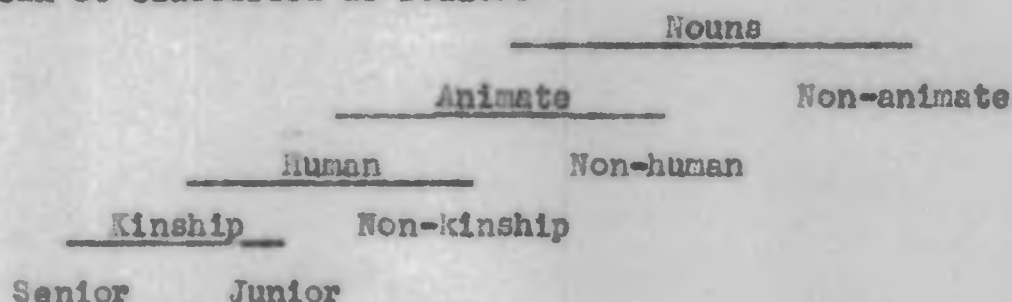
Nominal stems can be divided into five basic groups:

1. Nouns
2. Pronouns
3. Adjectives
4. Proadjectives
5. Classifiers

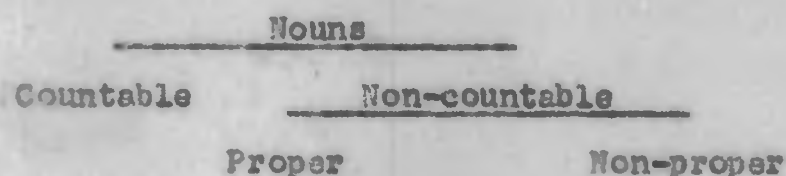
Of these, Nouns and Pronouns inflect for Number and Case and syntactically form nuclei of Noun phrases. Personal pronouns, in addition, show a three-fold distinction of Person. Adjectives and Proadjectives, in their attributive function, agree with animate nouns in Number and obligatorily cooccur with classifiers. Syntactically, they constitute nuclei of Adjective phrases. Classifiers occur only following an adjective or a proadjective, the whole construction functioning as an Adjective phrase or an Adverb phrase.

7.1.1. Nouns

Nouns can be classified as follows:



They can also be classified as:



These classifications are based primarily on grammatical features such as syntactic cooccurrence, inflectional characteristics, and concord behaviour and only secondarily on semantic grounds.

Distinctions

1. Animate/Non-animate

Adjectives and Proadjectives agree with animate nouns in Number,

e.g.	[nhu: / ẽna:]-me	[pasa / khica]		[new / such]	[friend / dog]
	[nhu: / ẽna:]-pĩ:	[pasa-pĩ: / khica-te]		[new / such]	[friends / dogs]
but,	[nhu: / ẽna:]-gu	[tepuli / tepuli-te]		[new / such]	[cap / caps]

Note The classifier /me/ is obligatorily deleted before the plural ending /pĩ:/.

Adjectives and Proadjectives, in their attributive function, take the classifier /me/ when they qualify animate nouns and the classifier /gu/ when they qualify non-animate nouns, e.g.

nhu'-master	new teacher	nhu'-gu chyē	new house

Similarly numerals take the classifier /me/ with animate nouns and classifiers other than /me/ with non-animate nouns. (Various classifiers that go with non-animate nouns are discussed in 7.1.5.1.)

Examples

Animate

n̄a-me jhəngə'	five birds	n̄a-me pasa	five friends
n̄a-me maca	five children	n̄a-me kəla'	five wives

Non-animate

n̄a-gə' təpuli	five caps	n̄a-phwə' swā'	five flowers
n̄a-kha chyē	five houses	n̄a-ta ghasa	five dishes
n̄a-thwa' bənda	five cabbages	n̄a-pa lha'	five hands
n̄a-pa' mhica	five pockets	n̄a-gu myec	five chairs
n̄a-thu nəkī'	five nails	n̄a-pu pəcī'	five fingers
n̄a-ma sima	five trees	n̄a-ma' swãma'	five garlands
n̄a-pwə' mari	five packages of sweets	n̄a-ku' la	five pieces of meat

2. Human/Non-human

Human nouns correspond to the interrogative pronoun/proadjective /su/ 'who' and non-human nouns correspond to the interrogative pronoun/proadjective /chu/ 'what', e.g.

Human

dune su du	Who is there inside?
su manũ:	What man?

Non-human

dune chu du	What is there inside?
chu khica	What dog?

3. Kinship/Non-kinship

Kinship nouns take the /pĩ:/ allomorph and non-kinship nouns take the /te/ allomorph of the plural morpheme, e.g.

Kinship

kae:-pĩ:	sons	tata-pĩ:	elder sisters

Non-kinship

misa-te	women	mijə̃:-te	men
khica-te	dogs	tapuli-te	caps

Nouns denoting friends also count as kinship nouns in Newari, e.g.

pasa-pĩ:	friends	twae:-pĩ:	bond-friends

4. Senior/Junior

Adjectives showing kinship relations take the classifier /ma/ when they occur with junior nouns and take no classifier with senior nouns, e.g.

Junior		Senior	
mahila-ma kae'	second son	mahila ba'	second eldest uncle
mahila-ma kija	second eldest brother(younger than ego)	mahila daju -mahila dai	second eldest brother(elder than ego)

5. Countable/Non-countable

Countable nouns can be pluralized whereas non-countable nouns cannot be pluralized, e.g.

Countable		Non-countable	
pasa-pĩ'	friends	nyepal	Nepal
khica-ta	dogs	tã'	anger
jhya'-te	windows	phe'	air, wind

6. Proper/Non-proper

Proper nouns do not go with adjectives of quantity whereas Non-proper nouns can occur with them. The former refer to the name of a specific object or group of objects, animate or inanimate. The latter do not refer to a specific object, e.g.

Proper		Non-proper	
nyepal	Nepal	tã'	anger
kemela	name of a female	la'	water
bagmati	name of a river	maya	love, affection

7.1.2. Pronouns

Pronouns are a small closed subclass of nominals. Like nouns they inflect for Number and Case. But unlike them male/female distinction is to be observed nowhere in the pronominal system of Newari. They may be divided into the following five types:

1. Personal
2. Demonstrative
3. Interrogative
4. Reflexive
5. Indefinite

1. Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns make a three-fold distinction of Person: first, second and third. An Honorific/Non-honorific distinction is made in the second and the third persons. Anaphoric pronominal forms are used for all persons except the non-honorific third person for which the remote demonstrative pronominal forms are used. First person plural pronouns make an inclusive/exclusive distinction. The plural suffix /pi:/ is optionally affixed in the first person inclusive plural nominative form (it is obligatorily deleted when this pronoun occurs in any other case form) and obligatorily affixed in the first person exclusive plural form as well as in the second and third person plural forms, both honorific and non-honorific.

Paradigm of Personal Pronouns

Person	Variety	Number Sg	Pl	
First		ji	jhi'(-pĩ')	inclusive
			ji-pĩ'	exclusive
Second	Honorific	chi	chik-pĩ'	
	Non-honorific	che	chi-pĩ'	
Third	Honorific	weke'	weke'-pĩ'	
	Non-honorific	we	i-pĩ'	

The contrast between singular and plural numbers in the first (exclusive) and second person pronouns is neutralized before the genitive morpheme when the possessed object is an animate noun so that the plural form itself is used for the singular as well, e.g.

jimi mā'	my/our mother
chimi mā'	your (sg)/your (pl) mother

but,

jigu chyē	my house,
jimigu chye	our house

2. Demonstrative Pronouns

These pronouns exhibit Addressee Proximate/Speaker Proximate/Remote distinction. Remote is not overtly marked, Speaker Proximate is marked by /th-/, and Addressee Proximate by /am-/.

	Singular		Plural	
Ad Proximate	am-ə	that	am-pĩ'	those
Sp Proximate	th-we	this	th-i-pĩ'	these
Remote	we	that	i-pĩ'	those

3. Interrogative Pronouns

Interrogative pronouns are of two types: General and Specific. The former kind make a Human/Non-human distinction and the latter always occur with a classifier which marks an Animate/Non-animate distinction. Reduplication of the singular gives the plural form.

		Sg	Pl
General 'what one(s)'	Human	su	su su
	Non-human	chu	chu chu
Specific 'which one(s)'	Animate	gu-me	gu-me gu-me
	Non-animate	gu-gu	gu-gu gu-gu

4. Reflexive Pronouns

These pronouns do not mark the person distinction overtly. They have the same person as that of their antecedent.

Sg.	Pl	
the' (the')	the'the'	self/selves

e.g. wē' the' (the') me'syā'tū' yate — He did himself.

imsē' the'the'me'syā'tū' yate — They did themselves.

/the' the'/ can also be used in reciprocal sense:

jhi' the' the' lwe'-me-jyu' — We should not quarrel among ourselves.

5. Indefinite Pronouns

These are of two types: human and non-human. They do not make the number distinction.

Human sū̃:
e.g. thana sū̃: we:sa ... if some person/persons comes/come...

Non-human chū̃:
e.g. chante chū̃: ma:sa ... if you need something...

When these pronouns occur with the emphatic particle /he/ they carry negative implication of "nobody" and "nothing" and they always take the verb in negative form, e.g.

sū̃:he mawe:	even one didn't come
chū̃:he mwa:	does not need even onething

The other indefinite pronouns are :

Sg.		Pl.	
phalana		phalana phalana	so and so
mye:	another	mye: mye:	others
ñ̌ha	any		
		phukkẽ:	all

Definite pronouns like /thwa/ 'this' and /thipĩ:/ 'these' can also be used in indefinite sense.

Sg.	Pl.	
thwe	thwe thwe	so and so
	- thipĩ: thipĩ:	

e.g. thwe thwe wala dhare "say who all came"
this this came say

7.1.3. Adjectives

Semantically adjectives qualify nouns. Syntactically generally they occur before the noun they qualify (in their attributive function) and after the noun they qualify (in their predicative function). When they function attributively they agree with animate nouns in Number and cooccur with Classifiers. A few borrowed items from Nepali like kancha/kanchi "youngest", lata/lati "dumb", langara/langari "lame" also inflect for Gender, agreeing with nouns both in the attributive and in the predicative positions.

Adjectives may be divided into three groups on the basis of the interrogative proadjectives they correspond to:

Adjectives	Corresponding Interrogative Proadjectives	
1. of Quality	gĕnā:	of what kind?
2. of Quantity	gwe:	how many?
	guli	how much?
3. of Identity	su	who?
	chu	what?
	gu	which?

1. Adjectives of Quality

The major bulk of adjectives belongs to this type.

Examples

i) Native

Newari has a very few native adjectives of quality which

are adjectives pure and simple. The following list is almost exhaustive:

kwe	younger	thā	elder	gā:si	lean
casi:ca	slim	thike:	expensive	nhu:	new
pulā:	old	phuskulu	hollow	kaci	raw
basi	stale	suku:	dried	ta:mi	rich
bhwebhwe:	decayed (wood)	n̄i:	good for health (food)		

A few other adjectives which can also be used as nouns (grammatical homonymy) are as follows:

kā:	blind	khwāe:	deaf	gyapher	coward
mijā:	male	lyāe:me	young(male)	bage:	dwarf(male)
misa	female	lyasye	young(female)	bhutu	dwarf(female)
matikura:	stingy	n̄hethu	first(wife)	lithu	second(wife)
gwajye: -hwajye: -paka:	slipshod, sloppy, slovenly	bhya:	used, impure	hyami	shameless

A great majority of the native adjectives of quality are in fact verbal adjectives. That is to say, they are anomalous adjectives which come very near in being verbs. (For details see Note 6 of Section 10.3.1.) In their attributive function they, like other adjectives, cooccur with classifiers.

kyatu	soft	khayu	bitter	khwatu	thick

khwaũ	cold, cool	gyanpu	fearful	caku	sweet
casu	itching	ciku	cold (weather)	culu	slippery
chwalu	dilute	chwasu	loose (tying)	jhyatu	heavy
ñhaipu	pleasant	taku	thick (density)	tuyu	white
tyanu	tired	palu	hot (taste)	paũ	sour
mhaipu	boring	mhasu	yellow	yacu	clean and bright
yaũ	light	wacu	blue	waũ	green
salu	thin (non-animate)	haku	black	hyaũ	red
hwalu	loose				

ii) Borrowed (from Nepali)

atyari	not obedient	anubhabi	experi-enced	alchi	idle, lazy
asat(t)ye	false	asantwasi	dissatis-fied	kanjus	tight-fisted
kamjwar	weak	khali	empty	khusi	happy
garib	poor	gara	dark (colour)	gyani	gentle
ghamandi	proud	cancal	lively	candal	naughty
calakh	clever	cu(t)tha	last	dani	charitable, generous
dukhi	unhappy	dwasi	guilty	nami	famous
naram	soft	pakka	confirmed	papi	sinning, sinful
pwathi	female (non-Hum)	pharak	different	phwahar	dirty

bərabər	equal	bəhadur	brave	bidhəwa	widow
birami	sick, ill	bura	old(animate male)	buri	old(animate-female)
bwəksi	witch	bhelə:dəmi	gentle	bhale	male(non-human)
mej(j)a	enjoyable, entertaining	metləbi	egoist	rwəgi	diseased
ləṅgəra/ ləṅgəri	lame	lata/ lati	dumb	lwəbhi	greedy
səc(c)a	honest	səntwəsi	contented	səpha	clean
sukhi	happy	swarthi	selfish	həttakətta	stout
hwəsiyar	careful				

The adjectives of quality, when they occur attributively to a noun, occur before the noun they qualify and obligatorily take the classifier /mə/ before animate nouns and the classifier /gu/ before non-animate nouns, e.g.

thike'-mə khica   expensive dog

thike'-gu ta'   expensive lock

They agree with animate nouns in Number. Singular is unmarked, plural is marked by the plural allomorph /pî'/. The classifier /mə/ is obligatorily deleted before the plural marker, e.g.

thike'-mə khica   expensive dog

thike'-pî' khica-tə   expensive dogs

but,

thike'-gu ta'   expensive lock

thike'-gu ta'-tə   expensive locks

When they occur as a predicative complement they occur without any classifier after the noun they qualify. (The Verb-cop BE is normally deleted if affirmative), e.g.

wo khica thike:	That dog is/was expensive.
thwe ta: thike:	This lock is/was expensive.

but,

wo khica thike: ma·ju:	That dog is not expensive.
thwe ta: thike: ma-ju:	This lock is not expensive.

2. <u>Adjectives of Quantity</u>

Adjectives of quantity, as an attributive, may come before or after the noun they qualify, e.g.

wā: jita: [n̄a:-ge: / yekkwe] dhyeba bile

= wā̃: jite: dhyeba [n̄a:-ge: / yekkwe] bile

He gave me [five paisa / a lot of money].

These adjectives comprise of Cardinal numerals and a few other adjectives:

1) <u>Numerals</u>

Newari has the following twelve simple cardinal numerals. Other complex numerals are derived from these simple ones either through suffixation or through composition or through both(cf. 3.5.).

che	one	n̄i	two	swe	three
pye	four	n̂a	five	khu	six
nhe	seven	cya	eight	gu	nine
jhi	ten	se:	hundred	dwe:	thousand

Three more borrowed (from Nepali) items can be added to this list.

lakh	10^5	karod	10^7	arab	10^9

Except the borrowed numerals, all numerals obligatorily take a classifier. Besides the two classifiers -/me/ and /gu/-, numerals occur with several other classifiers (cf. 7.1.5.1.).

ii) A few other adjectives of quantity are given below:

kem	less	əpwə'	more
bhəca ~ bhəti'ca	little, a few, some	yekkwə	much, many, a lot of
phuk(k)ẽ'	all	mak(k)wə	to the extent needed (i.e. as much as needed)

Except /kem/ and /əpwə:/ these adjectives cannot occur as predicative complements. These adjectives do not take a classifier.

3. <u>Adjectives of Identity</u>

This type includes Ordinal numerals and a few other adjectives showing kinship relations.

i) <u>Ordinal Numerals</u>

These numerals are borrowed from Nepali. They occur with the classifiers /me/ or /gu/ in their attributive function.

pəhila	first	dosra	second	tyəsra	third
athəũ	eighth	nəvəũ	ninth	dəsəũ	tenth

ii) Other Adjectives of Identity

jetha/jethi	the eldest	mahila/mahili	the second eldest
sahila/sahili	the third eldest	kahila/kahili	the fourth eldest
thahila/thahili	the fifth eldest	kancha/kanchi	the youngest

These adjectives are also borrowed from Nepali. They have usually three-fold distinction:

jyetha/jyethi	the eldest	mahila/mahili	the middle (one)
kancha/kanchi	the youngest		

They show male/female distinction, e.g.

kancha-me kae'	the youngest son
kanchi-me mhae'	the youngest daughter

In their attributive function they cooccur with the classifier /me/ which is deleted before the plural suffix /pĩ'/, e.g.

kancha-me kae'	the youngest son
kancha-pĩ' kae'-pĩ'	the youngest sons

4. A Note on Adjectives of Dimension

There are two adjectives of dimension: /te/ "of great dimension" and /ci/ "of small dimension". These adjectives take double classifiers. Thus, before the noun they qualify they occur as: Adjective of Dimension + $Classifier_1$ + $Classifier_2$

As regards the type of classifier they take the Adjective-of-Dimension in itself behaves as a numeral and the Adjective-of Dimension + $Classifier_1$ together behave as an adjective of quality. In other words, the $Classifier_1$ that the Adjective-of-Dimension

takes before a given noun is the same as the classifier a numeral takes before that noun. Similarly, $Classifier_2$ is the same as the classifier an adjective of quality takes, e.g.

te-ma-gu sima	big tree
n̄i-ma sima	two trees
nhu'-gu sima	new tree
ci-pu-gu mulu	small needle
n̄i-pu mulu	two needles
nhu'-gu mulu	new needle
tə-pa'-gu mhica	large pocket
n̄i-pa' mhica	two pockets
nhu'-gu mhica	new pocket
ci-ha'-gu khipə'	short rope
n̄i-ha' khipə'	two ropes
nhu'-gu khipə'	new rope

There are, however, three classifiers — /dhikə' ~ dhi'/, /dhəṅ/ and /gwə'/ — that go only with the adjectives of dimension. The corresponding classifiers that go with numerals are /mə/, /gu/ and /gə'/ respectively, e.g.

tə-dhikə'- mə manû'	tall man
tə-dhikə'-pî' manû'-tə	tall men
n̄i-mə manû'	two men
tə-dhəṅ-gu myec	big chair
n̄i-gu myec	two chairs

(Note: /dhañ/ is realized as /dhẽ:/ when the second classifier does not occur, e.g.

we myec te-dhẽ:	"that chair is big".)
that chair big	

te-gwe:-gu tepuli	big cap
ñi-ge: tepuli	two caps

The classifiers /ja:/, /bya/ and /phi/ showing depth/height, breadth/width and thickness normally occur only with the adjectives of dimension, e.g.

te-ja:-gu khusi	deep river
ci-ja:-gu khusi	shallow river
te-ja:-gu chyẽ	tall building
ci-ja:-gu chyẽ	building of small height
te-bya-gu lẽ	broad road
ci-bya-gu lẽ	narrow road
te-phi-gu chyəngu:	thick leather
ci-phi-gu chyəngu:	thin leather

7.1.4. Proadjectives

Proadjectives, like pronouns, are a small closed subclass of nominals. They may be Demonstrative, Interrogative, or Indefinite. Each one of them, in turn, may be of quality, of quantity or of identity.

1. Demonstrative

		Addressee Proximate	Speaker Proximate	Remote
i) of quality		amñā:	thenā'	ānā'
		that kind of	this kind of	that kind of
ii) of quantity	Count		thwe'	we'
			this many	that many
	Non-count	amli	thuli	uli
		that much	this much	that much
iii) of identity	General	ama	thwe	we
		that	this	that
	Specific	ama	thu	u
		that	this	that

2. Interrogative

i) of quality		gānā'	of what kind
ii) of quantity	Count	gwe'	how many
	Non-count	guli	how much
iii) of identity			
General	Human	su	what/which
	Non-human	chu	what
Specific		gu	which

Note Reduplication of Interrogative Proadjectives of identity gives their corresponding plural forms.

3. Indefinite

i) of quality		nhathē' ya'	whatever kind of
ii) of quantity		nhakkwe	whatever quantity of
iii) of identity	Gen. Human	sū'	whoever, any/some
	Non-Hum	chū'	whatever, any/some
	Specific	nha	whichever

Of these, proadjectives of quality, countable pro-adjectives of quantity and interrogative and indefinite specific proadjectives of identity obligatorily take the classifier /me/ (animate) or /gu/ (non-animate).

7.1.5. Classifiers

Classifiers are bound stems which cooccur with adjectives or proadjectives. Newari has two sets of classifiers which can be described as (1) Adjectival and (2) Adverbial.

1. Adjectival Classifiers

These classifiers, together with the adjective/proadjective that precedes it, function as an AP. The major bulk of the classifiers belongs to this group.

Normally these classifiers occur between a qualifying adjective/proadjective and a qualified noun:

Adjective/Proadjective + Classifier + Noun

The type of classifier is determined both by the type of adjective/proadjective and the type of noun. This can be graphically presented as follows:

Adj/Proadj	Classifier	Noun
Non-numeral	me	Animate
	gu	Non-animate
Numeral	me	Animate
	Others	Non-animate

Examples

nhu?-me master	new teacher
nhu?-gu chyẽ	new house
ñi-me master	two teachers

Note The following Adjectives/Proadjectives do not take a classifier:

1. Non-numeral adjectives of quantity.
2. Non-countable proadjectives of quantity.
3. Indefinite proadjective of quantity

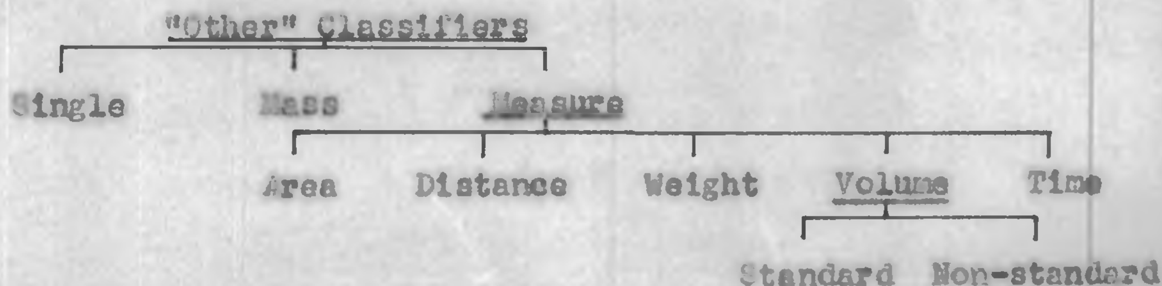
[redacted]

4. General proadjectives of identity.

"Non-numeral" adjectives/proadjectives mentioned in the chart above, therefore, consist of the following ones:

1. Adjectives of quality.
2. Adjectives of identity.
3. Proadjectives of quality.
4. Demonstrative and interrogative proadjectives of quantity.
5. Demonstrative, Interrogative and indefinite specific proadjectives of identity.

"Other" classifiers that go with numerals when the following noun is non-animate can be divided into following groups and subgroups:



i) Single

These classifiers represent single objects. They correspond to various shapes of the objects.

/pa'/	flat objects used for sitting, lying, covering or keeping something, e.g.			
	lasa	mattress	suku'	mat
	mhica	pocket	kusa	umbrella
/pa/	flat objects in general, e.g.			
	meri	bread	lakā'	shoe
	lha'	hand(the part below wrist)	nhae'pā'	ear
/guli/	tiny round objects, e.g.			
	pipelmyet	sweet	pace'	digestive
/ge'/	round objects (both spherical and cubes), e.g.			
	chyē'	head	tepuli	cap
	ē'	mango	bakes	box
/pu/	elongated objects including things used for typing, e.g.			
	kethi	stick	mulu	needle
	pacī'	finger	khipe'	rope
/phwe'/	swā'	flower	tā'kh	button
/thwa'/	kauli	cauliflower	banda	cabbage
/kha/	chyē	house		
/ma/	sima	tree, plant		

/ta/	ghasa	item of food	cij	thing
/gu/	other things in general, e.g.			
	cij	thing	dyes	country
	bhæ:	language	philim	film, cinema
	myec	chair	tyebəl	table

ii) Mass

These classifiers occur generally with non-countable nouns and denote a certain mass, a length, a pair etc.

/gwara/ . a round lump of ..., e.g.

n̄i-gwara sabwə̄:/caku   two lumps of soap/candy

/pǣ:/   a flat lump of ..., e.g.

n̄i-pǣ: la/ja   two lumps of meat/rice

/dhi:/   a lump (non-round, non-flat) of ..., e.g.

n̄i-dhi: caku/la   two lumps of candy/meat

/ku/   a load of ..., e.g.

n̄i-ku sī/lə:/alu   two loads of firewood/water/potato

/pwǣ:/   a bundle of (hair etc) ..., e.g.

n̄i-pwǣ: sə̄   two bundles of hair

/thu/   a bundle of (vegetables) ..., e.g.

n̄i-thu tukə̄:/pachəi   two bundles of tukə̄/pachəi
(two varieties of green vegetables)

/pwe:/   a package of ..., e.g.

n̄i-pwə: məri/cəkəlet   two packages of sweets/chocolates

/dwā/ a heap of

e.g. ñi-dwā ca two heaps of earth/soil/clay

/puce'/ a small heap/gathering of

e.g. ñi-puce' jaki/manū' two heaps/gatherings of rice/people

/mhu'/ a handful of

e.g. ñi-mhu' jaki two handfuls of rice

/ku'/ a piece of

e.g. ñi-ku' la two pieces of meat

/ju/ a pair of

e.g. ñi-ju lakā' two pairs of shoes

/ma'/ a string of

e.g. ñi-ma' sikhə'/swāma' two strings of necklace/garland

/ha' ~ hake'/ a length of

e.g. ñi-ha' ~ ñi-hake' suka two lengths of thread

iii) Measure

(a) Area

Native

/pi'/ 74 ft. x 74 ft. = 5476 sq.ft.

Borrowed

/rwepani/ equivalent to the native /pi'/

/biga/ = 13.5 rwepani (approximately)

(b) Distance

Native

/kwe:/	= 2 miles (approximately)
/ku/	cubit (about 1.5 feet)
/langu/	finger-width (about 0.7 inch)

Borrowed

/kos/	equivalent to the native /kwe:/		
/gej/	= 1 yard		
/hat/	equivalent to the native /ku/		
/bhita/	span (about 9 inches)		
/mail/	mile	/phit/	foot
/inc/	inch	/mitar/	metre

(c) Weight

Native

/dhani/	about 2.5 kg.

Borrowed

/pau/	1/12 of /dhani/	/twala/	12.5 gms.
/man/	maund	/kilwe:/	kilogram

(d) Volume

Standard Native

/pha/	approximately 4.5 litres	/mana/	1/8th of a /pha/
/ceke:/	1/4th of a /mana/	/muri/	20 /pha/

Non-standard

This is measurement in terms of containers, e.g.

Native

n̄i-khwela ela'	two bowls of wine
n̄i-dhewe' duru	two ladles of milk

Some other containers used this way are

/ghe'/	pitcher	/tyepe/	big pitcher
/tā'phe/	small pitcher	/keruwa/	small pitcher of different design

Borrowed

/sisi/	bottle	/gilas/	glass/
/cemca/	spoon		

Native numerals are used before the native classifiers of measurement and borrowed (from Nepali) numerals or native numerals + gu are used before borrowed classifiers of measurement, e.g.

n̄i-pi' bū	two "pi'"s of field
[dui-rwepeni / n̄i-gu-rwepeni] bū	two "ropani"s of field
n̄i-kwe' lē	two "kwe'"s of road
[dui-mail / n̄i-gu-mail]	two miles of road

n̄i-dhani la	two 'dhani's of meat
[dui-mən / n̄i-gu-mən] sĩ	two maunds of firewood
n̄i-tyəpə lə'	two big pitcherfuls of water
[dui-camca / n̄i-gu-camca] lə'	two spoonfuls of water

The following well-assimilated borrowed classifiers of measurement take the native numerals as if they are native classifiers, e.g.

n̄i-<u>sisi</u> wasə'	two <u>bottles</u> of medicine
swə-<u>gilas</u> lə'	three <u>glasses</u> of water
pyə-<u>twəla</u> lū	four <u>tolas</u> of gold
n̄a-<u>gəj</u> kapə'	five <u>yards</u> of cloth
swə-<u>pau</u> la	three '<u>pau</u>'s of meat

(e) Time

Native

/nu/	day	/wa'/	week	/la/	month
/rə/	year				

Borrowed

/bərsə/	year	/məhina/	month	/həpta/	week
/ghənta/	hour	/minyet/	minute	/sekend/	second

Native and borrowed numerals are used before native and borrowed classifiers respectively.

The NP "Numeral + Time-classifier + Time" is normally realized as "Numeral + Time-Classifier", e.g.

[n̄i-la i: / dui-mahina samaye]	-----	[n̄i-la / dui-mahina]	two-months' time

For a discussion on the classifiers that go with the adjectives/proadjectives of dimension see "A Note on Adjectives of Dimension"(7.1.3.4.) .

2. Adverbial classifiers

These classifiers, together with the adjective/proadjective that precedes it, function as an AdvP of Frequency. Newari has only three such classifiers: /ka:/, /ru/, and /thu/. Of these /ka:/ is general and occurs with almost all the verbs, /ru/ and /thu/ have an implied sense of "in near/quick succession" and occur only with a limited number of verbs, e.g.

we n̄i-ru wala/wana	He came/went twice or two times.
wa: ca n̄i-ru lhyala	He carried a load of soil twice.
wa: jita: n̄i-thu dala	He hit me twice.
wa: n̄i-thu nala	He won (in gambling) twice.
we n̄i-ka: wala/dala/wata	He came/fell down/fought twice.
wa: n̄i-ka: dala/nala/swala/bila	He hit/ate/looked/gave twice.

7.2. Verbs

Verbs are those stems which inflect for Mood, Tense and Aspect. In their finite forms they function as foci of sentences.

From the point of view of syntactic function verbs may be classified into the following ten groups:

1. Copulative
2. Patient-Copulative
3. Intransitive
4. Patient-Intransitive
5. Semitransitive
6. Patient-Semitransitive
7. Transitive
8. Ditransitive
9. Transitive-Factitive
10. Ditransitive-Factitive

7.2.1. Copulative Verbs

These verbs describe the Subject in some way. They link the Subject with the Predicative Complement. The Subject is always an NP in Nominative form; the Predicative Complement may be an NP or an AP the former of which may be in Nominative [redacted] or Genitive form.

Semantically the AP-Complement qualifies, the Nominative-Complement identifies, [redacted] and the Genitive-Complement specifies the owner of the Subject.

Examples

Subject	Pr-Comp	V-Cop	
ram	gē'si	me-ju'	Ram is not/did not become lean.
ram	vē' thē'	cwē'	Ram looks like a mad man.
ram	jimikae'	khe'	Ram is my son.
ram	mantri	jule	Ram became a minister.
[redacted]	[redacted]		[redacted]
thwe kelam	ramyagu	khe'	This pen is Ram's.

7.2.2. Patient-Copulative Verbs

These verbs link the embedded Copular construction (i.e. 'Subject + Predicative Complement' construction, the Copulative verb being obligatorily deleted) with the Patient.

Semantically the content of the embedded Copular construction is something experienced by or relative to the Patient.

The Subject is always an NP in Nominative form; the Predicative Complement may be an AP or an NP in Nominative form; the Patient is an NP in Objective or Genitive form. AP-Complement and Genitive-Patient do not cooccur; Nominative-Complement and Objective-Patient do not cooccur either.

The positions of the Patient and the Subject are freely interchangeable.

Examples

Patient	Subject	Pr-Comp	V-Pt-Cop
ram-yate	thwe tepuli	thik	me-ju'
Ram-to	this cap	fit	not-is

"This cap does not fit Ram"
or, "This cap is not fit for Ram"

ji-te'	thwe ran̈	bā'la'	me-ta'
I-to	this colour	beautiful	not-look

"This colour does not look nice to me."

ram-ya	we manu'	keka	pare'-ju'
Ram's	that man	uncle	is related

"That man is related to Ram as his(Ram's) uncle."

7.2.3. Intransitive Verbs

These verbs refer to an action, event or a state of being and are not goal directed. The Subject is always an NP in Nominative form.

Examples

Subject	V-Intr	
ram	khwele	Ram wept/cried.
wa	wele	Rain came (It rained).
meca	gyate	The child got frightened.

7.2.4. Patient-Intransitive Verbs

These verbs (of experience/undergoing, existence, need etc.) take a Patient in addition to a Subject.

Semantically they describe some thing (expressed by the Subject) which befalls or is experienced, needed or owned by the Patient.

The Subject is always in Nominative form; the Patient may be in Objective or Genitive [redacted] form.

Examples

Patient	Subject	V-Pt-Intr	
jita'	pwa'	syata	I felt stomach pain.
I-to	stomach	pained	
ramyata	jwar	wala	Ram got fever.
Ram-to	fever	came	
ramyata	dhyeba	mala	Ram needed money.
Ram-to	money	is needed	
ramya	[nime kala' / nikha chyo]	du	Ram has [two wives / two houses].
sita ya	kae'	bula	Sita gave birth to a son.
Sita's	son	born	
sechi-da'ya	nipha cike'	we'	A hundred rupee can buy two 'pha's of cooking oil.
for hundred rupees	two 'pha's of cooking oil	comes	

7.2.5. Semitransitive Verbs

These verbs, in addition to a Subject, take a Residual Complement. The Subject is always an NP in Nominative form; the Residual Complement may be an AdvP, PP or NP which, however, functions as an adverbial of place, and which may be in Nominative, Locative, Ablative-Ergative or Comitative form.

Examples

Subject	Res-Comp	V-Semitr.	
ram	iskul - iskule:	wena	Ram went to school.
Ram	school - to school	went	
ram	kwethae:	du	Ram is in the room.
Ram	in the room	is	
dye:	sakabanā:	du	God exists everywhere.
god	everywhere	exist	
ram	simā:	kutuwale	Ram fell down from the tree.
Ram	from-tree	fell-down	
ram	dvedhare:	lata	Ram is in dilemma.
Ram	in-dilemma	is-placed	
changu kalam	ramyake	du	Your pen is with Ram.
your pen	with-Ram	exists	
maca	ramyake	wena	The child went to Ram.
child	to-Ram	went	
maca	ram khana:	gyata	The child became afraid of Ram.
child	Ram source	is frightened	

ram	wo nape = we lise	[lwate] [wene]	Ram [fought] with him. [went]
Ram	he with	[fought] [went]	

Res-Comp	Subject	V-Semitr	
ramyake	yekkwe dhyeba	du	Ram has a lot of money.
Ram-in-possession	a lot of money	exist	
chepa lha'te'	ñapu paci'	dai	A hand has five fingers.
in one hand	five fingers	exist	There are five fingers in a hand.

7.2.6. Patient-Semitransitive Verbs

These verbs take a Patient besides the Subject and the Residual Complement.

Semantically they describe something that befalls or is experienced by the Patient. The Subject expresses that something which has a source expressed by the Residual Complement.

The Subject is in Nominative form; the Residual Complement is an NP in Ablative-Ergative form or a PP; the Patient is in Genitive or Objective form.

The positions of the Patient and the Residual Complement are interchangeable.

Examples

Patient	Res-Comp	Subject	V-Pt-Semitr	
ramya	we nape	lwapu	jula	Ram quarreled with him.
Ram's	with him	quarrel	happened	

ramya	sitalise	bya'	jule	Ram married Sita.
	with Sita	marriage	happened	
jite'	wekhena	maya	wene	I felt pity on him.
	him	pity	went	
ramya	nhasā'	hi	wale	Ram bleeded through nose.
	from/ through nose	blood	came	

7.2.7. Transitive Verbs

These verbs refer to an action and are goal directed. They take the Subject in Ablative-Ergative form and the Object in Nominative or Objective form according to the following rules:

Rule 1

Some transitive verbs take only animate objects; these objects are always in Objective form, e.g.

Subject	Object	V-tr	
ramē'	binayate	khwe'kele	Ram caused Bina to weep.
ramē'	binayate	thyene	Ram caused Bina to sleep.
ramē'	binayate	khyate	Ram frightened Bina.

Rule 1(a)

Some transitive verbs which take only animate objects take them in Objective form if they are Proper nouns but in Nominative form or Objective form as free variants if they are Non-proper nouns, e.g.

ramẽ: binayate syate	Ram killed Bina.
ramẽ: dhũ - dhũyate syate	Ram killed a tiger.

Rule 2

Some take only inanimate objects; these are always in Nominative form, e.g.

ramẽ jhya: caa:kale	Ram opened the window.
ramẽ: kalem twa:thule	Ram broke the pen.
ramẽ: gilas tachyate	Ram broke the glass.

Rule 3

Some are capable of taking either of the two - animate or inanimate objects -, the animate objects are in Nominative form or Objective form as free variants, but the inanimate ones are in Nominative form, e.g.

ramẽ: bina - binayate khene	Ram saw Bina.
dhũ: maca - macayate nale	The tiger ate the baby.
but, ramẽ: chyẽ khene	Ram saw the house.
dhũ: la nale	The tiger ate flesh.

7.2.8. Ditransitive Verbs

These verbs, like the transitive verbs, take an object (goal). In addition they take a Residual Complement which may be a human undergoer, a source, an Adverb or Motion or an Adverb of Place.

The subject is in Ablative-Ergative form; the Object is in Nominative form if inanimate and in Objective form if animate; the Residual Complement may be an NP or an AdvP the former of which may be in Objective, Comitative, Ablative-Ergative or Locative form.

Examples

Subject	Res-Comp	Object	V-Ditr	
ramē'	jitə'	kələm	bilə	Ram gave me a pen.
ramē'	jike	chəṅgu-nā'	n̄ene	Ram asked me your name.
ramē'	jike	gwali	phwənə	Ram asked me for help.
ramē'	kheltī'	dhyeba	likalə	Ram took out money from the pocket.

Subject	Object	Res-Comp	V-Ditr	
ramē'	jitə'	punəe'	chwelə	Ram sent me to Poona.
ramē'	dhyeba-phukkə'	pukhli'	wanchwelə	Ram threw all the money into the pond.
ramē'	kələm	khəlti'	telə	Ram put the pen in the pocket.
ramē'	məcəyate	kwəth əe'	kunə	Ram locked the child in the room.

7.2.9. Transitive-Factitive Verbs

Besides the Subject and the Object these verbs take a Complement which is Predicative to the Object (not to the Subject). They describe the identity or condition of the Object as perceived or affected by the Subject.

The Subject occurs in Ablative-Eragative form; the animate Object occurs in Objective form, the inanimate Object may occur in

Nominative or Objective form; the Predicative-Complement may be an NP or an AP the former of which may be in Nominative, Locative or Genitive form.

The AP-Complement describes the quality or condition, the Nominative-Complement identifies, the Locative-Complement describes the condition and the Genitive-Complement specifies the owner of the Object.

Examples

Subject	Object	Pr-Comp	V-Tr-F$_a$c	
pirē'	waite	gē'si	yate	Worries made him lean.
ramē'	jite'	dikke	yate	Ram made me sad.
ramē'	jite'	cye'-thē'	yate	Ram treated me as a servant
ramē'	jite'	lwapu-khica	dhale	Ram said that I was a quarrelsome person.
ramē'	krisne-yate	binaye-bha'te	dhaka'-cwene	Ram thought that Krishna was Bina's husband.
ramē'	jite'	[mentri / phwegi']	yate	Ram made me a [minister / beggar].
ramē'	jite'	dwedhare'	lakale	Ram put me in dilemma.
ramē'	thwe-kalem	sita-yagu	dhaka'-cwene	Ram thought that this pen belonged to Sita.

7.2.10. Ditransitive-Factitive Verbs

These verbs, like the Ditransitive verbs, take an Object together with a Residual Complement. But unlike them, they take an Object-Predicative Complement as well.

The Subject is in Ablative-Ergative form, the Object and the Predicative Complement in Nominative form and the Residual Complement in Objective, Locative or Comititive form.

Examples

Subject	Res-Comp	Object	Pr-Comp	V-Ditr-Fac	
ramẽ'	jike	tisa	bare'	tala	"Ram pawned the ornament with me."
by-Ram	with-me	ornament	pawn(n)	kept	
ñayadhisã'	waita	jhirka - (dã')	jaribana	yata	"The judge fined him ten rupees."
by-judge	to-him	ten-rupee	fine	did	

Note

1. Subject occurs with all verbs,
   Patient occurs with Pt-Cop, Pt-Intr and Pt-Semitr verbs,
   Pr-Comp occurs with Cop, Pt-Cop, Tr-Fac and Ditr-Fac verbs,
   Object occurs with Tr, Ditr, Tr-Fac & Ditr-Fac verbs, and
   Res-Comp occurs with Semitr, Pt-Semitr, Ditr, & Ditr-Fac Verbs
   [redacted] in the propositional core of Newari sentences.
2. When nouns in Genitive form function as Patient-Complement the corresponding forms that ISg, IIHon Sg and IINon-hon.Sg pronouns take are Nominative, Nominative and Ablative-Ergative respectively, e.g.

[ram-ya]	ñima kala' du	[Ram]	has/have two wives.
[ji]		[I]	
[chi]		[You(Hon Sg)]	
[chã']		[You(Sg)]	

7.3. Particles

Particles are the residual class consisting of those stems which always stand as free forms and never enter into inflectional constructions. Syntactically they belong to one or more out of a number of small closed sets. They may be conveniently divided into the following subclasses:

1. Adverbs and Proadverbs,
2. Intensifiers and Prointensifiers,
3. Postpositions,
4. Conjunctions,
5. Prosententials,
6. Sentence qualifiers,
7. Emphatic particles,
8. Negative particles,
9. Question particles,
10. Quotative particles, and
11. Expletive particles

(Particles are underlined wherever they are illustrated within a larger context.)

7.3.1. Adverbs and Proadverbs

They modify verbs. Semantically they are of the following subtypes:

(The Proadverbs are shown separately under each sub-type.)

1. & 2. Adverbs of Place and Time

Newari has only a few adverbs of place and time. These are:

dwã:	in	pyã:	out
thã:	up	kwã:	down
ñhã:	ahead	lyã:	back(cooccurs with wa/wan 'come/go')
ñhete	in advance	lite	back(cooccurs with bi/ka 'give/take')
ñhephe:	forward	liphe:	back(cooccurs with swe 'look')

(Note: ñhephe: occurs only in the environment liphe --)

ñhapã:	early	libake	late

The adverbial notions of location and time are expressed mainly by NP + Case-ending (mainly, NP_{Loc} and $NP_{Abl-Erg}$), e.g.

NP	NP_{Loc}	$NP_{Abl-Erg}$	$NP_{Abl-Erg}$ + PP
kwatha	kwathae:	kwathã:	kwathã: nisẽ:
room	in the room	from the room	from the room
dune	dune	dunẽ:	dunẽ: nisẽ:
inside	in, inside	from inside	from inside
suthe	suthe:		suthã: nisẽ:
morning	in the morning		from the morning
kene:	kene:		kensẽ: nisẽ:
tomorrow	tomorrow		from tomorrow

For further details see the end of 9.1.1.

Duration of time (Numeral + Temporal noun)

ñi-nu	two days	swe-la	three months	ña-re	five years

Proadverbs (Proadjective + Temporal noun)

gwe'-re	how many years	thwe'-re	this many years

3. of Frequency

n̄hin̄hī'	daily	gublē'gublē'	occasionally
n̄hablē'	always	gublē'	never
berweber	frequently	barembar	repeatedly

Numeral + Adverbial Classifier

n̄i-ka' twice, two times

Proadverbs

Proadjective + Adverbial Classifier

gwe'-ke'	how many times
we'-ke'	that many times
thwe'-ke'	this many times

4. of Manner

bulū'	slowly	yakene - bwē'	quickly
teskē'	hard, loudly	ciskē'	mildly, in a low voice

VP + ke

bā'la-ke	beautifully	tepyeṅ-ke	straight

Proadverbs

gethe	how	ethe	in that manner	thethe	in this manner

5. <u>of Degree</u>

(Intensifiers, which are also a subgroup of adverbs of degree, are treated separately.)

epwe'	to a greater extent
bhəca	slightly, a little more
e.g. le' <u>bhəca</u> kwate	water became slightly hot
<u>bhəca</u> bä'lake ya	Do (it) a little more well.
bhusukke	completely (used with the verb 'to forget')
phecī' phekkwe	as far as possible.

<u>Proadverbs</u>

guli	to what extent
uli	to that extent
thuli	to this extent

6. <u>of Circumstance</u>

beru	instead

7.3.2. <u>Intensifiers and Prointensifiers</u>

They occur immediately preceding the verbs, adjectives and adverbs they intensify, e.g.

we [<u>taskë'</u> / <u>sa'pe</u> / <u>asadhye</u> / <u>khu'b</u>] khwele — He cried intensely.

we taskā: gā:si	He is very lean.
wā: macayata sa:pa taskā: dala	He beat the child very hard.
wā: macayata taskā bā:melakka dala	He beat the child very hard.
we asadhye bulū: wala	He came very slowly.
we khu:b yakana wala	He came very fast.

These intensifiers usually occur along with the emphatic particle, e.g.

we maca khu:b-he gā:si	That child is extremely lean.
wā: macayata sa:pa-he taskā: dala	He beat the child extremely hard.

Prointensifiers

ap ae:cakā: taskā halamate — Don't shout so loudly.

thap ae:cakā: bā:la:ma misa jī:gublā: makhanani
I have never seen a woman so beautiful as this.

aha: we swā: gap ae:cakā: bā:la: — Oh! how beautiful is that flower.

7.3.3. Postpositions

Postpositions occur following nouns, pronouns, adverbs, non-finite verb forms and other postpositions. They act as the axes of Postpositional Phrases and the Postpositional Phrase as a whole usually functions as an adverbial.

There are only a few postpositions in Newari. Various notions of location (such as 'in front', 'behind', 'above', 'below', inside', 'outside' etc.) which are expressed by prepositions in English and by postpositions in Nepali are expressed by nouns in Newari (cf. end of 9.1.1.)

ñhe:	before(Temporal)	dhunka:	after(Temporal)
bela:	at the time of	nisã:---takka	from---to
baje:	at the hour of	khunu	on the day of
thame:	at the place of	satki	immediately after
khenã:	of (source)	nape - lise	with
lagi:	for	thẽ:	like
pakhe	toward	likke	near, adjacent to
(X)sikã:(Y)	(Y)more than(X)	ti	about(cooccurs with N-ke 'N-times')

Borrowed

bare:	about	anusar	according to
bahek	except	satta	in lieu of

7.3.4. Conjunctions

Conjunctions are of two types: coordinating and subordinating of which the former join two or more words or phrases or clauses whereas the latter join only clauses at least one of which is subordinate.

1. Coordinating

wo	and	ki	or
tare	but	ale	and then
na...na	neither...nor	ki...ki	either...or
nã:...nã:	as well as	(ju:)sã:... (ju:)sã:	either...or

2. Subordinating

dha:sa/sa if

e.g. [wa wale <u>dha'sa</u>] / [wa wa' <u>sa</u>]   if it rains ...

lī'   because

e.g. mhige' wā' da'gu lī' jita syakhā' cale

I caught cold because I was drenched in rain yesterday.

(ju')sā'   though

e.g. wa gā'si (ju')sā sa'pahe bala'   He is very strong though (he is) lean.

7.3.5. <u>Prosententials</u>

Prosententials consist of a word or a phrase but function as a complete sentence. Such sentences are among minor sentences. Prosententials can be grouped as follows:

1. Responsive
2. Exclamatory
3. Vocative
4. Question Tags
5. Initiators
6. Hortative

1. <u>Responsive</u>

hā'   yes   hejur   yes(honorific)

They occur in an answer to a call, e.g.

e sanu   O Sanu!   [hā' / hejur]   yes

khe'	Yes (affirmative)	makhu	No (negative)
e.g. we chimi kija khe'la		Is he your brother?	
khe'	Yes.	makhu	No.
de	O.K.(acceptance)	he's	O.K.(Hon form of de)
mha'	No, I won't(refusal)		
e.g. kene wa nhā'		Come tomorrow, O.K?	
de/he's	O.K. I will.	mha'	No, I won't.

ē It is uttered by the listener, often unconsciously and automatically, indicating that he is listening to what the speaker is saying, thus encouraging him to continue further.

ale and then? e.g.

Speaker : we kwoth ee'dwā' wale myece' phyetula ...

He walked in the room, sat on the chair ...

Listener: ale "and then (what happened)?"

2. Exclamatory

aha'	(delight, pleasure)	yemā'(sa)	(surprise, fear)
ayya	(sudden pain)	aya(ma) (recursive)	(continuous pain)
appa	(sudden burning or cold)	syabas	(compliment, praise, appreciation)
chi	(dislike, disgust)	dhettyeri	(mild displeasure)
cup	Silence! (annoyance, irritation)	[bicara] [hare'sibe]	(sympathy, pity)
dhikkar	(disappointment, frustration, demoralizing)	[sattye] [sasyanahette] [dharve'dharme]	(swearing)

3. Vocative

Human

e	o!	e.g.	e sanu	o sanu!
ye ... (ye!)	o! (to relatives only)			
		e.g.	ye ma (ye!)	o mother!

Non-human

a ku'r ku'r a	calling a dog
a su'ri a	calling a cat
cye...cye	asking a dog to chase someone or something (away)
le (le)	driving a dog away

4. Question Tags

They occur following a statement, question or an imperative sentence, e.g.

khela added after statements

e.g. che jā'ce' pas jule khela You passed the examination, didn't you?

hē' added after Lacunal Questions

e.g. we su hē' Who is he?

nhā' ~ nhī' added after Imperative sentences

e.g. kane wa nhā' ~ nhī' Come tomorrow, O.K?

5. Initiators

se "give way"

e.g. se ji chake' wane — Move aside, let me go.

bina'bi "give way"

It is used to draw the attention of the people around or in front of the speaker asking them to give way. The speaker is usually carrying either something holy (so that the people around are not supposed to touch it) or something heavy. Unlike /se/, this initiator is not followed by a sentence.

6. Hortative

(NP) na (Here is (NP)) Take (it)!

(Speaker is giving s.th. to the addressee).

7.3.6. Sentence-Qualifiers

They modify the sentence as a whole and normally occur in the beginning of it.

la'sa	perhaps ...	phusa	if you can ...
jyu'sa	if possible ...	khā chu dha' sa	the fact is ...
bastabe'	in fact ...	dhathē'	really ...
e ju'sa	in that case ...	dhathē' dhægu khe'sa	to tell you the truth
esā	even then		

7.3.7. Emphatic Particles

Emphatic particles occur following a stem which is emphasized. In case of a reduplicated stem they occur between the two parts of it.

/he ~ ye/

It may occur with nominals, verbs or adverbs and has particularizing effect, positively or negatively, e.g.

jite: we-he ~ ye ma:	I need that.(Anything else won't do)
jite: we-he ~ ye mwa:	I don't need that in particular. (Anything else also will do.)
we pyā:-he ~ ye mewe:	He did not come out at all.
thwe melta palu-he ~ ye meju:	This chili is not hot at all.
theū-he ~ ye wa	Come today itself.
ram we-he ~ ye me-we:	Ram did not come at all.
weite ethe-he ~ye juima:	Let it happen to him like that. (Let him have it because he did not listen to me.)

/ya/

It occurs between the two parts of a reduplicated nominal stem, e.g.

ipī: phukē: khū-ya-khū — They are all thieves (without exception).

/jeke/ only

e.g. miste jeke — only women

/nē:/ also

e.g. che-nē: wa — you also come.

/la/ that thing etc. in particular

e.g. we-<u>la</u> si'dhuṅkele He/She(emph.) has already died.

ji mhige'-<u>la</u> tyate I won yesterday at least (I never used to win before).

/napẽ'/ 'even'

It usually occurs with a noun or a pronoun in ergative case, e.g.

weite macã'-<u>napẽ'</u> bukele He was defeated even by a child.

/take nẽ'/ 'even'

wẽ' maca-<u>takanẽ'</u> bakimete' He did not spare even a child.

/re ~ le/

It occurs only with a verbal stem in imperative positive form which is optionally reduplicated, e.g.

ne <u>re-le</u> (ne) Eat!

/jekẽ' ... (ka)/

It may emphasize any stem and has exclusive sense, e.g.

che-<u>jekẽ'</u> khũ (<u>ka</u>) You are thief (not anyone else).

ji mhige'-jekẽ' tyate (<u>ka</u>) I won yesterday (not any other day).

7.3.8. <u>Negative Particles</u>

/me/

ye'	"(I) like."	<u>me</u>-ye'	"(I) don't like."
khe'	"affirmative"	<u>me</u>-khu	"negative"

dȇ'	"is cheap"	<u>me</u>-dȇ'	"is not cheap"
bȃ'la'	"is beautiful"	bȃ'-<u>me</u>-la'	"isn't beautiful"
ma'	"is needed"	m-w-a'	"isn't needed"

<u>Note</u>: /me/ + m initial of the verb are realized as /mw-/.

7.3.9. <u>Question Particles</u>

/la/ It occurs after statements in Yes/No question type, e.g.

che tyate <u>la</u> — Did you win?

wȇ' ela' twȇ' <u>la</u> — Does he drink liquor?

In "or" question type the conjunction ki "or" occurs after /la/, e.g.

te misa <u>la-kimijȇ'</u> — Is that person a woman or a man?

che tyate <u>la-ki</u> bute — Did you win or loose?

7.3.10. <u>Quotative Particles</u>

Quotative particle /hȇ/ occurs at the end of a sentence which is quoted, e.g.

we we' mekhu <u>hȇ</u> — (He says/said) he won't come.

7.3.11. <u>Expletive Particles</u>

Expletive particles, by virtue of their being an expression of a habitual utterance, may occur at any position (but not within a word) in an utterance. They have no meaning in the context of the utterance (hence, an empty morph) though taken individually outside the context they may have some meaning. Different people use different sets of expletives, e.g.

mane — literally means 'meaning' — yane — no meaning.

7.4. Stem-class Homonymy

Stem-class homonyms are those stems which are different morphemes with related meanings belonging to different stem-classes but having identical forms. Newari has only a few instances of stem-class homonymy.

Illustrations

1.

	Noun		Adjective
kã:	blind person		blind
lañgara	lame person	(male)	lame
lañgari	"	(female)	"
lata	dumb person	(male)	dumb
lati	"	(female)	"
khwãː	deaf person	(male)	deaf
khuĩ	"	(female)	"
lyaːme	youth	(male)	young
lyasye	"	(female)	"
bura	old person	(male)	"
buri	"	(female)	"
meca	child		young
khwapaː	a native of khwapa (a place name)		of khwapa

Note : Compare the following three examples:

(i) Adjective + Classifier + Noun + Case-ending
kã:-ma-manũ:-nã: by a blind man

(ii) Adjective + Classifier + Case-ending
kã:-mã: by the blind one

(iii) Noun + Case-ending

kā̃:-nā̃: by the blind

2.		Noun		Adjective
	palu	ginger		hot (taste)
	caku	candy		sweet
	paũ	marmalade		sour
3.		Noun		Verb
	pa	axe		chop
4.		Noun		Classifier
	pwa:	hole, pit, stomach		(holes)
5.		Pronoun		Proadjective
	thwe	this		this
	chu	what?		what?
	phukẽ:	all		all
6.		Pronoun		Proadverb
	ane	that place		there
	thene	this place		here
	gane	which place?		where?
7.		Adjective		Adverb
	bheca	a little		slightly
8.		Proadjective		Proadverb
	guli	how much		to what degree
9.		Adverb		Intensifier
	teskā̃:	hard, loudly		very
10.		Adverb	Conjunction	Prosentential
	ale	after sometime	and (then)	then

CHAPTER EIGHT

STRUCTURAL CLASSIFICATION OF NEWARI STEMS

Structurally stems in Newari are either Simple or Complex. Simple stems are those monomorphomic roots that can stand by themselves as stems. Complex stems are formed out of bases (usually but not necessarily simple bases) through derivation, composition or reduplication.

8.1. Simple Stems

Simple stems are mostly monosyllabic or disyllabic, e.g.

kha	chicken, hen, hang(s.th.), shave	sa	cow, pull
khasa	snail	wa	paddy, tooth, rain
sə'	voice	wasə'	medicine
ji	I	chə	you, one
wə	he/she/it, that, and, come	thwə	this
dunə	inside, in	thəũ	today
lagi'	for	napə	with
nə̃'	also	jəkə	only
ki	or	mhit	play
n̈hil	laugh	twən	drink
nə	eat	n̈a	buy, bite, fish
khu	steal, six	bi	give

8.2. Derived Stems

These stems are derived from bases through affixation or modification. The affix may be a prefix or suffix. The modification may be vocalic or consonantal or both. The bases may be stem-free roots or stem-bound roots.

Productive affixes, borrowed items and morphophonemic changes are marked wherever relevant.

The list of affixes and their examples are illustrative, not exhaustive.

th-	"proximity"		g-	"interrogation"	

Pronoun/Proadverb

ene	there	th-ene	here	g-ene	where

Proadverb

ethe˙	like that	th-ethe	like this	g-ethe	like what

Proadjective

uli	that much	th-uli	this much	g-uli	how much

Proadverb

uble'	that time, then	th-uble'	this time, now	g-uble'	what time, when

Pronoun/Proadjective

we	that	th-we	this	g-we	where

sə-

Noun

si	louse	sə-si	louse egg

ə- "negation, oppositeness"(B)

Noun

səntwəs	satisfaction	ə-səntwəs	dissatisfaction

Adjective

ləchin	good sign	ə-ləchin	bad sign
səphəl	success	ə-səphəl	failure

əpə- "negation in derogatory sense"(B)

Noun

mən	honour	əpə-mən	insult
jəs	credit	əpə-jəs	discredit

upə- "under-, sub-, vice-" (B)

Noun

səcib	secretary	upə-səcib	undersecretary
səbha'pəti	chairman	upə-səbha'pəti	vice-chairman

ni- "without"(B)

Noun/Adjective

rwəgi	diseased, diseased person	ni-rwəgi	diseaseless/healthy diseaseless/healthy person

8.2.2. Suffix-derived Stems

1. Noun Stems

i) Noun + Suffix ------- Noun

-mi	"doer"		
jya	"work"	jya-mi	worker, hired-hand
-we:	"instrument"		
jya	work	jya-we:	tool
-se:	"place"		
jya	work	jya-se:	working place
-ku:			
su	straw	su-ku:	straw mattress
-nu:			
hi	blood	hi-nu:	vein
-kĩ:			
ne	iron	ne-kĩ:	nail

-ca (a) when used with proper nouns or kinship terms, it implies intimacy and affection, e.g.

Base final /u/ ------- ∅

sanu + ca	---	san-ca	a male name
renu + ca	---	ren-ca	a female name
dai-ca			elder brother
bina-ca			a female name

(b) when used with people commanding social respect, it implies the belittling attitude of the speaker towards them, e.g.

məntri-ca	minister
məstər-ca	teacher

(c) when used with people belonging to lower caste or ~~lower caste or~~ lower stratum of the society, it implies the superior attitude of the speaker, e.g.,

neĩ-ca	a female member of a butcher family
jyapu-ca	a farmer

(d) when used with /kæ:/ 'son' and /mhyæ:/ 'daughter' it means "brother's", e.g.

kæ:	son	kæ:-ca	Br's son
mhyæ:	daughter	mhyæ-ca	Br's daughter

(e) when used with non-human nouns it means 'kidling/diminutive of' e.g.

kha	hen	kha-ca	chick
mye:	buffalo	mye:-ca	buffalo-calf

-e: "a native of"

Base final /ə/ ------- ∅

yelə	a place name	yel-e:	a native of yelə
khwəpə	a place name	khwəp-e:	a native of khwəpə

-mi "a native of"

kyəpu:	a place name	kyəpu-mi	a native of kyəpu:

-bhete	"relation from husband's side"		
kija	younger Br.	kija-bhete	Hu's younger Br
kyẽʔ	younger Si	kyẽʔ-bhete	Hu's younger Si
-si	"related to"		
Base final /æʔ/ ------- /a/			
mhutu	mouth	mhutu-si	lip
nhæʔ	nose	nha-si	nasal bleeding
-ni	"female member/counterpart"		
Base final /V̄/ ------- /V/			
khū̃	thief	khu-ni	female thief
jyapu	farmer	jyapu-ni	female farmer/ female member of a farmer family
jwagi	tailor	jwagi-ni	female tailor/ female member of a talor family
-adi	"doer"(B)		
khyel	game	khyel-adi	player
-rC	"one having"		
galeʔ	thyroid gland	galeʔ-ri	a woman having thyroid gland

ii) Adjective + Suffix ------- Noun

garib	poor	garib-i	poverty(B)
majbur	helpless	majbur-i	helplessness(B)
murkhe	foolish	murkhe-ta	foolishness(B)

-kali "one who is ..."

Base final /Ṽ/ ------- /V/

/thẽ/	elder	/the-kali/	Chieftan(the eldest member of the community, tribe or group.)

iii) Numeral + Suffix ------- Noun

ñime	two(humans)	pime-tipu'	a couple wife + husband
khu	six	khu-se'	a caste
dui	two	du-tiya	second day of the lunar month(B)
dui	two	du-wa	two of card(B)
dui	two	du-nã'	two times(B)
pence	five	penc-ayet	a political institution(B)

iv) Verb + Suffix ------- Noun

ne	eat	ne-sa	food
la	spread(a bed)	la-sa	bed
ku	cover(with an umbrella)	ku-sa	umbrella
lwa	quarrel	lwa-pu	quarrel
su	stitch	su-ka	thread
khwe	weep	khwe-bi	tear
si	die	si-'k	spirit

ii) Adjective + Suffix ------- Noun

caku	sweet	caku-si	a fruit having sweet taste
khai	bitter	khai-si	a fruit having bitter taste
waũ	blue	waũ-mukã'	mushroom

Phonesthetic Base + Suffix ------- Noun

tinn	sound of a a bell	tin-chu	cymble
bhuĩĩ	buzzing noise	bhu-jĩ'	fly

2. Adjective Stems

i) Noun + Suffix ------- Adjective

khwebi	tear	khwebi-lu	maudlin
ela'	liquor	ela'-gulu	drunkard.
thwã	beer	thwã-gulu	drunkard(beer)
rəñ	colour	rəñ-gin	colourful(B)
dan	charity	dan-i	charitable, generous(B)
metleb	selfishness	metleb-i	selfish(B)

ii) Adjective + Suffix ------- Adjective

thẽ	elder	the-kali	elder
kwe	younger	kwe-kali	younger

iii) Numeral + Suffix ------- Adjective

dui	two	dwe-sra	second(B)
tin	three	tye-sra	third(B)

3. Verb Stems

i) Noun + Suffix ------- Verb

tẽ'	anger	te-mwe	be angry
ti	liquid	ti-si	wring
ca'	circle	ca'-hi	go round
pa'	slope	pa'-lu	be inclined
cweka	peak	cweka-lu	be pointed

ii) Verb + Suffix ------- Verb

-k "Causativizer" (Highly Productive)

Base final	/n/ -------	/ṅ/	
	/e(l)/ -------	/eː/	
	/C*a(l)/ -------	/C*æː/	where C* ≠ [w, y]
	/C*i(l)/ -------	/C*iː/	where C* ≠ [w, y]
	/u(l)/ -------	/ui-k/	where the root is monosyllabic and when /u/ is not preceded by a vowel.

Examples

mhit	play	mhit-k	make (s.o.) play
syen	be spoilt	syeṅ-k	spoil (s.th.)
khwe	cry/weep	kweː-k	make (s.o.) cry/weep
tyel	press	tyeː-k	make (s.o.) press
cat	open(itself)	cæː-k	open (s.th.)
sal	pull	sæː-k	make (s.o.) pull
[But,			
kwa	heat(itself)up	kwa-k	heat (s.th.)
ya	do	ya-k	make (s.o.) do]
bi	give	biː-k	make (s.o.) give
n̈hil	laugh	n̈hiː-k	make (s.o.) laugh
[But,			
khai	be bitter	khai-k	make (s.th.) bitter
tui	be white	tui-k	make (s.th.) white, whiten]

khu	steal	khui-k	make(s.o.) steal
pul	pay	pui-k	make(s.o.) pay

[But,

haku	be dirty, black	haku-k	make(s.th.)dirty, black
chwalu	be dilute	chwalu-k	make(s.th.) dilute
khwaū̃	be cold	khwaū̃-k	make (s.th.) cold]

Exceptions

ne	eat	ne-k	make(s.o.) eat, i.e. feed
phi	wear(clothes)	phi-k	make(s.o.) wear
pu	burn(with fire)	pu-k	burn(s.o.)(with fire)
bu	be cooked, be defeated/lose (itself), rub/massage(self)	bu-k	cook (s.th.) defeat/lose, rub, massage(s.o.else)

[But,

bu	be born	bui-k	give birth to)
ca'tu	be bent	ca'-tui-k	bend(s.th.)]

Note

1. Verb roots ending in /k/ do not have a corresponding causativized form as above. Their causativized sense is expressed as follows:

de'k	make	de'ke-bi	give(s.o.) to make
perk	patch up	perke-bi	give(s.o.)to patch up

It is to be noted that the verbs /de'k/ and /perk/ are embedded into the verb /bi/.

2. With some verbs of perception/cognition the suffix implicitly means "with some effort on the part of the perceiver".

wə̄' jite' khən-e	"He saw me."
wə̄' jite' khən̈-k-əle	"He saw me (with some effort)", (i.e. He tried to see me and then he saw me)
wə̄' thwe khə̄ sil-e	"He came to know this thing".
wə̄' thwe khə̄ si'-k-əle	"He came to know this thing (with some effort)", (i.e. He tried to know and then came to know this thing.)
wə̄' thwe khə̄ thu-le	"He understood this matter".
wə̄' thwe khə̄ thui-k-əle	"He understood this matter (with some effort)" (i.e. He tried to understand and then understood this matter.)

4. <u>Adverb Stems</u>

i) Adjective + Suffix ------- Adverb

-s(ə)kə̄' in the manner of

te	of great dimension	te-s(ə)kə̄'	with great force/ intensity, hard, severely
ci	of small dimension	ci-s(ə)kə̄'	with little force, lightly

ii) Verb + Suffix ------- Adverb

-kke, -ke in the manner of, so as to result in

bə̄'la	become beauti--ful	bə̄'la-ke	beautifully

si	die	si-kke	very
sya	feel pain	sya-kke	in a manner so as to cause pain
tapa	be far away	tapa-ke	far away
waũ	be green	waũ-ke	in a manner resulting in a green colour
liba	be late	liba-ke	late
tapyen	be straight	tapyeṅ-ke	straight
mhaipu	become unpleasant	mhaipu-ke	unpleasantly

iii) Adverb + Suffix ------- Adverb

nhapa	before	nhapā'	early

iv) Phonesthetic Base + Suffix ------- Adverb

-e in the manner of

phuss-e	used to refer to the manner of releasing gas off
sull-e	used to refer to the manner of the movement of a reptile
tinn-e	used to refer to the manner of ringing of a bell

8.2.3. Modification-derived Stems

1. Pronoun Stems

Base /e/ ------- /i/ "non-honorific ----- honorific"

che	you (sg)	chi	you (Sg Hon)

Base /j/ ------- /jh/
/i/ ------- /i'/

ji	I	jhi'	we(inclusive)

2. Verb Stems

(The list is almost exhaustive.)

Vd.Unasp.Stop	-------	Corresponding Vl.Asp.Stop	"Causativization"
gu	to torn	khu	tear (s.th.)
gya	be frightened	khya	frighten
tejya	be broken (a pot, glass etc)	techya	break (s.th.)
den	stand/get up	then	make (s.o.) stand/ get up
dun	be demolished	thun	demolish (s.th.)
dyen	sleep	thyen	make (s.o.) sleep
twe'du	be broken (a stick etc)	twe'thu	break (s.th.)
ledya	be folded	lethya	fold (s.th.)
ba	be separate (from a joint-family)	pha	separate (s.o.)
byen	be untied	phyen	untie (s.th.)
cebu	be borken (a rope etc.)	cephu	break (s.th.)

8.3 Composite Stems

A composite stem is a single morphological unit formed through the combination of at least two bases with or without derivative endings.

Composite stems may be classified as

1. Endocentric
   a) Subordinating
   b) Coordinating
2. Exocentric

8.3.1. Subordinating Endocentric Stems

1. Noun Stems

i)(a) $Noun_1 + Noun_2$ ------- $Noun_3$

where N_3 means N_2 of N_1

pasi-ma	pear tree	jaki-cũ'	rice flour
pear-tree		rice-flour	
mye'-la	buffalo's meat	sija'-gha'	water jar made of copper
buffalo-meat		copper-water-jar	
lũ-curi	bangle made of gold	mari-pwa'	a package of sweets
gold-bangle		sweets-package	
tuti-pacĩ'	toe	sa-duri	cow's milk
leg-finger		cow-milk	
mã'-bhae'	mother tongue	kha-ga'	a house for chicken
mother-tongue		chicken-house for animals	

duru-paĩ	milk cream	milk-cream
ñhi-puĩ	dry nasal mucus	wet nasal mucus - dry mucus
jya-khū	one who malingers	work-thief
jyapu-bajā'	musical instrument of farmers	farmer-musical instrument
tū'-la'	water of the well	well-water
duru-pukhu	pond of milk	milk-pond
lū-hiti	tap of gold	gold-tap
puli-kwē'	knee-bone	knee-bone
dye'-ge' -dyege'	temple, stupa etc.	god-shelter
kha-khyē'	hen's egg	chicken-egg
su-pau	straw-roof	straw-roof
phasi-kyē	pumpkin-curry	pumpkin-curry
nhae'pā'-puĩ	ear-wax	ear
khusi-sithe	edge of the river	river-edge
ñewa'-mye	Newari song	Newari-song
timila-ja'	moon-light	moon-light
ela'-sisi	bottle for keeping liquor	liquor-bottle
hanuman-dhoka(B)	gate of Hanuman	Hanuman-gate
khū-lē	secret way/path	thief-way/path
la'-wē'	water-maniac	water-mad person
nhae'-pwa'	nostril	nose-hole
caṅgu-narayan	Lord Narayan of Changu	a place name - Lord Narayan
pyakhā-mwa'	a party/group of actors/dancers	drama/dance-party/group
bekhū-pa	feather of the pigeon	pigeon-feather

cekhũ-pwa' sparrow-hole	hole where sparrows live	sasa'-mã' in-law mother relation	mother-in-law (of groom)
gaũ-pancayat village - a political institution	Village-Panchayat	lakhe'-pyakhẽ' name of a - dance deity	Lakhe-dance
n[illegible]e'-twa' butcher-locality	locality of butchers	sisi-pusa bottle-lead	lead of the bottle
kauli-tarkari cauliflower-vegetable curry	curry of cauli-flower	wasa'-pasa' medicine/drug-shop	medical/drug-shop
hisab-kitab mathematics-book	mathematics-book	paũ-kwa' marmalade-dish	a liquid sour dish of marmalade or things alike

(b) $Noun_1 + Noun_2$ ------- $Noun_3$

where N_3 means N_2 which is N_1

ma-mye' mother-buffalo	she buffalo

(c) $Noun_1 + Noun_2$ ------- $Noun_3$

where N_3 means N_2 like N_1 or N_2 having the quality of N_1

kusa-laptye umbrella-dryleaf	a kind of leaf especially used for making an umbrella-like thing	gwe'-swã' nut-flower	a flower which has a round shape like that of a nut
kisi-tuti elephant-leg	a leg afflicted with beriberi	hi-gwe' blood-nut	a nut which is reddish in colour and tastes like blood

(d) $Noun_1$ + $Noun_2$ ------- $Noun_3$

where N_3 means a variety/kind of N_2 the variety/kind being specified by N_1

cikē'-apa oil-brick	a variety of brick with smooth surface	nalu-la lean meat - meat	lean meat
dheu-bhyaga' curd- a clay-container	a clay container for keeping curd	yak-curas yak-cigarette	cigarette of 'yak' brand
kusi-gha' flea-wound	a wound caused ~~caused~~ due to flea-bite, i.e. a negligible wound	cikē-thala oil-container	a container for keeping edible oil
palu-la ginger-meat	meat dish prepared with some ginger	hasa-pasa' winnowing fan-shop	shop on the footpath, the things to be sold are displayed on a winnowing fan or things alike
ba-manu' forest/jungle-man	chipangee etc.	sasi-wa louse-egg-rain	drizzle
ghar-jwaī house-son-in-law	son-in-law who lives in his in-laws' house	meṅgal-bar Mars-day	Tuesday
candra-grahan moon-eclipse	lunar eclipse		

ii) Adjective + Noun ------- Noun

tagwa'-ka'gu big round object-pea	pea	dathu-palī' middle-finger	middle finger

kaci-la raw meat
raw-meat

suku-la dried meat
dry-meat

jawa-lha' right hand
right-hand

ciri-mā' step-mother
little-mother

kaci-apa unprocessed birck
raw-brick

iii) Verbal Adjective + Noun ------- Noun

haku-musya soyabean which is black
black-soyabean

na-wa molar
→ na'wa
eating-tooth

nawa-ghã' a grass that stinks
→nawa'-ghã'
stinking-grass

puk-la fried meat
→ puka-la
fried-meat

sul-kasa game of hide and seek
→ sula-kasa
hiding-game

hyaũ-maca a newly born babe
red-baby

ciku-jwar malaria
cold-fever

bhui-sã grey hair
grey-hair

cakala-sima round tree
→ cakala'-sima
round/circle-tree

iv) Phonesthetic Base + Noun ------- Noun

muru muru - kwẽ' a kind of easily chewable bone
a phonestheme -bone

phir phire-jhya a latticed window
a phonestheme -window

Unique morph + Noun ------- Noun

tika-jhya	a window with small holes	setpeli-kwẽ'	spinal cord
window		bone	
bapi-kwẽ'	rib		
bone			

8.3.2. Coordinating Endocentric Stems

1. Copulative

1) Noun + Noun ------- Noun

Note Some of these have a cumulative sense.

kela'-bha'ta	couple	kae'-mhyae'	son and daughter
wife-husband		son-daughter	
daju-kija	brothers	tata-kyẽ'	sisters
elder-brother -younger br		elder sister -younger si	
jhara-banta	cholera(B)	ci-cikẽ'	salt and oil
diarrhoea-vomit		salt-oil	
chyẽ-bũ	house and farm	ji'-mele'	spices
house-farm		cuminseed-pepper	
wa-phe'	storm	mulu-suka	needle and thread
rain-wind		needle-thread	
mwetar-saikal	an engine driven four wheeler & a bicycle	maya-daya	love and kindness
an engine-driven four-wheeler - bicycle		love/affection-kindness	

dan-dharme	charity and religion	lobh-la'lac	greed(B)
charity-religion		greed-greed	
laj-seram	shame(B)	jhaṅga'-panchi	birds(B)
shame-shame		bird-bird(B)	

ii) Phonesthetic Base + Phonesthetic Base ------- Noun

swā̃'-swā̃'-phū̃'-phū̃' breathlessness

iii) Noun + Adverb ------- Adverb

suthe-nhapā' early morning
morning-early

iv) Noun + Noun ------- Adverb

ca-n̄hi day in and day out
night-day

2. <u>Alternative</u>

cha-n̄i one or two
one-two

3. <u>Contrastive</u>

i) Noun + Noun ------- Noun

la'-mi	water and fire	dukhe-sukhe	misery and happiness
water-fire		misery-happiness	
n̄hene-limne	front and back	dune-pine	inside and outside
front-back before-behind		inside-outside	
n̄hapa-lipa	before and after		
before-after			

ii) Adverb + Adverb ------- Adverb

dwā:-pyā:	in and out	athe-thathe	like that and like this
in-out		like that-like this	

4. Appositive

Noun + Noun ------- Noun

tibi-lwe:	the disease of tuberculosis	mwatar-kar	car
tuberculosis-disease		a fourwheeler-car	
gane:-dya:	Lord Ganesh	bhau-maca	daughter-in-law
Ganesh-god		daughter-in-law - child	
gēra-mye:	rhinoceros(H)	budda-bhagawan	Lord Buddha
rhinoceros-buffalo		Buddha-god	

8.3.3. Exocentric Stems

1) Noun + Noun ------- Noun

(The semantic relations are far from clear.)

cikē:-lapa	owl	lwapu-khica	a quarrelsome person
oil-butterfly		quarrel-dog	
caku-hi	sweet-potato	maca-khaca	offsprings
sweet-blood		child-chick	
lū-jhaṅga:	a person who yields a lot of profit	nuga:-syē	heart(concrete)
gold-bird		heart(abstract)-liver	

hamwã'-pã'	one who presents himself without any invitation	bhuti-maka'	ape
a kind of oil seed -invitee		a kind of bean-monkey	
khica-bhugĩ'	king-fly	duru-pwa'	breast
dog-fly		milk-package	
jewe-lha	principal assistant	hisab-kitab	account
right-hand		sum-notebook	
mwetar-saikal	motor-bike	phasi-kyeba	a place name
a fourwheeler-bicycle		pumpkin-garden	
hanuman-dhwaka	a place name	lũ-hiti	a place name
Hanuman-gate		gold-tap	
maru-twa'	the locality known as Maru		
a place name-locality			

ii) Phonesthetic Base + Noun ------- Noun

phuti phuti-gẽra — fire-fly

-rhinoceros

dhyac-na' — wet mud (accumulated on roads due to rain)

-sewage

iii) Adjective + Noun ------- Noun

tapa'-khwa' — a person not seen for a long time

far-face

katila'-paka' — a person who pretends to be a slipshod when he is in difficulty but who is in fact very clever

profitable-slipshod

iv) Noun + Verb ------- Noun

makhā'-tye' — a person dominated by his wife or a person who is shorter than his wife

by hen-pressed

v) Verb + Verb ------- Noun

thi'-me-tye' ---- thimtye' — menstruation

touch-not-allowed by religion/society

vi) Verb + Noun ------- Noun

cha-ki' — caterpillar

-insect

cha = to get allergic due to contact with the hair of a caterpillar

chya-kē' — chips and ribbons of wood,

pound-thorn

8.4. Reduplicated Stems

The reduplicated stems are compounds of a base (which may be phonesthetic or non-phonesthetic) plus its duplication which may be modified or unmodified. The modification may be vocalic or (in case of a few borrowed items) consonantal, with or without a particle or an empty morph insertion.

8.4.1. Non-phonesthetic Reduplicated Stems

1. Unmodified Reduplication

chu	what	chu-chu	what(Pl)
su	who	su-su	who(Pl)
thuli	this much	thuli-thuli	this much(repetative)
hyaũgu	red(one)	hyaũgu-hyaũgu	(only)red(ones)
hyaũ	red	hyaũ-hyaũ	reddish
na	eat!	na-na	eat!(emphatic)
na-nã'	eating simultaneously	na-nã'-na-nã'	having eaten for a very long time
lyu'	back side	lyu'-lyu'	closely behind
the'	self	the'-the'	among-selves
jhi'	we(inclusive)	jhi'-jhi'	among ourselves
bachi	half	bachi-bachi	half(each)
le'	in a month	le'-le'	(in) every month

2. Modified Reduplication

The most common and productive reduplication in Newari is the reduplication of a base with vocalic modification in the initial

syllable of the base. This type of reduplication occurs when the item in question is not focussed, i.e. when the specificity of that item is irrelevant. The reduplicated stem often means "the base item and things like it or things naturally associated with it." Or the reduplication may be only a matter of stylistic or habitual expression in which case the reduplicated stem has the same meaning as that of the base item.

The meaning of the reduplicated stem will be given only when it differs considerably from that of the base item. Otherwise it is to be interpreted as mentioned above.

The vocalic modification takes place according to the following rules: (Examples follow each rule.)

Rule 1 (~) (y) V^H ------- a

ita'	wick	ita'-ata'	mi	fire	mi-ma
tisa	ornament	tisa-tasa	sĩ	wood	sĩ-sa
ũn	wool	ũn-an	khũ	thief	khũ-kha
tu	sugar-cane	tu-ta	duru	milk	duru-daru
byu	Give!	byu-ba	myu	Sell!	myu-ma

Rule 1.1. [i' / ui] ------- ae'

ji'	cumin	ji'-jae'	sui	stitching	sui-sae'

Rule 1.1.1. [ĩ' / uĩ] ------- ǣ'

ĩ'ca	sickle	ĩca-ǣ'ca	cĩ'	mark	cĩ'-cǣ'
kuĩ	kitchen-knife	kuĩ-kǣ'	phuĩ	arrogance	phuĩ-phǣ'

Rule 1.2. (y)u' ------- a'

ku'	spade	ku'-ka'	byu'	give(Hab)	byu'-ba'

Rule 1.2.1. (y)ũ' ------- ã'

cũ'	powder	cũ'-cã'	khyũ'	dark	khyũ-khã'

Rule 2.

$$([w / y]) V^{Non-H} \text{ -------- } i$$ (~)

Note If V^{Non-H} is followed by /i/ or /u/ the latter remains intact in the resultant form.

ela'	liquor	ela'-ila'	mye	tongue, song	mye-mi
kyẽ	curry, pulse	kyẽ-ki	khẽ	talk	khẽ-khi
cwe	urine	cwe-ci	thwẽ	beer	thwẽ-thi
kyebe	garden	kyeba-kiba	pasa'	shop, shopping	pasa'-pisa'
leĩ	raddish	leĩ-lĩ'	dheu	curd	dheu-dhiu
kẽca	black-soil	kẽca-kica	apa	brick	apa-ipa
ja	cooked-rice	ja-ji	jya	work	jya-ji

sau	merchant, master	sau-siu	paũ	socer (thing)	paũ-piũ
lwapu	quarrel(N)	lwapu-lipu	pyaj	onion(B)	pyaj-pij

<u>Rule 2.1.</u> $\left(\begin{bmatrix} w \\ y \end{bmatrix}\right) V{:}^{\text{Non-H}} \text{------} \; i{:}$

che:	grand-son	che:-chi:	mye:	buffalo	mye:-mi:
bhwe:	feast	bhwe:-bhi:	lə:	water	lə:-li:
ghye:	ghee	ghye:-ghi:	kwe:	crow	kwe:-ki:
kæ:	son	kæ:-ki:	mhyæ:	daughter	mhyæ:-mhi:
gwæ:	moustache	gwæ:-gi:	ta:	lock	ta:-ti:
jhya:	window	jhya:-jhi:	khwa:	face	khwa:-khi:

<u>Rule 2.2.</u> $\left(\begin{bmatrix} w \\ y \end{bmatrix}\right) \tilde{V}{:}^{\text{Non-H}} \text{------} \; \tilde{i}{:}$

sẽ:	Tibetan	sẽ:-sĩ:	khyẽ:	egg	khyẽ:-khĩ:
kwẽ:	bone	kwẽ:-kĩ:	kə̃:	thorn	kə̃:-kĩ:
pyẽ:	hip	pyẽ:-pĩ:	lwẽ:	stone	lwẽ:-lĩ:
æ̃:pa	tile	æ̃:pa-ĩ:pa	ghæ̃:	grass	ghæ̃:-ghĩ:
khwæ̃:	deaf man	khwæ̃-khĩ:	dã:	money	dã:-dĩ:
pyã:	out	pyã:-pĩ:	swã:	flower	swã:-sĩ:

<u>Exceptions</u> $\left(\begin{bmatrix} w \\ y \end{bmatrix}\right) e \text{------} \; a$

When the following syllable ends in /i/, e.g.

mesi	ink	mesi-masi	phəsi	pumpkin	phesi-phasi
khwebi	tear	khwebi-khabi	chyeli	ground-floor	chyeli-chali

Another common and productive type of reduplication is the reduplication with a particle or an empty morph insertion the latter of which is borrowed from Nepali, e.g.

kæʔ	son	kæʔ-ya-kæʔ	sons (exclusively)
mhyæʔ	daughter	mhyæʔ-ya-mhyæʔ	daughters (exclusively)
khũ	thief	khũ-ya-khũ	thieves (without exception)
ne	eat	ne-re-ne	eat! (emphatic)
ya	do	ya-re-ya	do! (emphatic)
da	beat	da-re-da	beat! (emphatic)
ne	eat	neʔ-phekkwe-ne	eat as much as you can eat
		neʔ-sa-ne	eat if you are going to eat
ya	do	yæʔ-phakkwe-ya	do as much as you can do
		yæʔ-sa-ya	do if you are going to do
da	beat	dæʔ-phakkwa-da	beat as much as you can beat
		dæʔ-sa-da	beat if you are going to beat
bhag	run away(B)	bhag-a-bhag(N)	running away
tan	pull(B)	tan-a-tan(N)	pulling
mar	kill(B)	mar-a-mar(N)	fighting fiercely

There are some temporal nouns which, when reduplicated, yield adverbs of time, e.g.

ñhi	day	ñhi-ñhĩʔ	daily
ca	night	cãʔ-cãʔ	exclusively during nights
la	month	lãʔ-lãʔ	for several months

8.4.2. Phonesthetic Reduplicated Stems

Phonesthetic bases are reduplicated to derive most of the adverbs of manner, e.g.

hwæ̃:-hwæ̃:	bitterly (crying, weeping)
bhwe:-bhwe:	hard (gazing)
bhwə:-bhwə:	intensely, profusedly (bleeding)
phət-a-phət	quickly (walking)
sər-a-sər	without diversion (walking)
dhəm-a-dhəm	acting continuously without break
chyas-myas	all mixed up
jwal-jwal	shining, sparkling (of things)
jhəl-mallə	brilliance (of lightning)
əl-məl	confusion
gər-bər	disorder
chət-pət	panting
phũ:-phũ:	breathing with difficulty (due to asthma for instance)
miri-miri	soft creaking noise (e.g. when one walks on the wooden floor above)
cwĩ:-cwĩ:	noise of shoes while walking, noise of a mouse
cyæ̃:-cyæ̃:	crying of a baby

8.5. A Note on Numerals

From the point of view of their structure Newari (cardinal) numerals can be simple or complex. Complex numerals are either derived or composite.

1. Simple Numerals

Newari has the following simple numerals.

{ 1 } /chi/ / { 100 } —, e.g. /sə-chi/ one hundred
/chə/ elsewhere, e.g. /chə/ one /jhin-chə/ eleven

{ 2 } /ñi/ { 3 } /swə/ { 4 } /pyə/ { 5 } /ña/
{ 6 } /khu/ { 7 } /nhe/ { 8 } /cya/ { 9 } /gu/

{ 10 } /jhin/ / — { 1 } to { 9 }, e.g.

/jhin-chə/	eleven
/jhin-ñi/	twelve
/jhin-cya/	eighteen
/jhin-gu/	nineteen

/jhi/ elsewhere, e.g. /jhi/ ten

{ 100 } /sə/ / — { 1 }, e.g. /sə-chi/ one hundred
/sə'/ elsewhere, e.g. /ñi-sə'/ two hundred
/swə-sə'/ three hundred

{ 1000 } /dwə'/

2. Derived Numerals

The decades are derived from their corresponding simple numerals, i.e. the numerals 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80 and 90 are derived from 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 respectively by adding the suffix /-i/.

The following sandhi takes place:

1. $\begin{bmatrix} \text{i} \\ \text{we} \end{bmatrix} + \text{i}$ ------- i'

2. $\begin{bmatrix} \text{e} \\ \text{(y)e} \end{bmatrix} + \text{i}$ ------- e'

3. we + i ------- ui

n̄i	two	n̄i'	twenty
swe	three	sui	thirty
pye	four	pi'	forty
n̄a	five	n̄e'	fifty
khu	six	khui	sixty
nh nhe	seven	nhe'	seventy
cya	eight	ce'	eighty
gu	nine	gui	ninety

3. Composite Numerals

All the composite numerals are of coordinating endocentric type.

Examples

jhin-che	10 + 1 = 11	n̄i'-gu	20 + 9 = 29
khui-pye	60 + 4 = 64	swe-se'	3 x 100 = 300

pye-dwe' we swe-se' we n̄a   4 x 1000 + 3 x 100 + 5 = 4,305

khui-pye-dwe' we swe-se' we n̄a (60 + 4) x 1000 + 3 x 100 + 5 = 64,305

Note Nepali numerals are also frequently used especially when the numbers equal to or greater than 1,00,000 are involved. However, the two numeral systems (Nepali and Newari) are never mixed up.

8.6. A Note on Causativization

We have so far noticed that formally causativization in Newari, as in Nepali, can be brought about through two different morphological processes:

1. through suffixation (cf. 8.2.2.3.(ii))

2. through modification or internal change (cf. 8.2.3.2.)

Semantically causativizations are of two types:

Type 1 to be/become s.th. + Causativization ----- to do that th.

ca	be open	cae'k	open
kwa	be hot	kwak	heat
pya	be wet	pyak	make wet
gen	be dry	geṅk	dry
gu	be torn	khu	tear
gya	be frightened	khya	frighten
sen	move	seṅk	move (s.th.)

Type 2 to do s.th. + Causativization ----- to make s.o. do that th.

dyen	sleep	thyen	make s.o. sleep
n̈hil	laugh	n̈hi'k	make s.o. laugh
khwa	weep	khwe'k	make s.o. weep
khu	steal	khuik	make s.o. steal
ya	do	yak	make s.o. do
ma	search	mae'k	make s.o. search
ne	eat	nek	make s.o. eat

All the verbs at the left side of Type 1 are intransitive whereas in Type 2 some of them (first three) are intransitive and some (last four) are transitive.

Causativization, syntactically speaking, converts intransitive verbs into transitive ones and transitive verbs into ditransitive ones, e.g.

Intransitive Verb + Causativization ------- Transitive Verb

/məca khwelə/	/wə̄: meca(yatə) khwe:kələ/
The child cried.	He made the child cry.
/khapa calə/	/wə̄: khapa cə:kələ/
The door opened.	He opened the door.

Transitive Verb + Causativization ------- Ditransitive Verb

/wə̄: ja nələ/	/wə̄: jitə: ja nəkələ/
He ate rice.	He fed me rice.
/wə̄: jya yatə/	/wə̄: jitə: jya yakələ/
He did work.	He made me do work.
(He worked.)	(He made me work.)

CHAPTER NINE

NEWARI INFLECTION

Stems other than particles enter into inflectional constructions.

9.1. Nominal Inflection

Nominal stems that are nouns or pronouns inflect for Number (Singular and Plural) and Case (Nominative, Genitive, Comitative, Objective, Ablative-Ergative and Locative). Singular Number and Nominative Case are not overtly marked.

Adjective and Proadjective stems inflect for Number and Classifier stems inflect for Case only under various constraints. (For details see 9.1.3.)

Nominal stems are first followed by Number Inflection and then by Case Inflection.

Nouns are always in the Third Person, and so are Pronouns with the exception of First and Second Person Pronouns and Relative Pronouns agreeing with these.

Gender is not an inflectional category in Newari(except for a few borrowed Adjective stems).

9.1.1. Noun Inflection

1. Number

Nouns make a two-fold distinction of Number: Singular and Plural. Singular is unmarked. Plural is marked by / $\emptyset$ /, /pini/,

/pin/, /pî:/, /te:/ or /te/. Their occurrence is conditioned by (i) the type of noun with which they occur, and (ii) the type of case-ending that follows them. The following diagram shows their distributional pattern:

	with Kinship nouns	with Non-kinship nouns
before Locative-ending	Ø	
before Genitive-ending	pini	te:
before other Case-endings	pin	te:
when no case-ending follows, i.e. when the noun is in Nominative form.	pî:	te

<u>Note</u> /pin/ ------- /piṅ/ /- Velar Stop

<u>Examples</u>

	teta "elder sister"	khica "dog"
<u>Plurals</u>		
Genitive	teta-pini-Ø	khica-te:-Ø
Comitative	teta-piṅ-ke	khica-te:-ke
Objective	teta-pin-te	khica-te:-te
Ablative-Ergative	teta-pin-sē:	khica-te:-sē:
Nominative	teta-pî:	khica-te

The Number distinction is neutralized before the Locative-ending the noun stem being realized always in its unmarked (i.e. Singular) form,

e.g.

([we / ipî']r) dyes-e'   in [(that) country / (those) countries]r

From the point of view of number inflection nouns can be divided into following groups:

(i) Non-pluralizable Nouns

These nouns are inherently singular in sense and therefore can never be used in plural sense. Proper nouns, abstract nouns and mass nouns fall under thisgroup, e.g.

kamala	a female name	tā'	anger
jaki	(uncooked) rice	la'	water

The plural marker can be added to some of these nouns but the resultant forms mean not the plural of the noun in question but something like.'that noun and things alike or things naturally associated with it' or 'different varieties of the noun' e.g.

kamala-pî'	Kamala and others usually associated with her
jaki-ta	different varieties of rice

(ii) Plural Nouns

These nouns are inherently plural in sense but they take the plural marker only optionally. This group comprises coordinate copulative compound nouns, e.g.

mā'-abu (-pî')	parents	daju-kija (-pî')	brothers

iii) Pluralizable Nouns

These nouns have singular and plural forms. They take the plural marker as shown in the diagram above, e.g.

tata	elder sister	tata-pĩ:	elder sisters
pasa	friend	pasa-pĩ:	friends
khica	dog	khica-tə	dogs
tepuli	cap	tepuli-tə	caps

The plural marker can be optionally dropped when these nouns are qualified by quantitative adjectives/proadjectives, e.g.

ñimə tata(-pĩ:)   two elder sisters

yekkwə khica(-tə)   many dogs

2. Case

There are six cases in Newari. They are:

Nominative

Genitive

Comitative

Objective

Ablative-Ergative

Locative

Of these Nominative is unmarked, other cases are manifested through overt endings.

Non-animate nouns do not occur in Comitative case form and animate nouns normally do not occur in Locative case form.

Note

1. Comitative and Objective case endings can be regarded as being affixed to the Genitive form (not the Nominative form). But such a treatment is avoided here for the sake of simplicity.
2. Ablative, Agentive, and Instrumental case forms are regularly identical. They are best regarded as a single "Source" case. However, the name Ablative-Ergative is proposed. (For further details see 'Form-Function correlation for Cases' below.)
3. Comitative indicates possession without necessarily implying ownership.

Case Realizations

Nominative Case

Unmarked, e.g. ram dyena "Ram slept."

Genitive, Comitative and Objective Cases

Genitive, Comitative and Objective cases have a pair of markers each. Their occurrence is conditioned by the Number of the NP to which the marker is affixed as shown below:

	Singular	Plural
Genitive	ya	ø
Comitative	yake	ke
Objective	yate	te

Genitive form takes the classifier /gu/ when the object possessed is a non-animate noun, the classifier /ma/ optionally when the object possessed is a non-kinship animate noun and no classifier when the object possessed is a kinship animate noun.

Examples

Genitive

[jimi pasa-ya / jimi pasapini-Ø]	ka:-pi:	[my friend's / my friends']	sons
[jimi pasa-ya / jimi pasapini-Ø]	(-ma) khica(-te)	[my friend's / my friends']	dog(s)
[jimi pasa-ya / jimi pasapini-Ø]	gu chyẽ(-te)	[my friend's / my friends']	house(s)

Comitative

[jimi pasa-yake / jimi pasapiṅ-ke]	dhyeba du	[My friend has / My friends have]	money.

Objective

wẽ: [jimi pasa-yate / jimi pasapin-te]	dale	He beat [my friend / my friends].	

Note When a noun in Genitive form functions as a Patient in a sentence it takes no classifier at all,

e.g.

jimi pasa-ya	[nime kæ:]	du	My friend has	[two sons].
	[nime khica]			[two dogs]
	[nikha chye]			[two houses]

Ablative-Ergative Case (from, by, by means of)

Ablative-Ergative case has several realizations the occurrence of which is conditioned by several factors. Some of the realizations are phonologically conditioned, some others are morphologically conditioned. The three main conditioning factors are as follows:

1. the Number of the stem to which the case marker is affixed,
2. the Gender of the stem (animate or non-animate), and
3. the Syllable Structure of the stem (open or closed, and if open whether ending in a short vowel or a long vowel, in a nasalized vowel or a non-nasalized vowel, monosyllabic or polysyllabic etc.).

The Ablative-Ergative case realizations are listed below against their conditioning factors.

Note 1. C stands for the final consonant of a closed syllable. V stands for the final vowel of an open syllable.

2. Examples follow each rule which mentions the preceding environment and the realization of that along with the realization of the case.

1. /plural/ + /sə̃:/

pasa-pĩ: friends pasa-pin-sə̃: khica-tə dogs khica-tə:-sə̃:

2. /VV/ + /nə̃:/ ------- /VV-nə̃:/

If /V/ is nasalized the nasalization is maintained in the Ablative-Ergative form as well.

sau	merchant	sau-nə̃:	kei	pimple	kei-nə̃:
paũ	marmalade	paũ-nə̃:	sipaĩ	soldier	sipaĩ-nə̃:

3. /C/ + /nə̃:/ ------- /C-ə̃:/

iskul	school	iskul-ə̃:	myec	chair	myec-ə̃:
pyaj	onion	pyaj-ə̃:	mən	mind	mən-ə̃:

4. /(̃)V/ +/nə̃:/ ------- /Ṽ:/

kathi	stick	kathĩ:	bəre	goldsmith	bərẽ:
mulu	needle	mulũ:	sələ	horse	sələ̃:
pasa	friend	pasã:	khũ	thief	khũ:
sə̃	hair	sə̃:	chyẽ	house	chyẽ:

5. /V^F:/ + /nə̃:/ ------- /V^F:-nə̃:/

If /V^F:/ is nasalized the nasalization remains intact in the Ablative-Ergative form as well.

li:	lead	li:-nə̃:	phwəgĩ:	beggar	phwəgĩ:-nə̃:
che:	grandson	che:-nə̃:	khyẽ:	egg	khyẽ:-nə̃:
kæ:	son	kæ:-nə̃:	dhupæ̃:	incense	dhupæ̃:-nə̃:

6. /u:/ + /nə̃:/ ------- /u-lə̃:/ /monosyllable
/(u)-lĩ:/ /polysyllable

ju:	gambling	ju-lə̃:	pukhu:	pond, lake	pukh(u)-lĩ:
dhu:	dust	dhu-lə̃:	bhutu:	kitchen, oven	bhut(u)-lĩ:

7. /ũ:/ + /nə̃:/ ------- /ũ:-nə̃:/

kũ:	corner	kũ:-nə̃:	bekhũ:	pigeon	bekhũ:-nə̃:
pũ:	painter	pũ:-nə̃:	menũ:	man	menũ:-nə̃:

8. /e:/ + /nə̃:/ -------- /e:-nə̃:/ /animate
/e-lə̃:/ /non-animate, monosyllable
/(e)-lə̃:/ /non-animate, polysyllable

cye:	servant	cye:-nə̃:	naye:	foreman, chieftan	naye:-nə̃:
ghye:	ghee	ghye-lə̃:	nuge:	heart	nug(e)-lə̃:
pese:	shop	pes(e)-lə̃:	wase:	medicine	was(e)-lə̃:

9. /ẽ:/ + /nə̃:/ ------- /ẽ:-nə̃:/ /animate
/e-nə̃:/ /non-animate, monosyllable
/(e)-nə̃:/ /non-animate, polysyllable

dwẽ:	bull	dwẽ:-nə̃:	mijẽ:	man	mijẽ:-nə̃:
chyẽ:	head	chye-nə̃:	cikẽ:	oil	cik(e)-nə̃:
n̄hipẽ:	tail	n̄hip(e)-nə̃:	nhae:pẽ:	ear	nhae:p(e)-nə̃:

10. /a:/ + /nə̃:/ ------- /a:-nə̃:/ /animate
/a-lə̃:/ /non-animate

kela:	wife	kela:-nə̃:	ba:	father	ba:-nə̃:
kepa:	forehead	kepa-lə̃:	khwa:	face	khwa-lə̃:
jhya:	window	jhya-lə̃:	pwa:	hole	pwa-lə̃:

11. /ā:/ + /nə̄:/ ------- /ā:-nə̄:/

mā:	mother	mā:-nə̄:	kā:	blind person	kā:-nə̄:
swā:	flower	swā:-nə̄:	bərā:	peanut	bərā:-nə̄:

<u>Exceptions</u>

5. ki:	insect	ki-lə̄:	jəni:	waist-cloth	jəni-khə̄:
dhəlī:	rafter	dhəli-mə̄:	phə:	air, wind	phə-sə̄:
thə:	place	tha-sə̄:	nhə:	nose	nha-sə̄:
6. ku:	spade	ku:-nə̄:	dhuku:	store	dhuk(u)-tī:
sənu:	huge wooden box	sən(u)-khə̄:			
8. kapə:	cloth	kap(ə)-tə̄:	khə:	charriot	kha-tə̄:
khipə:	rope	khip(ə)-tə̄:	gə:pə:	neck	gə:p(ə)-tə̄:
dhəwə:	ladle	dhəwə-tə̄:	sərgə:	sky	sərgə-tə̄:
hwə:	hole	hwə-tə̄:	kwə:	crow	kwə-khə̄:
silə:	quilt	sil(ə)-khə̄:			
9. ə̄:	mango	ə̄:-nə̄:	gə̄:	gong	gə̄:-nə̄:
kə̄:	thorn	kə-thə̄:	pə̄:	bamboo	pə-thə̄:
10. itə:	wick	itə:-nə̄:	elə:	liquor	ələ-khə̄:
twə:	beak	twə-thə̄:	pwə:	stomach	pwə-thə̄:
lhə:	hand	lhə-tə̄:			
11. gā:	village	gə-mə̄:	thā:	pillar	thə-mə̄:
dā:	money	də-mə̄:	nā:	name	nə-mə̄:

<u>Note</u> /V̄ː/ ------- /V/ /- non-<u>nə̄ː</u>, i.e. the closing long vowel of the base loses its length (and nasalization, if any) when followed by the Ablative-Ergative marker other than /nə̄ː/.

<u>Locative Case</u> (in, on, at, into etc.)

Locative case, like Ablative-Ergative case, has several realizations some of which are lexically conditioned and some phonologically conditioned. Lexically conditioned realizations are treated here as exceptional cases. The phonologically conditioning factor, i.e. the syllable structure of the stem, is dealt with in detail.

The Locative case realizations are listed below against their conditioning factors followed by examples.

1. /VV/ + /leː/ ------- /VV-leː/

If /V/ is nasalized the nasalization remains intact in the Locative form as well.

kei	pimple	kei-leː	paũ	marmalade	paũ-leː

2. /C/ + /leː/ ------- /C-eː/

iskul	school	iskul-eː	myec	chair	myec-eː
pyaj	onion	pyaj-eː	men	mind	men-eː

3. /i/ + Loc ------- /iː/ /u/ + Loc ------- /ui/
/e/ + Loc ------- /eː/ /ə/ + Loc ------- /eː/
/a/ + Loc ------- /æː/

If /V/ is nasalized the nasalization remains intact in the Locative form as well. (/ũ/ + Loc is realized as /uĩ/)

tuti	leg	tuti:	sĩ	wood	sĩ:
mhutu	mouth	mhutui	bũ	farm	buĩ
swane	ladder	swane:	chyẽ	house	chyẽ:
kyəbe	garden	kyəbe:	bə̃	floor	bẽ:
mhica	pocket	mhicæ:			

4. /V^F:/ + /le:/ ------- /V^F:-le:/

If /V^F:/ is nasalized the nasalization remains intact in the Locative form as well.

i:	sputum	i:-le:	cĩ:	mark	cĩ:-le:
gwe:	nut	gwe:-le:	khyẽ:	egg	khyẽ:-le:
gwæ:	moustache	gwæ:-le:	ghæ̃:	grass	ghæ̃:-le:

5. /u:/ + /le:/ ------- /u:-le:/ / monosyllable
/(u)-li:/ / polysyllable

ku:	spade	ku:-le:	pukhu:	pond, lake	pukh(u)-li:
dhu:	dust	dhu:-le:	bhutu:	kitchen, oven	bhut(u)-li:

6. /lũ:/ + /le:/ ------- /ũ:-le:/

dhũ:	incense	dhũ:-le:	jakicũ:	rice-flour	jakicũ:-le:

7. /ə:/ + /le:/ ------- /ə-le:/ /monosyllable
/(ə)-le:/ /polysyllable

ghyə:	ghee	ghyə-le:	ghə:	pitcher	ghə-le:
pəsə:	shop	pəs(ə)-le:	nugə:	heart	nug(ə)-le:

8. /ə̃:/ + /le:/ ------- /ə-ne:/ /monosyllable

/(ə)-ne:/ /polysyllable

chyə̃:	head	chyə-ne:	pyə̃:	hip	pyə-ne:
cikə̃:	oil	cik(ə)-ne:	nhæ:pə̃:	ear	nhæ:p(ə)-ne:

9. /a:/ + /le:/ ------- /a-le:/

khwa:	face	khwa-le:	jhya:	window	jhya-le:
pwa:	hole	pwa-le:	kepa:	forehead	kepa-le:

10. /ã:/ + /le:/ ------- /ã:-le:/

swã:	flower	swã:-le:	bərã:	peanut	bərã:-le:

<u>Exceptions</u>

4. jəni:	waistcloth	jəni-khe:	dhəlī:	rafter	dhəli-me:
nəkī:	nail,peg	nəki-me:	pəcī:	finger	pəci-me:
phe:	air,wind	phə-se:	thæ:	place	thə-se:
nhæ:	nose	nhə-se:			
5.dhuku:	store	dhuk(u)-ti:	sənu:	huge wooden-box	sən(u)-khe:
6.kũ:	corner	ku-ne:			
7.kapə:	cloth	kap(ə)-te:	khe:	charriot	khə-te:
khipə:	rope	khip(ə)-te:	gə:pə:	neck	gəp(ə)-te:
dhəwə:	ladle	dhəwə-te:	sərgə:	sky	sərgə-te:
hwə:	hole	hwə-te:	silə:	quilt	sil(ə)-khe:

8.	ã:	mango	ã:-le:	gã:	gong	gã:-le:
	chwã:	bamboo-shoot	chwã:-le:	bhwã:	paper	bhwã-te:
	kã:	thorn	kã-the:	pã:	bamboo	pã-the:
9.	ela:	liquor	ela-khe:	lha:	hand	lha-te:
	twa:	beak	twa-the:	pwa:	stomach	pwa-the:
10.	gã:	village	ga-me:	thã:	pillar	tha-me:
	nã:	name	na-me:			

Newari has a group of irregularly inflected nouns -- all broadly refering to locations or time-points of various kinds. To illustrate some of them in comparison with regular nouns :

Stem		Nom	Gen	Obj	Abl-Erg	Loc
Regular nouns						
swane	'ladder'	swane	swane-ya	swane-yata	swanẽ:	swane:
cwa	'urine'	cwa	cwa-ya	cwa-yata	cwã:	cwe:
pasa:	'shop'	pasa:	pasa:-ya	pasa:-yata	pas(a)-lã:	pas(a)-le:
ñhi	'pus'	ñhi	ñhi-ya	ñhi-yata	ñhĩ:	ñhi:
ca	'soil,clay'	ca	ca-ya	ca-yata	cã:	cae:
gwe:	'nut'	gwa:	gwe:-ya	gwe:-yata	gwe:-nã:	gwe:-le:

<u>Irregular nouns</u>

1 dune	'inside'	dune	dune-ya	dune-yate	dunẽ:	dune
2 cwə	'top,above'	cwe:	cwe:-ya	cwe:-yate	cwə̃:	cwe:
3 mhigə:	'yesterday'	mhigə:	mhigə:-ya	mhigə:-yate	mhigə:	mhigə:
4 ñhi	'day'	ñhine: /ñhi	ñhine:-ya	ñhine:-yate	ñhine:	ñhine:
5 ca	'night'	cane: /ca	cane:-ya	cane:-yate	cansẽ: ~cane:	cane:
6 kane:	'tomorrow'	kane:	kane:-ya	kane:-yate	kansẽ: ~kane:	kane:

Analogically with the following nouns:

1 <u>dune type</u>

pine	outside	kune	downstairs	dyə:ne	top, over
ñhə:ne	front	linne ~liũne	back	gane(ProN)	where
thene(ProN)	here	ane(ProN)	there	a:	now
lipa	after	nhapa	before	hanca	early evening
thuksi:	this year	thəgune	last year	nəgune	year before last
ale	after a while	kẽ:se	day after tomorrow	mhi:gə	day before yesterday
aitbar(khunu)	Sunday				

2 <u>cwə type</u>

kwə	bottom,below	tela	upstairs	tə:lə	underneath
sithə	end, edge	bicə	middle	suthə	morning

3 <u>mhigə: type</u>

nhacə:	some time ago	bə̃:ni:	late evening	akiwə̃:	next year
iwə̃:	year after next	thaũ	today	bhəcəlmaka:	after a while

4 ñhi 'day', 5 ca 'night' and 6 kane: 'tomorrow' are unique cases.

Note

1. The genitive form of these irregular nouns of location is more commonly replaced by a compound adjective, e.g., /dune-ya/ "of inside" is replaced by

   [dune-cwan-gu / dune-cwã:-ma] "one [which / who] is inside"

2. The stems /cwa/ 'top' and /kwa/ 'bottom' are seen in the derivative adverbs /cwa-(s)sã:/ 'just above' and /kwa-(s)sã:/ 'just below' respectively. The stem /sutha/ 'morning' is seen in the compound constructions like /sutha-kebal/ 'morning work', /sutha-nhapã:/ 'early in the morning'. Similarly the stems /ca/ 'night' and /ñhi/ 'day' are seen in constructions like /ca-chi/ 'whole night', /ñi-ca/ 'two nights', /cã:-cã:/ 'exclusively during night(s)'; /ñhi-chi/ 'whole day', /ñhi-ñhi:/ 'every day', /ñhi:-ñika:/ 'twice a day'.

3. The Abl-Erg form of all the above mentioned irregular nouns of location, when reduplicated, yields adverbs, e.g. sithã: sithã: (hũ) "(Go) exclusively along the edge line".

9.1.2. Pronoun Inflection

Pronouns, like nouns, inflect for Number and Case. Like nouns again they make a two-fold distinction of Number (Singular and Plural) and a six-fold distinction of Case (Nominative, Genitive, Comitative, Objective, Ablative-Ergative and Locative).

Locative case is restricted to third person singular personal pronoun /we/ and singular demonstrative pronouns /we/ and /thwe/ (when they represent non-animate objects) and non-human general interrogative pronoun /ċhu/.

The following morphophonemic changes are relevant to this section:

1. chen + Velar Stop ------- chen̊ - Velar Stop
   pin   pin̊

e.g. chen-gu ------- chen̊-gu   your
     chik-pin-ke ---- chik-pin̊-ke   with you (Hon)

2. CV + gu ------- CV-u

e.g. chik-pini-gu ------- chik-pini-u   your (Hon)
     ji-gu -------- ji-u   my

3. we + ya.... ----- we -i....
   thwe   thwe
   su   su

e.g. we-ya -------   we-i   his-her
     thwe-yate -------   thwe-ite   to this
     su-yake -------   su-ike   with whom

1. Personal Pronoun

1.1. Number

Personal pronouns make Singular-Plural distinction. Singular is unmarked, Plural markers are /pi:/, /pini/, /pin/,

/mi/ and /m/ the occurrence of which is conditioned by the following factors:

(i) the type of pronoun (Honorific or Non-honorific), and

(ii) the type of case ending that follows it.

The following diagram illustrates their distributional pattern:

	with Honorific pronouns	with Non-honorific pronouns
before Genitive-ending	pini	mi
before other case-endings	pin	m
when no case-ending follows, i.e. when the pronouns are in Nominative form	pĩ:	

Examples

weka:-pini-Ø	their (Hon)	i-mi-Ø	their
weka:-pin-te	to them (Hon)	i-m-te	to them
weka:-pĩ:	they (Hon)	i-pĩ:	they

Note

1. First person inclusive plural pronoun is realized as /jhi:/ throughout except in Nominative form where it optionally takes the plural marker /pĩ:/ as well, e.g.

jhi: ~ jhi:-pĩ:	we (inclusive)	jhi:	-ke	with us
jhi: (mã:)	our (mother)		-te	to
jhi:-gu (chyẽ)	our (house)		-sẽ:	by

2. The number distinction is neutralized (plural form being used throughout) with first and second person pronouns in genitive case form when the object they qualify is an animate noun, e.g.

jimi / chimi / chikpini	khica	my/our / your/your(Pl) / your(Hon)/your(Hon Pl)	dog

but,

jigu chyẽ	my house
jimigu chyẽ	our house

1.2. Case

Personal pronouns inflect for Nominative, Genitive, Comitative, Objective and Ablative-Ergative cases. In addition third person singular pronoun also inflects for Locative case when it represents a non-animate object.

Case Realizations

Nominative Case

Unmarked, e.g. /ji/ "I"

Genitive Case

/ya/	/III Sg —,	/ø/	/elsewhere, e.g.
we-ya	his	i-mi-ø	their
weke'-ya	his (Hon)	weke'-pini-ø	their (Hon)

Note Pronouns in Genitive form take the classifiers in the same manner as the nouns in that form for which refer to 9.1.1.2.

Comitative and Objective Cases

Comitative and Objective cases have three markers each. Their occurrence is conditioned as follows:

Comitative	Objective	Conditioning environment
yake	yate	/III Sg --
ke:	te:	/ I Sg --, II Hon Sg --
ke	te	/ elsewhere

Examples

we-yake	with him	we-yate	to him
[ji / chi] -ke:	with [me / you (Hon Sg)]	[ji / chi] -te:	to [me / you (Hon Sg)]
cheṅ-ke	with you (Sg)	chen-te	to you (Sg)

Ablative - Ergative Case

Personal pronouns behave like nouns as regards Ablative-Ergative case realizations:

/sẽ:/ /Pl-, / ̃: / /V-, /nẽ:/ /V:-

Examples

ji-m-sẽ:	by us	jhi:-sẽ:	by us (inclusive)
chi-m-sẽ:	by you (Pl)	chik-pin-sẽ:	by you (Hon Pl)

ji	I	jīʔ	by me	che	you	chēʔ	by you
chi	you(Hon)	chīʔ	by you(Hon)	we	he/she	wēʔ	by him/her
wekeʔ		he/she(Hon)		wekeʔ-nēʔ		by him/her(Hon)	

Exception

we	it	u-kīʔ	by it

Locative Case

Only third person singular pronoun can be inflected for Locative case if this pronoun represents a non-animate object. (The pronoun before this case marker is realized as /u/.) The Locative marker is /kiʔ/, e.g. /u-kiʔ/ "in/on it."

1.3. Stem Alternations in Personal Pronouns

Second Person Non-honorific Pronouns

/chi/	/-Pl	, e.g.	chi-pīʔ	you (Pl)
/chen/	/- [Gen]	, e.g.	chen̈-gu(chyē)	your(Sg)(house)
	[Com]		chen̈-ke	with you(Sg)
	[Obj]		chen-te	to you(Sg)
/che/	/- [Nom]	, e.g.	che	you(Sg)
	[Abl-Erg]		chēʔ	by you(Sg)

Second Person Honorific Pronouns

/chik/	/-Pl	, e.g.	chik-pīʔ	you(Hon Pl)
/chi/	/ elsewhere	, e.g.	chi	you(Hon)
			chi-teʔ	to you(Hon)

Third Person Non-honorific Pronouns

/i/	/ -Pl	, e.g.	i-pĩ'	they
/u/	/ - [Loc]	, e.g.	u-ki'	in/on it
	[Abl-Erg]		u-kĩ'	by it
/we/	/ elsewhere,	, e.g.	we	he/she/it
			we-yate	to him/her/it

Note Third Person Honorific and First Person Pronouns have no stem alternations.

2. Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns (/we/ "that" and /thwe/ "this") behave exactly as the third person non-animate personal pronoun (/we/ "it") as regards inflection and stem alternation.

3. Interrogative Pronouns

General interrogative pronouns inflect like the third person non-honorific personal pronouns except that

i) the human interrogative pronoun takes a different Ablative-Ergative ending, e.g.

su who su-nā' by whom

(but, chu what chu-k̃i' by what chu-ki' in/on what)

ii) the plural is realized by reduplicating the singular including case endings, e.g.

Singular	Plural	
su	su su	who
su-nā'	su-nā' su-nā'	by whom
su-yate	su-yate su-yate	to whom

4. Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive pronouns, like the honorific personal pronouns, take the plural markers /pini/, /pin/ and /pĩ:/. In addition the stem is optionally reduplicated in plural, e.g.

the:(the:)-pĩ: -selves the:(the:)-pin-sã: by -selves

Reflexive pronouns take the case endings as follows:

	Nom	Gen	Com	Obj	Abl-Erg
Singular	unmarked	e	yake	yate	mẽ: ~ me:yã:
Plural	unmarked	e	ke	te	sã:

5. Indefinite Pronouns

Indefinite pronouns make no number distinction. Various case forms of the human indefinite pronoun /sũ:/ "someone" are as follows:

Nom	Gen	Com	Obj	Abl-Erg
sũ:	su-yã:	su-yakẽ:	su-yatã:	su-nanẽ:

The non-human indefinite pronoun /chũ:/ "something" can occur in the nominative form only.

It is to be noted that the length and nasalization of the base form are transferred to the final vowel of the case endings.

In fact the 'ergativization' of the interrogative pronominal case forms gives their corresponding indefinite pronominal case forms.

The following chart illustrates the entire pronominal inflection in a nutshell:

		Nom	Gen		Com	Obj	Abl-Erg	Loc
			Anim	Non-anim				
Personal	I Sg.	ji	ji-mi	ji-gu	ji-ke:	ji-te:	jī:	
	Pl Excl	ji-pī:	ji-mi	ji-mi-gu	ji-m-ke	ji-m-te	ji-m-sẽ:	
	Incl	jhi:(-pī:)	jhi:	jhi:-gu	jhi:-ke	jhi:-te	jhi:-sẽ:	
	II Sg Non-hon	che	chi-mi	chen-gu	chen-ke	chen-te	chẽ:	
	Pl Non-hon	chi-pī:	chi-mi	chi-mi-gu	chi-m-ke	chi-m-te	chi-m-sẽ:	
	Sg Hon	chi	chik-pini	chi-gu	chi-ke:	chi-te:	chī:	
	Pl Hon	chik-pī:	chik-pini	chik-pini-gu	chik-pin-ke	chik-pin-te	chik-pin-sẽ:	
	III Sg Non-hon	we	we-ya	we-ya-gu	we-yake	we-yate	wẽ: (anim) u-kī:(non-anim)	u-ki:
	Pl Non-hon	i-pī:	i-mi	i-mi-gu	i-m-ke	i-m-te	i-m-sẽ:	
	Sg Hon	weke:	weke:-ya	weke:-ya-gu	weke:-yake	weke:-yate	weke:-nẽ:	
	Pl Hon	weke:-pī:	weke:-pini	weke:-pini-gu	weke:-pin-ke	weke:-pin-te	weke:-pin-sẽ:	
Demonstrative	Sg Remote	we	we-ya	we-ya-gu	we-yake	we-yate	wẽ: (anim) u-kī:(non-anim)	u-ki:
	Pl Remote	i-pī:	i-mi	i-mi-gu	i-m-ke	i-m-te	i-m-sẽ:	
	Sg Proximate	thwe	thwa-ya	thwe-ya-gu	thwe-yake	thwe-yate	thwẽ: (anim) thu-kī: (non-anim)	thu-ki:
	Pl Proximate	thi-pī:	thi-mi	thi-mi-gu	thi-m-ke	thi-m-te	thi-m-sẽ:	
Interrogative	Sg Hum	su	su-ya	su-ya-gu	su-yake	su-yate	su-nã:	
	Pl Hum	Redup	Redup	Redup	Redup	Redup	Redup	
	Sg Non-hum	chu	chu-ya	chu-ya-gu	--	--	chu-kī:	chu-ki:
	Pl Non-hum	Redup	Redup	Redup	--	--	Redup	Redup
Reflexive	Sg	the:	the:	the:-gu	the:-yake	the:-yate	the:-nẽ: -the:-ne:syã:	
	Pl	the:(the:) -pi:	the:(the:) -pini	the:(the:) -pini-gu	the:(the:) -pin-ke	the:(the:) -pin-te	the:(the:) -pin-sẽ:	
Indefinite	Hum	sũ:	su-yã:	su-ya-gũ:	su-yakẽ:	su-yatẽ:	sunã:-nẽ:	
	Non-hum	chũ:	--	--	--	--	chu-kī:	chu-ki:

Note: Morphophonemic changes noted at the beginning of this section (i.e.9.1.2) have not been applied here.

9.1.3. Adjective/Proadjective + Classifier Inflection

Adjectives and Proadjectives, in their attributive function, agree with animate nouns in Number and cooccur with Classifiers. Singular is unmarked and the plural marker is /pĩ:/. The classifier /me/ is obligatorily deleted when it cooccurs with the plural marker /pĩ:/, e.g.

thike:-me khica   expensive dog

thike:-me-pĩ: khica-te ----- thike:-pĩ: khica-te expensive dogs

Adjective/Proadjective + Classifier together function as an AP. This AP (for that matter any AP), however, functions as an NP when the following noun it qualifies is deleted. In this case the Classifiers (in fact the NPs) inflect for Case like nouns with the following exceptions:

Classifier	Nom.	Gen	Com	Obj	Abl-Erg	Loc
me	me	me:siya	me:sike	me:site	me:syā:	me:
ku:	ku:				k(u)tĩ:	k(u)ti:
pa:	pa:				patā:	pate:
thwa:	thwa:				thwakē:	thwake:

The classifiers /gu/ and /laṅgu/ gain length resulting in /gu:/ and /laṅgu:/ when they, together with the preceding adjective/proadjective, function as an NP.

For the list of the Classifiers refer to 7.1.5. and for Noun Inflection for Case refer to 9.1.1.2.

9.1.4. Form-Function Correlation for Cases

Nominative

Stems in Nominative form function as/occur

1. Subject to Copulative, Patient-Copulative, Intransitive, Semitransitive and Patient-Semitransitive verbs.

Note

They can also occur as the Subject to some Transitive and Ditransitive verbs when the latter are in Progressive form and take a non-human Object. In this case Nominative form is in free variation with Genitive form, e.g.

ram - ram-ya ja neyacwane	Ram is eating rice.
ram - ram-ya bina-yata cithi cwayacwane	Ram is writing a letter to Bina.

2. Predicative-Complement to Copulative, Patient-Copulative, Transitive-Factitive and Ditransitive-Factitive verbs.
3. Object-Complement to Transitive, Ditransitive and Ditransitive-Factitive verbs when the noun is non-animate.
4. Residual-Complement to Semitransitive and Ditransitive verbs.

Note

In this case the Nominative form can be replaced by the Locative form without change in meaning but it is not always true the other way round.

5. before postpositions together forming a PP.

Genitive

Stems in Genitive form function as/occur

1. Patient-Complement to Patient-Copulative, Patient-Intransitive and Patient-Semitransitive verbs.
2. Predicative-Complement to Copulative verbs.
3. before nouns they modify together forming an NP.

Comitative

Stems in Comitative form function as/occur

[redacted]

1. Residual-Complement to Semitransitive, Ditransitive and Ditransitive-Factitive verbs.
2. before verbal adjectives cwengu/dugu etc. tgether forming an AP, e.g.

ram-yake [cwengu / dugu] (X) — (X) that Ram has/had or (X) that is/was with Ram.

Objective

Stems in Objective form function as

1. Patient-Complement to Patient-Copulative, Patient-Intransitive and Patient-Semitransitive verbs.
2. Object-Complement to Transitive, Ditransitive and Ditransitive-Factitive verbs when the noun is animate.
3. Residual-Complement to Ditransitive and Ditransitive-Factitive verbs.

<u>Ablative-Ergative</u>

Stems in Ablative-Ergative form <u>function as</u>/<u>occur</u>

1. Subject to Transitive, Ditransitive, Transitive-Factitive and Ditransitive-Factitive verbs.
2. Residual-Complement to Semitransitive, Patient-Semitransitive and Ditransitive verbs.
3. before verbal adjectives <u>ya'gu</u>, <u>yaigu</u>, <u>yanacwaṅgu</u> etc. together forming an AP, e.g.

ramē'	[ya'gu / yanacwaṅgu / yaigu]	(X)	(X) that Ram	[did / is/was doing / does/will do]

<u>Locative</u>

Stems in Locative form <u>function as</u>/<u>occur</u>

[redacted]

1. Residual-Complement to Semitransitive, Ditransitive and Ditransitive-Factitive verbs.
2. before verbal adjectives <u>cwaṅgu</u>/<u>dugu</u> etc. together forming an AP, e.g.

kwethae' cwaṅgu (X) (X) that is/was in the room

For illustrations refer to 7.2. and 10.2.

<u>Note</u>

1. S occurs with all verbs,

   Pt occurs with Pt-Cop, Pt-Intr, and Pt-Semitr verbs,

   Pr occurs with Cop, Pt-Cop, Tr-Fac and Ditr-Fac verbs,

   O occurs with Tr, Ditr, Tr-Fac and Ditr-Fac verbs, and

   R occurs with Semitr, Pt-Semitr, Ditr and Ditr-Fac verbs

[redacted] in the propositional core of Newari sentences.

2. When nouns in Genitive form function as a Patient-Complement, the corresponding first person singular and second person honorific singular pronominal [redacted] forms are Nominative (/ji/ and /chi/) and second person non-honorific singular form is Ablative-Ergative (/chā'/), e.g.

[ram-ya]	n̄ima kae' du	[Ram]	has/have two sons.
[ji]		[I]	
[chi]		[You(Hon Sg)]	
[chā']		[You(Sg)]	

9.2. Verb Inflection

A Newari verb has the following eight basic forms (illustrated with the stem /mhit/ 'play'):

1. the stem + e	mhit-e
2. the stem + i:	mhit-i:
3. the stem + a	mhit-a
4. the stem + elə	mhit-elə
5. the stem + i	mhit-i
6. the stem + u	mhit-u
7. the stem + ə	mhit-ə
8. the shortened form of the stem	mhi

The eight-fold contrast is subject to various alternations without reference to the categories variously expressed by these forms -- Mood, Tense, Aspect, and Person. These alternations will, therefore, be described first. The categories will be described after that.

Allomorphic alternations are observed both in the verb stems and in the endings (1 to 7 above) independently of what the latter represent. The shape of the allomorph depends upon which ending is added to which class (and which group within a class) of the verb stem. Morphological classes of verb stems are given first and then the allomorphic alternations both in the verb stems and in the endings are noted.

This will be followed by a discussion on the grammatical categories the endings represent followed by a note on the semantic values and uses of the categories.

9.2.1. Morphological Classes of Verb Stems

Newari verb stems can be classified according to their alternations as well as the alternations of the endings that they take. These classes are marked by characteristic phonemic shapes of their end portions. There are two main classes, C-ending and V-ending, with various sub-classes as follows with examples.

A near exhaustive list of Newari verb bases (about 300 in number) is given in Appendix .

1. C-ending Verb Stems			
1.1.	t/k-ending	mhit	play
		pyəṅk	kick
1.2.	n-ending	twen	drink
1.3.	l-ending		
	1.3.1. il-ending	n̄hil	laugh
	1.3.2. [u] l-ending	sul	hide(intr)
	[a]	mal	search
	[e]	tyel	press
2. V-ending Verb Stems			
2.1.	i-ending: Group A	bi	give
	Group B	di	stop
	Group C	ti	close
2.2.	u-ending: Group A	khu	steal
	Group B	gu	be torn
	Group C	pu	get burnt

2.3. a-ending: Group A		da	beat
	Group B	ya	do
	Group C	ta	cut(edibles)
2.4. ə-ending: Group A		nə	eat
	Group B	phə	be able

9.2.2. <u>Allomorphic Alternations in Verb Stems</u>

1. When the verb stems are followed by the ending -i, -u, or -ə the following alternations take place in the stems:

(i) i(l) of i(l)-ending stems ------- yu

(ii) $\begin{bmatrix} u \\ a \\ \text{ə} \end{bmatrix}$ l or r of $\begin{bmatrix} u \\ a \\ \text{ə} \end{bmatrix}$ l- or r-ending stems ------- $\begin{bmatrix} u \\ a \\ \text{ə} \end{bmatrix}$ r

(iii) Vn or Vn-ending stems ------- Ṽ

<u>Examples</u>

(i) /n̈hil/ + /i/ or /u/ or /ə/ ------- n̈hyu-Ø

/bi/ + /i/ or /u/ or /ə/ ------- byu-Ø

(ii) /sul/ + /i/ or /u/ or /ə/ ------- su-Ø

/mal/ + /i/ or /u/ or /ə/ ------- ma-Ø

/tyəl/ + /i/ or /u/ or /ə/ ------- tyə-Ø

(iii) /twən/ + /i/ or /u/ or /ə/ ------- twə̃-Ø

<u>Note</u>

The ending /i/, /u/, or /ə/ is realized as /Ø/ when it occurs with these classes of verb stems (cf. 9.2.3, Nos. 5,6 and 7).

2. [ka / dha]r ----- [ke / dhe]r / before the ending -a

Examples

/ka/ + /a/ ------- ke-ya (I/we) take/took

/dha/ + /a/ ------- dhe-ya (I/we) say/said

Note

The ending /a/ is realized as /ya/ following the a-ending Group A stems (cf. 9.2.3.).

3. Shortened Stems

(i) Only the initial syllable of polysyllabic stems occur in the shortened alternant of these stems, e.g.

pujya	-------	pu	worship
tisi	-------	ti	squeeze

[Note The shortened alternants occur in constructions like

we̤' pu-jaka-pujya-na-cwan-e	He is simply worshipping (and doing nothing else) for a long time.
we̤' ti-jaka-tisi-'tyan̄-gu	He was just about to squeeze]

(ii) Among the monosyllabic stems the V-ending stems have no separate shortened alternant. That is, their forms corresponding to the shortened alternants of C-ending stems are the stem forms themselves. The shortened alternants of C-ending stems are realized as follows:

(a) Vn of Vn-ending stems ------- V̄
(b) VC(C) of other C-ending stems ------- V.

Examples

(a) twen ------- twẽ

(b) mhit ------- mhi

pyeṅk ------- pye

n̈hil ------- n̈hil

(Note For their usage refer to Note above)

9.2.3. Allomorphic Alternations in Endings

1. The ending e ------- /i/ / i/u-ending stems --

/e/ / elsewhere

(Note a + e ------- e', a + e ----- ae', i + i ----- i')

Examples

/bi/	+ /e/	-------	bi-i	---	bi'	will give (IP)
/khu/	+ /e/	-------	khu-i			will steal (IP)
/ne/	+ /e/	-------	ne-e	---	ne'	will eat (IP)
/ya/	+ /e/	-------	ya-e	---	yae'	will do (IP)
/mhit/	+ /e/	-------	mhit-e			will play(IP)

2. The ending i' ------- /i/ / V-ending stems--

/i'/ /C-ending stems--

Examples

/ne/	+ /i'/	-------	ne-i	will eat(Non-IP)
/mhit/	+ /i'/	-------	mhit-i'	will play(Non-IP)

3. The ending a -------	/ya/	/Group A stems--; ə-ending stems--
	/na/	/Group B stems--
	/ya/ ~ /na/	/Group C stems--
	/a/	/C-ending stems--

<u>Examples</u>

/da/	+	/a/ -------	da-ya	beat (IP)
/khu/	+	/a/ -------	khu-ya	stole (IP)
/bi/	+	/a/ -------	bi-ya	gave (IP)
/nə/	+	/a/ -------	nə-ya	eat (IP)
/ya/	+	/a/ -------	ya-na	did (IP)
/ta/	+	/a/ -------	ta-ya ~ ta-na	cut (IP)
/mhit/	+	/a/ -------	mhit-a	played (IP)

4. The ending ələ ----	/lə/	/Group A stems--
	/tə/	/Group B stems--
	/lə/ ~ /tə/	/Group C stems--
	/ə/	/l/n-ending stems--
	/ələ/	/t/k-ending stems--

<u>Examples</u>

/da/	+	/ələ/ -----	da-lə	beat (Non-IP)
/ya/	+	/ələ/ -----	ya-tə	did (Non-IP)
/ta/	+	/ələ/ -----	ta-lə ~ ta-tə	cut (Non-IP)
/ñhil/	+	/ələ/ -----	ñhil-ə	laughed (Non-IP)

/twan/	+	/ela/	-------	twan-e	drank (Non-IP)
/mhit/	+	/ela/	-------	mhit-ela	played (Non-IP)
/pyeṅk/	+	/ela/	-------	pyeṅk-ela	kicked (Non-IP)

5. The ending i ------- /i/ / t/k-ending stems --
/∅/ elsewhere

Examples

/mhit/	+	/i/	-------	mhit-i	Play!
/pyeṅk/	+	/i/	-------	pyeṅk-i	Kick!
/twan/	+	/i/	-------	twā-∅	Drink!
/n̄hil/	+	/i/	-------	n̄hyu-∅	Laugh!
/na/	+	/i/	-------	na-∅	Eat!
/ya/	+	/i/	-------	ya-∅	Do!
/khu/	+	/i/	-------	khu-∅	Steal!
/bi/	+	/i/	-------	bhu-∅	Give!

(Note! For stem alternations refer to 9.2.2.)

6. The ending u ------- /u/ / t/k-ending stems--
/∅/ / elsewhere

Examples

/mhit/	+	/u/	-------	mhit-u
/twan/	+	/u/	-------	twā-∅

7. The ending a ------- /a/ / t/k-ending stems--
/∅/ / elsewhere

Examples

/mhit/	+	/a/	-------	mhit-a
/twan/	+	/a/	-------	twā-∅

<u>The alternations both in the verb stems and in the endings can be together illustrated in a diagram as follows!</u>

	t/k-ending	n-ending	il-ending	V*l-ending where V*≠i	i-ending			u-ending			a-ending			e-ending	
					Group A	Group B	Grupp C	Group A	Group B	Group C	Group A	Group B	Group C	Group A	Group B
	mhit	twan	n̈hil	mal	bi	di	ti	khu	gu	pu	da	ya	ta	ne	phe
	play	drink	laugh	search	give	stop	close	steal	be torn	get burnt	beat	do	cut	eat	be able
1. e	mhit-e	twan-e	n̈hil-e	mal-e	bi-i →bi!	di-i →di!	ti-i →ti!	khu-i	gu-i	pu-i	da-e →dæ!	ya-e →yæ!	ta-e →tæ!	ne-e →ne!	phe-e →phe!
2. i!	mhit-i!	twan-i!	n̈hil-i!	mal-i!	bi-i →bi:	di-i →di!	ti-i →ti!	khu-i	gu-i	pu-i	da-i	ya-i	ta-i	ne-i	phe-i
3. a	mhit-a	twan-a	n̈hil-a	mal-a	bi-ya	di-na	ti-ya ~ti-na	khu-ya	gu-na	pu-ya ~pu-na	da-ya	ya-na	ta-ya ~ta-na	ne-ya	phe-ya
4. ele	mhit-ele	twan-e	n̈hil-e	mal-e	bi-le	di-te	ti-le ~ti-te	khu-le	gu-te	pu-la ~pu-te	da-le	yate	ta-le ~ta-te	ne-le	phe-te
5. i	mhit-i	twã-Ø	n̈hyu-Ø	ma-Ø	byu-Ø	dyu-Ø	tyu-Ø	khu-Ø	gu-Ø	pu-Ø	da-Ø	ya-Ø	ta-Ø	ne-Ø	--
6. u	mhit-u	twã-Ø	n̈hyu-Ø	ma-Ø	byu-Ø	dyu-Ø	tyu-Ø	khu-Ø	gu-Ø	pu-Ø	da-Ø	ya-Ø	ta-Ø	ne-Ø	phe-u(!) phu
7. e	mhit-e	twã-Ø	n̈hyu-Ø	ma-Ø	pyu-Ø	dyu-Ø	tyu-Ø	khu-Ø	gu-Ø	pu-Ø	da-Ø	ya-Ø	ta-Ø	ne-Ø	--
8. Shortened form	mhi	twã	n̈hi	ma	bi	di	ti	khu	gu	pu	da	ya	ta	ne	phe

9.2.4. Categories of Verb Inflection

So far we have discussed the "endings" in the abstract without specifying which categories they express. We did so because, so far as the realizations of the alternants both in the verb stems and in the endings are concerned, such a specification is irrelevant. The various alternations discussed above hold good no matter what these endings, with or without the additional phonological materials, represent. Now we shall try to put these endings in the proper context of their use.

The inflected form of a Newari verb can be either finite or non-finite. In their finite forms the verbs inflect for Mood (Imperative), Tense (Non-Future and Future), Aspect (Narrative and Descriptive), and Person (First and Non-First). Tense, Aspect, and Person have fused realizations. In their non-finite forms the verbs exhibit the category of Aspect (Anterior, Concurrent, and Anterior-Durative). In addition non-finite verb forms comprise Infinitive, Gerundive and Oblique forms.

It will be noted that the phonemic shapes below are either one of the seven endings discussed earlier by itself or one of these followed by an additional phonological material that does not affect the alternations in any way. This additional material is separated by '-' for the sake of convenience.

Finite Endings

Mood

Imperative: -i

Tense-Aspect-Person

Tense	Aspect	Person	
		1st	Non-1st
Non-Future	Narrative	-a	-ela
	Descriptive	-a	-u-:
Future		-e	-i-:

Note: There are some verbs that do not make a Person distinction and are realized always in Non-1st Person form (cf. end of this section.)

Non-Finite Endings

Aspectual

Anterior : -a-:

Concurrent : Stem-u Stem-ū-:

Anterior-Durative : Reduplication of Concurrent form gives corresponding Anterior-Durative form.

Non-Aspectual

Infinitive$_1$: -e

Infinitive$_2$: -e-gu

Infinitive$_3$: -e-te

Infinitive$_4$: -e-!

Gerundive : -a

Oblique : -u

For allomorphic alternations of these Finite and Non-Finite endings refer to 9.2.3. It is to be noted that the additional phonological material, separated by '-', is to be added wherever relevant.

9.2.5. A Note on the Semantic Values and Uses of the Categories

(The categories in question are underlined along with verb stems whenever they are illustrated in larger constructions.)

Mood

Imperative : Speaker desires the addressee's action

e.g. mhit-i Play!

Tense-cum-Aspect

Non-Future Narrative

1. It is used to narrate a sequence of events, past or present, e.g.

ram we-le pãc minet cwen-e cya chegu kap twen-e ele wen-e

Ram came, stayed for five minutes, had a cup of tea and then went

(In a sports commentary')

ramā' bal thru ya-ta syamā' weita hyed ya-ta bal hariyagu tuti' la'-wan-a harī' ñime'sita chale'-yana' gwapalyata bal pas bi-la gwapalā' bal kase'yana' thwa'ta gwal ju-la

Ram throws the ball, Shyam heads it, the ball goes to Hari's feet, Hari dodges two persons and passes it to Gopal, Gopal hits the ball hard and it's a goal (Lit. and the goal occurs).

2. It is used to narrate a single dynamic event, that is an event which implies an action or a movement or a change in state, e.g.

ramā' kha sya-ta	Ram killed a chicken
wa wa-la	It rained (Lit. Rain came.).
ram si-ta	Ram died.
ā' dhwagi-ta	The mango decayed.
ja bu-ta	Rice cooked.
la' da-la	Water boiled.
ram mantri ju-la	Ram became a minister.

Note that it has a past sense because once a(n) action/movement/ change in state takes place it is instantly past in sense although it might have taken place just at the time of speech.

3. Normally it is not used to refer to a recurrent action. (Non-Future Descriptive is used in such cases.) However, in embedded sentences, Non-Future Narrative plus the embedding

connective /ki/ 'whenever' together give a recurrent sense in rapport with the sense of the matrix sentence when the latter expresses a recurrent sense, e.g.

ram we-le ki ji bu'	Whenever Ram came I used to lose.
	Whenever Ram comes I keep losing.
ram we-le ki ji bui	Whenever Ram comes I will keep losing.

It is to be noted that the sense conveyed by Non-Future Narrative /we-le/ is not a genuine recurrent sense (but only a dependent recurrent sense), the primary recurrent sense being rendered by the matrix sentence which has a verb in Non-Future Descriptive form.

4. It can occur along with various aspects and moods (cf. 10.1.6. Aux-Fin Expansion chart), e.g.

ram japan wen-e chunk-ele	Ram has/had been to Japan.
ram dyena cwen-e	Ram is/was sleeping.
ram lwe' phe-te	Ram can/could fight.

Note the Non-Future nature :

ram japan wene chuṅk-elé	Ram has been to Japan.
jhire nhe' he ram japan wene chuṅk-ele	Ram had been to Japan even before ten years ago.
a' ram dyena cwen-e	Ram is sleeping now.
mhige' ji weith-e' wena bele' ram dyena cwen-e	Yesterday when I went to his place he was sleeping.

a: ram lwae: phe-te	Now Ram can fight. (Earlier he was not able to fight)
pãc minet lipa ram lwae: ma phe-te	After five minutes Ram could not fight.

5. It does not occur in embedded sentences connected by /bela:/ 'when', /khunu/ 'on the day', /sã: nisẽ:/ 'since the time', /guli:/ 'due to' etc. Non-Future Descriptive is used in these cases (Cf. Past Punctual Non-Future Descriptive below.)

6. It shows an open condition in embedded clauses connected by /dha:sa/ 'if', e.g.

wa pas jule dha:sa	ramã: waita ghaḍi chage:bi: dhala
If he passed	Ram said he would give him a watch
wa pas jule dha:sa	ramã: waite ghari chage bi:
If he passes	Ram will give him a watch.

Non-Future Descriptive

1. It is used in describing a state of affairs, that is, it is used to refer to a persistent condition or state, the prevalence of a habit or recurrent action, a universal fact etc. which has present or past time reference. Past descriptive may refer to a punctual event which serves as a backdrop to the main event (described in the matrix sentence).

Illustrative Examples

Present Descriptive :

ramã: cures twa:	Ram smokes cigarette.
ram lhwã:	Ram is fat.
lə: kwa:	Water is hot/warm.
ram ja thui sə:	Ram knows how to cook.
ramya cya sikẽ: kaphi yə:	Ram likes coffee better than tea.
ramya ñhi ñhĩ: iskul wane ma:	Ram has to go to school everyday.
ramã: jĩ: dhəigu khẽ ñã:	Ram listens to what I say.
jhi:sẽ: mã:-əbũ: dha:gu khẽ ñəne ma:	We should listen to what (our) parents say.
ram dhũ nape lwəe: phu	Ram can fight with a tiger.
sunã:nã: ñima kəla: te: məru	Nobody is allowed to keep two wives.
jwara wə:-pinsẽ: ja ne: me jyu	Persons having fever should not eat rice
asadh məhinəe: ñhabəlẽ: wa wə:	It always rains on the month of Ashadh (June-July).
thəne bərwabər əksident ju:	Accident occurs here every now and then.
ram wələ ki ji bu:	Whenever Ram comes I keep losing.
ramyake yəkkwə dhyeba du	Ram has a lot of money.
ləkha: cini na:	Sugar melts in water.
cəndrəma sikẽ: surdyə: tapa:	The Sun is farther than the moon.

Past Descriptive:

Recurrent:

ñhapa ñhapa ramā: curas twā:

In those days Ram used to smoke cigarette.

ram wala ki ji bu:

Whenever Ram came I used to lose.

Punctual (as backdrop):

ram iskul wã: bale: lã: bina napalata

When Ram went to school (he) met Bina on the way.

dakter chyẽ: thyā: bale: birami si: dhunkala

When the doctor reached home the patient had already died.

ram wã: khunu wa wala

It rained on the day Ram went.

wa wa: gulĩ: khyal bica: ha banda yata

Because it rained, the show/game was stopped right in the middle.

2. When Non-Future Descriptive is used in the sense of past punctual in matrix sentences (questions or statements) it carries a force of confirmation or certainty, i.e. the verb is emphasized, e.g.

ram mhiga: wa: la	Did Ram come (emp.) yesterday?
ram wã: khunu wa wa:	It did rain on the day Ram went.

3. It shows an open condition in embedded clauses connected by /sa/ 'if', e.g.

we pas ju! sa ramẽ! weite ghari chege! bi! dhale
'If he passed Ram said he would give him a watch.'

we pas ju! sa ramẽ! weite ghari chege! bi!
'If he passes Ram will give him a watch.'

we pas ju! gu sa ramẽ! weite ghari chege! bi!gu
'If he had passed Ram would have given him a watch.'
(i.e. Had he passed)

It is to be noted that Present, Past, Recurrent, and Punctual are used here as semantic labels, NOT as grammatical ones.

Future

The Future forms have the following uses!

(1) As the future tense
    (a) in matrix sentences
    (b) in embedded sentences connected by /bele!/ 'when', whenever'
(2) As the prospective aspect in embedded sentences connected by /dheka!/ 'that'.

Examples

(1a)	ram kene! <u>wei</u>	Ram <u>will come</u> tomorrow.
	ram kane! <u>wei la</u>	<u>Will</u> Ram <u>come</u> tomorrow?

(1b) ji si! bele! sũ! he khwaipĩ dai me khu

I will die when none(emp) persons who will cry will not be

'When I will die there will be none to cry (over my death)'

awẽ! nisẽ! ram wai bele! ji n̄habelẽ! chyẽ! dai

from now on Ram will come whenever I always at home will be

'For now on whenever Ram comes I will always be at home'

(2) ram wai dheka! binã! dhala

Ram will come that Bina said

'Bina said that Ram would come.'

ram wai dheka! binã! dha!

'Bina used to say/did say that Ram would come'.

Aspect

Anterior : It is used to refer to an action done just before the main action (equivalent to 'having V-ed' construction in English), e.g.

we dui ghanta mhit-a! wane

Having played for two hours he went.

The 'V_1 and V_2' construction in English is commonly rendered as 'V_1-Anterior V_2' in Newari, e.g.

He played for two hours and went.

we dui ghanta mhit-a! wane

Concurrent : It is used to refer to a progressive action done concurrently along with the main action, the former functioning as an adverbial of manner modifying the latter, e.g.

we mhit-u mhit-ũ: wane
He went playing.
(i.e. He went and he was playing while he went)

wə̃: khwa khwə̃: dhale
He said crying.
(i.e. He said and he was crying while he said.)

Anterior-Durative : It is used to convey the sense of 'having done an action for a very long time', e.g.

we wə̃: we wə̃: akhire: we chegu jaṅgale: thyane
Having gone for a very long time at last he arrived at a jungle.

Non-Aspectual Non-Finite Forms

Infinitive$_1$: (i) It is used along with the auxiliaries of mood and aspect (cf. Auxiliary Expansion charts in 10.1.6.), e.g.

we mhit-e ph u — He can/may play
we mhit-e dhuṅk-ale — He has played.

(ii) It is also used in embedded sentences which function as an NP, e.g.

we phutbal mhit-e sa: — He knows how to play football.
waya phutbal mhit-e ye: — He likes to play football.

Infinitive$_2$: It is used as the citation form. It normally functions as a verbal noun, e.g.

korpinta bhwe: bhwe: swe:gu bã:-me-la:

To stare at others is not nice.

Infinitive$_3$: It is used in embedded sentences which convey the sense of 'in order to V; to V', e.g.

wase: ñe:ta chyoba me ru

(I) have no money in order to buy medicine

wã: ta: ca:k-ete [sene / swele]

He tried to open the lock.

Infinitive$_4$: It is used in embedded sentences which convey the sense of 'to V', e.g.

we mhit-e: wene He went to play.

Note : Infinitive$_4$ can occur only when one of the three verbs-- /we/ 'come', /wen/ 'go' /ju/ 'go frequently' -- follows it.

Gerundive : (i) It is used preceding the Progressive Aspect,

we mhit-e cwene He is playing.

(ii) It is also used preceding Modifier Verb Stems and Honorific in the formation of Complex Verb Stems(cf. Verb Stem section of 10.1.6.), e.g.

wã: mhit-a bile He played(for s.o.else).

wã: pe:khe: dan-a hele He went on building the wall.

we:ke: mhit-e dile He played. (Hon.)

Oblique : It occurs before Postp /sā: nisē/ 'from the time....' as the surface realization of Non-Future Descriptive, e.g.

we mhit-u: sā: nisē: --- we mhit-u sā: nisē:
from the time he played

ji mhit-a sā: nisē: --- ji mhit-u sā: nisē:
from the time I played

Note

1. There are a group of verbs in Newari that do not make any person distinction at all, the Non-First Person forms of the verb occurring with all the Persons, e.g.

Non-Fut NAR :	ji	tya-te	ji:	ye:	pha-te
Non-Fut DES :	cha	tya-:	chā:		phu
Future :	we	tya-i	wē:		pha-i
	I	won	I		became able to do.
	you	won/wins	You		am/are/is able
	He	will win	He		will be able

(/pha/ + Non-Future Descriptive /-u:/ --- /phu/)

For a list of such verbs refer to the verbs marked * in Appendix .

2. The First Person / Non-First Person distinction of verb forms is only a provisional postulation. It is valid only for matrix sentence statements and sentences with a question tag, e.g.

	Statement		Question-Tag S	
First :	jī: na-ya	I ate.	jī: na-ya khela	I ate, didn't I?
Non- First :	chē: na-la	You ate.	chē: na-la khela	You ate, didn't you?
	wē: na-la	He ate.	wē: na-la khela	He ate, didn't he?

In polarity and lacuna questions the distinction is between Third Person and Non-Third Person, e.g.

	Polarity Question	Lacuna Question
Non-Third :	jī: na-ya la	jī: chu na-ya
	Did I eat?	What did I eat?
	chē: na-ya la	chē: chu na-ya
	Did you eat?	What did you eat?
Third :	wē: na-la la	wē: chu na-la
	Did he eat?	What did he eat?

In embedded sentences the so-called First Person forms and Non-First Person forms of the verbs convey an entirely different distinction -- the distinction between Identity versus Non-Identity of the Subjects of the embedded sentence and the matrix sentence. What we have so far been calling the First Person verb forms occur when the Subjects of the embedded sentence and the matrix sentence are identical (i.e. refer to to the same person) whereas what we have so far been calling the Non-First Person verb forms occur when they are different. (These contrastive verb forms have nothing to do with person distinction in embedded sentences.), e.g.

Identity of Subject

(a)	jī:	chente	ji mhit-a dheya	I told	you	that I played.
		weite			him	
(b)	chẽ:	jite:	che mhit-a dhale	You told	me	that you played.
		weite			him	
(c)	wẽ:	jite:	we mhit-a dhale	He told	me	that he played.
		chente			you	
		ramyate			Ram	

Non-Identity of Subjects

(a)	jī:	chente	che	mhit-ele dheya	I told	you	that	you	played.
		weite	we			him		he	
			ram					Ram	
(b)	chẽ	jite:	ji	mhit-ele dhale	You told	me	that	I	played.
		weite	we			him		he	
			ram					Ram	
(c)	wẽ:	jite:	ji	mhit-ele dhale	He told	me	that	I	played
		chente	che			you		You	
		ramyate	we			Ram		he*	

(he* may refer to Ram or some other third person)

The distinctions conveyed by the two contrastive verb forms (our provisional First Person and Non-First Person verb forms) and the Person distinctions these verb forms express (if at all they make Person distinctions) are much more complicated than what have been presented so far. These distinctions are not fully worked out here.

CHAPTER TEN

NEWARI SYNTAX

10.1. Phrase Types

Any grammatical construction which is at least a word and is less than a sentence constitutes a phrase. A phrase with a finite verb but which forms only a part of a sentence is a clause.

A phrase may, therefore, be composed of a word or a group of words linked together as modifier-to-head or head-to-head. Head-to-head constructional phrases, in turn, may be appositional, additive, alternative, cumulative, or amplificatory.

Functionally and Structurally Newari phrases may be divided into the following six types :

1. Noun Phrase (NP)
2. Adjective Phrase (AP)
3. Adverb Phrase (AdvP)
4. Postpositional Phrase (PP)
5. Non-Finite Phrase (Non-FinP)
6. Verb Phrase (VP)

Note : VP here is not to be interpreted in Chomskyan sense.

10.1.1. Noun Phrase (NP)

Construction NP ----- [(AP)+ N | ProN | Non-FinP | N-Clause]

Examples

NP ----- N kela' wife

NP ----- AP + N bā̃'la'me kela' beautiful wife

ram-ya kela' Ram's wife

NP ----- ProN ji I

NP ----- NonFinP

khuigu (aparadh khe') Stealing (is a crime.)

yakkwe ela'twanegu (jyu'-yate thik me-ju')

Drinking too much (is not good for body.)

karpinte bhwe' bhwe' swe'gu (bā̃'-me-la')

Staring at others (is not polite.)

(ram) phutbel mhit-e (se')

(Ram knows how) to play footbal

NP ----- N-Clause

(wẽ') ram site (dhale) (He said) Ram died.

10.1.2. Adjective Phrase (AP)

Construction AP -----

[(PP) (+Int) + A(+ Classifier)]
[A-Num + Classifier]
[ProA (+ Classifier)]
[NP-Gen (+ Classifier)]
[PP]
[Non-FinP]
[A-Clause + Embedding Classifier]

Note :

Non-numeral adjectives of quantity and certain other proadjectives do not take a classifier (Cf. Note of 7.1.5.). Refer to 7.1.3., 7.1.4. and 7.1.5. for the types of classifiers that go with adjectives and proadjectives. For the classifiers that go with NP-Gen refer to 9.1.1.2. Non-FinP behaves as adjectives of quality as regards the classifiers they take. Adjectives of quality do not take a classifier in their predicative function.

Examples

AP ----- A (+ Classifier)

gẽ' si(-mə) lean   yəkkwə many/much   kancha(-me) youngest

AP ----- Int + A (+ Classifier)

[tes(ə)kə̃']
[sapəhe] gẽ' si(-mə) very lean
[sikkə]

AP ----- PP + A (+ Classifier)

hyeṅgwa' thẽ' haku-me (N) (N) that is as black as coal
coal like black

(ram) hyeṅgwa' thẽ' haku (me ju')
(Ram) (is not) as black as coal

AP ----- PP + Int + A (+ Classifier)

ram sikə̃' sapəhe gẽ' si-mə (N) (N) who is far leaner than Ram
Ram than very lean

AP ----- A-Num + Classifier

n̄i-me (pasa)	two (friends)	n̄i-gu (myec)	two (chairs)
n̄i-pu (mulu)	two (needles)	n̄i-pa: (khalti)	two (pockets)

AP ----- Pro-A (+ Classifier)

thena:-me	of this kind	thwe	this

AP ----- NP-Gen (+ Classifier)

ram-ya-gu (chyẽ)   Ram's house

ram-ya   (kala:)   Ram's (wife)

AP ----- PP

(we)   wẽ: thẽ: (chwẽ:)   (He looks) mad

(he)   mad like   (looks)

AP ----- Non-FinP

(we-ya) ela: twan-egu (bani me ru)

(to-him) liquor drinking (habit not exist)

"(He has no) liquor-drinking (habit)."

AP ----- A-Clause + Embedding Classifier.

sensar phukẽ: ca:hila: we: dhun̄ku: me (manū:)

(the man) who had gone round the world

kene: mhit-i: me (menū:)

(the man) who will play tomorrow

sikka ela: twene phu me (pasa)
(the friend) who can drink a lot of liquor

la: me ru gu (pukhu) (the pond) which has no water

(jī: mala cwena me menū: wohe khe:) gume:sigu nā: chā: nəktini kala
(by-me being searched man right him is) whose name you just took
(The man I am searching for is the same person) whose name you just mentioned.

(thuksi:nā: wā:he tyakala) gume:syā: thegune tyaku:gu khe:
(this year also by the same person won) by whom last year had won
(This year also the same person won) who had won last year.

10.1.3 <u>Adverb Phrase (AdvP)</u>

<u>Construction</u> AdvP ----- [(mod) + Adv | ProAdv | A-Num + AdvClassifier | NP + [Abl-Erg / Com / Loc] | PP | Non-FinP]

<u>Examples</u>

AdvP ----- Adv

dwā:	in	pyā:	out	thaū	today
hakanā:	again	bulū:	showly	bā:lakka	beautifully, well

(wa) khwa khwā: (wana) (He went) crying.

AdvP ----- Mod + Adv

[təs(ə)kā: / sikkə]	bulū:	very slowly
bhəca bulu		a little slowly
[phəcī: phəkkwə / jiyā: jikkwə]	bulū:	as slowly as possible

AdvP ----- ProAdv

a:	now	thənə	here	thəthə	in this manner

AdvP ----- A-Num + Adv Classifier

chə-kə:	once	swəthu	three times, thrice

AdvP ----- NP + [Abl-Erg / Com / Loc]

jhyalə̄:	from the window	kəthī:	with a stick
pasa-yakə	in a friend's possession		
jhyalə:	in the window	kəthi:	on the stick
suthə:	in the morning	canə:	at/in the night

AdvP ----- PP

chyē likkə	near the house	pasa napə	with the friend
sunti dhuṅka:	after 'Sunti'	sunti bələ:	during 'Sunti'

(Note: Newari 'Sunti' corresponds to Hindu 'Diwali')

wene n̄he:	before (s.o.)left	wene satki	immediately after (s.o.) left
car beje:	at 4 O' clock	aitbar khunu	on Sunday

(we) sele thẽ: (bwẽ: wene phu) (He can run) like a horse.

AdvP ----- Non-FinP

(wə) khwe khwẽ: (wene) (He went) crying all the while.

(jike:) duru n̄ẽ:te (dhyeba me ru) (I have no money) to buy milk.

(we) cya twene: (wene) Having had tea (he went).

(wẽ:) men [teye: / biye:] (jya yate) '(He worked) attentively.'

he mind [keeping / giving] (work did)

10.1.4. Postpositional Phrase (PP)

Construction

PP ----- [NP / Ap-Num / AdvP / Non-FinP] + $Postp_1$ ($+Postp_2$)($+Postp_3$)($+Postp_4$)

Constraints

(1) $Postp_4$: only sikẽ: ; thẽ: ;

$Postp_3$: only sikẽ: ; thẽ: ; nisẽ: ; tekke

$Postp_2$: only sikẽ: ; thẽ: ; nisẽ: ; tekke; n̄he: ;

Postp dhun̄ka: ; bahek; setta

(For the meanings of these postpositions see the gloss below)

A sequence of four postpositions can occur only following an AP-Num. A postposition does not normally appear more than once in a sequence of postpositions.

(2) NP ----- NP-Gen (+ the classifier gu) before the Postp lagi! "for'

NP ~ NP-Gen (+ the classifier gu) before the Postp satta "in lieu of" bare! "about"

(For examples refer to 'PP ---- NP + Postp' below)

<u>Gloss of the postpositions given above</u>

sikẽ!	more than (the preceding)	thẽ!	like, as.....as
nisẽ!	from	tekke	upto, till
n̈he!	before, preceding	chuṅka!	after, following
bahek	except	satta	in lieu of

<u>Examples</u>

PP ----- NP + Postp

sunti bale!	in/during Diwali	sunti chuṅka!	after Diwali
ram nape	with Ram	ram bahek	except Ram
ram thẽ!	like Ram	ram sikẽ!	more (s.th.) than Ram
aitbar khunu	on Sunday	chyeba-ya(-gu) lagi!	for money
<u>chyeba</u> ~ <u>chyeba-ya(-gu)</u>	[satta / bare!]	[inlieu of / about]	money

PP ----- AP-Num + Postp

car beje! at the hour of four (i.e., at 4 O' clock)

guli beje! at which hour?

PP ----- AdvP + Postp

ñhi ñhī! bane! almost everyday swake! ti about three times

PP ----- Non-FinP + Postp

wane satki immediately after (s.o.) left

wane ñhe! before going; before (s.o.) left

mye halegu satta [instead of] singing
[in lieu of]

Examples of PP containing more than one Postp.

aitbar khunu bahek	except on Sunday
sunti ñhe! nisẽ!	from before Diwali
sunti bele! takka	till the time of Diwali
car beje! ñhe!	before 4 O' clock
car beje! dhuñka!	after 4 O' clock
car beje! satta	instead of (at) 4 O' clock
swake! ti bahek	except about three times (i.e., not more than three times)
wane ñhe! nisẽ!	from (the time) before (s.o.) left
car beje! ñhe! nisẽ!	from (the time) before 4 O' clock

car beje! ñhe! nisẽ! sikẽ! (car beje! dhuñka! tini suruyae!gu bã!lai)

"(It will be better to start only after 4 O' clock) than from before 4 O' clock."

10.1.5. Non-Finite Phrase (Non-FinP)

Non-Finite Phrases consist of a verb stem preceded by optional accompaniments like Subject, Complements, and modifying AdvP and followed by one of the several possible Aux-Non-Fin expansions for which refer to 10 1.6.

A Non-FinP can function as an NP, AP, or AdvP. For examples refer to their respective sections.

10.1.6. Verb Phrase (VP)

A Verb Phrase, not to be interpreted in Chomskyan sense here, consists of a Verb Stem and an Auxiliary.

Verb Stem

The verb stem may be simple or complex. The simple verb stem consists of a main verb stem alone. The complex verb stem is made up of a simple verb stem plus one or more of the following three additional elements :

1. Coverb
2. Modifier Verb Stem
3. Honorific Verb Stem

The coverb precedes the simple verb stem and the other two additional elements follow it in the order given above. Thus the construction of the Verb Stem can be summed up as follows :

(Coverb +) Simple Verb Stem (+ Modifier Verb Stem) (+ Honorific Verb Stem)

or briefly as: (Coverb +) V (+ Modifier) (+ Honorific)

Modifier and Honorific verb stems are each preceded by the Gerundive ending /-a/.

The honorific verb stem is /di/. Some of the modifier verb stems are /bi/ 'to V for someone other than the self', /hə/ 'to go on V-ing (viewed from the end point of view of the action)', /wən/ ~ /yənk/ 'to go on V-ing (viewed from the starting point of view of the action)'. Thus, for example,

wẽ: pə:kha: <u>dən-a</u>	He built a wall.
wẽ: jitə: pə:kha: <u>dən-a bilə</u>	He built a wall for me.
wẽ: pə:kha: <u>dən-a hə-lə</u>	He went on building the wall.

The 'main verb + gerundive ending /-a/' (e.g. /dən-a/ above) may be replaced by the concurrent form of the main verb before the modifier verb stems /hə/, /wən/ and /yənk/ without any change in meaning, e.g.

wẽ: pə:kha: [dən-a / dẽ dẽ:] hə-lə	He went on building the wall.

It is to be noted that the modifier verb stems mentioned above can occur also as main verbs in which case they mean as follows:

/bi/ 'give', /hə/ 'bring', /wən/ 'go', /yənk/ 'take away'.

Here are some of the coverbs listed along with the main verbs with which they cooccur :

Main Verb		Coverb + Main Verb	
cwan	stay	awasā:-cwan	fast
chwe	send	wan-chwe	throw
ña	bite	kutī:-ña	pinch
nhu	step on	tin-nhu	jump
		thar-nhu	start (make a sudden movement out of fear, surprise etc.)
pi	plant	jhwe:-pi	be scratched (by a sharp and pointed object)
pu	put on	twe-pu	cover
		ghe:-pu	embrace
ya	do	pe:-ya	pretend
		pa:-ya	blame
		se:-ya	tolerate
		bya:-ya	marry
si	clean, wash	cipa-si	wash(used utensils)
		nu-si	wash(mouth after food)
		ti-si	squeeze, wring
si	(come to) know	mha-si	recognise
su	stitch	chwa-su	become loose(a knot e.g.)
swe	look	nē:-swe	taste
sya	pain	nuga:-sya	be stingy (Lit.feel pain at heart).

ha	be struck (against some stationary object)	luphĩ:-ha	stumble
bi	give	lite-bi	give back
		ina-bi	distribute (to others their shares)
ka	take	lite-ka	take back
		ina-ka	distribute (respective shares to self and others)
		li-ka	remove
		lyewa:-ka	fornicate(by a woman)
wen	go	ñasi-[wen we]	walk ([out-bound in-bound])
we	come	kutu-[wen wə]	fall from a height([out-bound in-bound])
		bise-[wen we]	run away([out-bound in-bound])
		penã:-[wen we]	elope(by a woman)([out-bound in-bound])

It is to be noted that some of these coverbs have also independent existance as nouns, e.g.

/khẽ/ 'talk(N), matter' (Cf. /khẽ-lha/ 'talks'),

/mhe/ 'body' (Cf. /mhe-si/ 'recognise'),

/nuge:/ 'heart' (Cf. /nuge:-sya/ 'be stingy'),

/bya:/ 'marriage' (Cf. /bya:-ya/ 'marry'), /lyewa:/ 'a man with whom a woman fornicates' (Cf. /lyewa:-ka/ 'fornicate').

On the other hand there are instances of main verbs that are bound

in the sense that they can occur only together with a coverb. Such verbs have to be assigned a meaning abstracted from different complex stems, e.g. consider /swa/ and /tu!/ and /lha/:

-swa	assume a straight posture	dhə-swa	be straight (vertically)
		tī!-swa	be straight(any direction)
-tu	assume a non-straight posture	phyə-tu	sit
		gwar-tu	lie
		ca!-tu	bend
-lha	release orally	khẽ-lha	talk
		sasə!-lha	breathe
		mhutu-lha	use profane words

In addition, Newari has a great many number of complex hybrid verb stems comprising a Nepali verb stem followed by an empty morph /-e!/ and the Newari verb stem /ju/ 'become' or /ya/ 'do'. The empty morph plus the Newari verb stem together function as a catalytic agent, e.g.

Nepali	Gloss	Newari
gel	melt (intr)	gel-e!-ju
dub	sink (intr)	dub-e!-ju
gun	multiply	gun-e!-ya
hep	disobey	hyep-e!-ya

Auxiliary

The auxiliary may be finite or non-finite. Thus we have

VP ----- [V + Aux-Fin]
[V + Aux-Non-Fin]

where V stands for verb stem.

Aux-Fin may contain :

Tense-Person alone (Tense and Person are always fused together)

e.g.,	mhit-i:	will play (Non-I P)

Mood alone,

e.g.,	mhit-i	Play!

Aspect + Tense-Person

e.g.,	mhit-a cwan-i:	will be playing (Non-I P)

Mood + Tense-Person

e.g.,	mhit-e phe-i	will be able to play (Non-I P)

Tense-Person + Aspect

e.g.,	mhit-i: na	is/are about to play (Non-I P)

Tense-Person + Mood

e.g.,	mhit-i: gudu	it is certain that (s.o.) will play (Non-I P)

Aspect + Mood

e.g.,	mhit-a cwẽ	keep/Be playing!

Mood + Mood

e.g.,	mhit-e mal-e phu	may have to play

Mood + Aspect + Tense-Person

e.g.,	mhit-e phe: dhunk-ale	has/had been able to play(Non-I P)

Aspect + Mood + Tense-Person

e.g., mhit-e sidek-e mal-e should complete playing (Non-I P)

AND several other combinations of Mood, Aspect and Tense-Person as shown in Aux-Fin Expansion below.

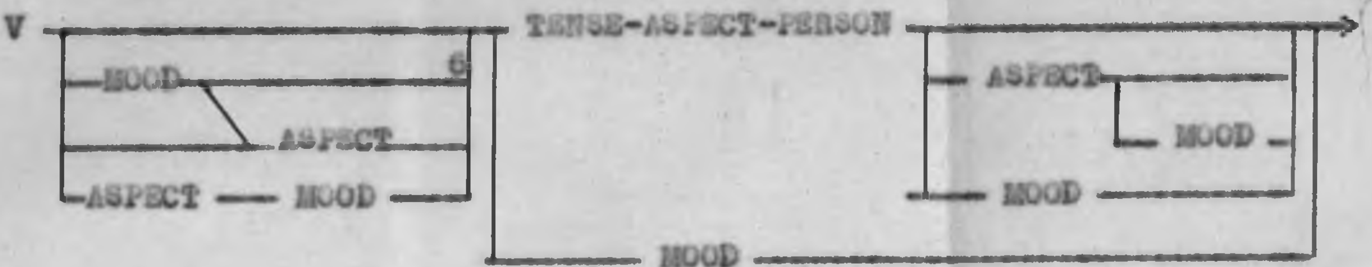
Similarly Aux-Non-Fin contains Mood and Aspect besides other Non-Fin elements as shown in Aux-Non-Fin Expansion below.

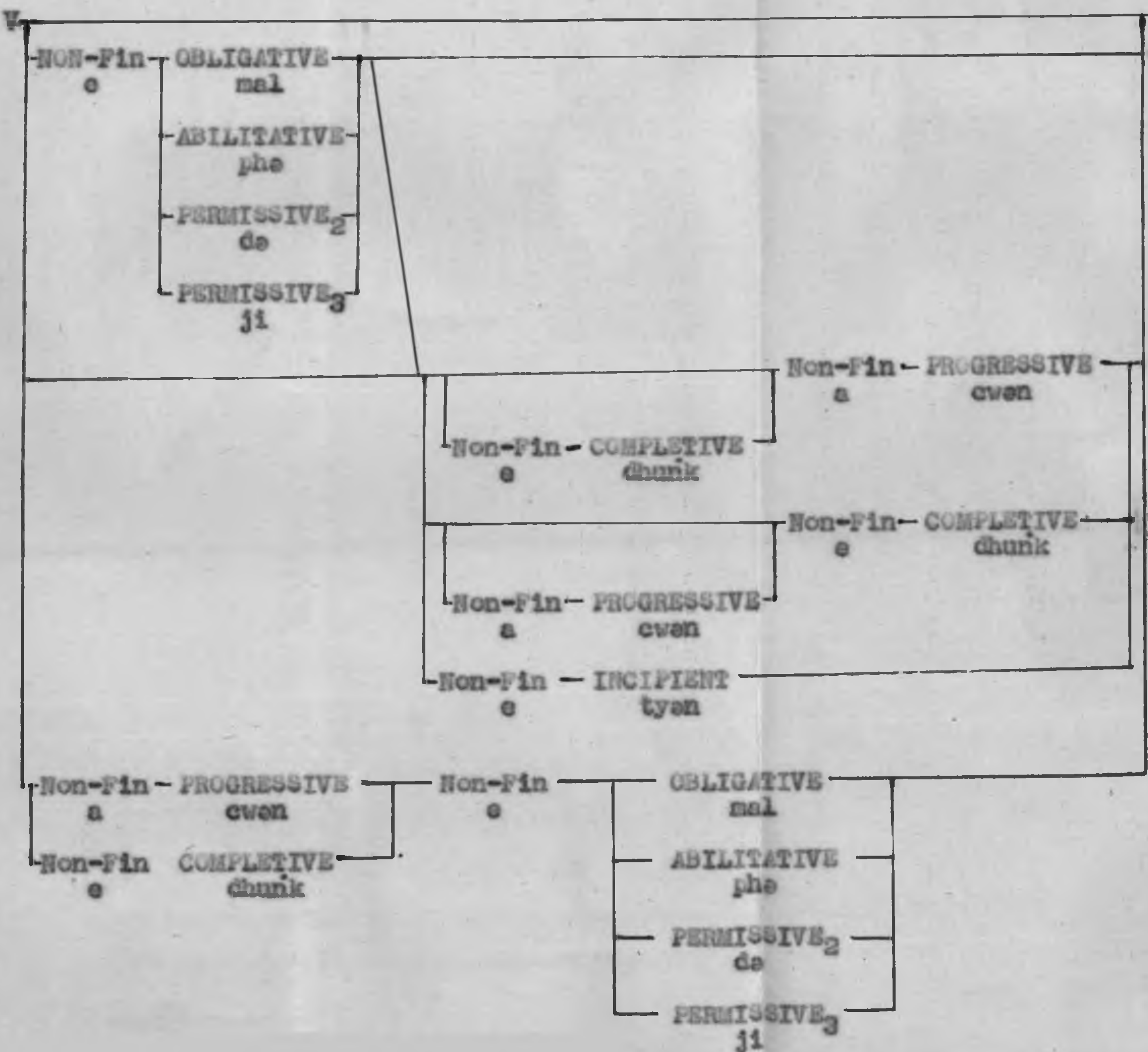
The diagrams below showing Aux-Fin and Aux-Non-Fin expansions are to be read from left to right. The slant line \ suggests that upward movement is prohibited; conversely, the slant line / suggests that downward movement is prohibited.

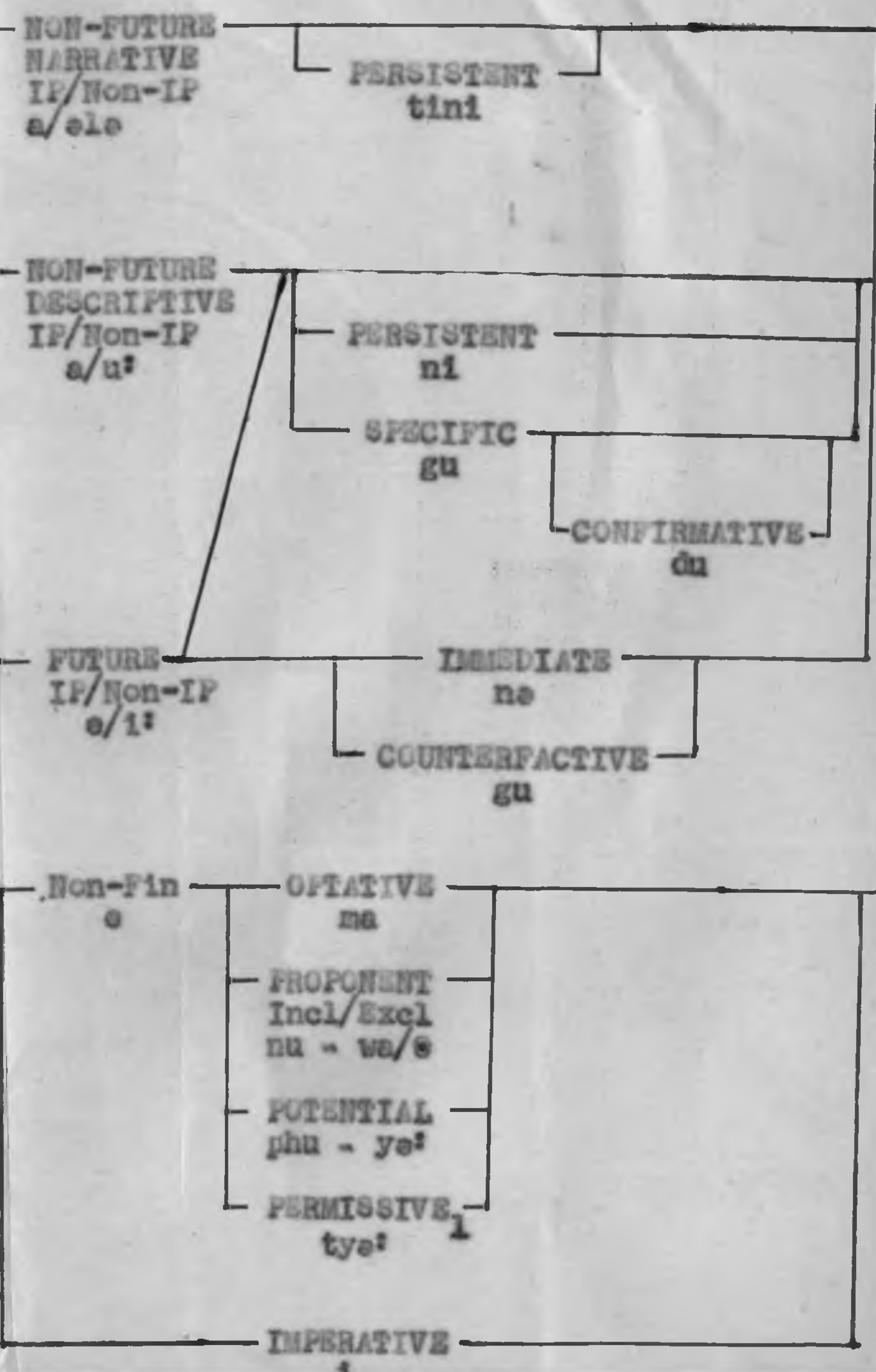
First the broad framework is presented followed by its detailed version for each expansion.

This will be followed by lists of Tense-Person, Aspect and Mood markers, their relevant allomorphic alternations, and finally by the semantic interpretations and illustrations of these categories.

Aux-Fin Expansion







Consider the following possiblé sequences:

V + MOOD$_1$ (+ ASPECT) + MOOD$_2$

and V + ASPECT + MOOD$_1$ + MOOD$_2$

where MOOD$_1$ is OBLIGATIVE, ABILITATIVE, PERMISSIVE$_2$, or PERMISSIVE$_3$ and MOOD$_2$ is IMPERATIVE, PROPONENT, or PERMISSIVE$_1$.

These cannot occur except in the following forms:

V + MOOD$_1$ + CAUSATIVE (+ ASPECT) + MOOD$_2$

and V + ASPECT + MOOD$_1$ + CAUSATIVE + MOOD$_2$

Thus, for example, rather than saying :

Be able to play!	Let us [redacted] be able to play.
(V + ABILITATIVE + IMPERATIVE)	(V + ABILITATIVE + PROPONENT)
mhit-e phe	mhit-e phe' nu

we have to say :

Make yourself able to play!	Let us make ourselves able to play.
(V + ABILITATIVE + CAUSATIVE + IMPERATIVE)	(V + ABILITATIVE + CAUSATIVE + PROPONENT)
mhit-e phe'k-i	mhit-e phe'k-e nu

(a) Constraints

The following combinations are blocked :

1. HONORIFIC + TENSE in 1st Person
2. HONORIFIC + PROPONENT

(b) Positional Interchange

HONORIFIC + (COMPLETIVE +) PROGRESSIVE -----

(COMPLETIVE +) PROGRESSIVE + HONORIFIC

e.g., rather than saying : mhit-a di-ya cwẽ   Keep/Be playing! (Hon)

we have to say : mhit-a cwen-a di-sẽ

Note that the IMPERATIVE marker after HONORIFIC is /-sã/ and that the HONORIFIC stem /di/ remains intact. Also note that

[we 'come'] + di 'Hon' ------- jha
[wen 'go']

the IMPERATIVE marker that goes with /jha/ is /-sã/ itself.

Tense-Aspect-Person Markers

TENSE	ASPECT	PERSON 1st	PERSON Non-1st
NON-FUTURE	NARRATIVE	-a	-ale
NON-FUTURE	DESCRIPTIVE	-a	-u!
FUTURE		-e	-i!

Aspect Markers

PROGRESSIVE	-a cwan
COMPLETIVE	-e dhuṅk
INCIPIENT	-e tyan
PERSISTENT	-tini
SPECIFIC	-gu
IMMEDIATE	-ne

Mood Markers

OBLIGATIVE	-e mal
ABILITATIVE	-e phe
$PERMISSIVE_2$	-e da
$PERMISSIVE_3$	-e ji
CONFIRMATIVE	-cu

COUNTERFACTIVE	-du
OPTATIVE	-e ma
PROPONENT Incl	-e nu - wa
Excl	-e ø
POTENTIAL	-e phu - ye'
PERMISSIVE$_1$	-e tye'
IMPERATIVE	-i

Allomorphic Alternations

COMPLETIVE dhunk ------- dhun / 1st P Fin

NON-FUT NARRATIVE a ------ e / 1st P COMPLETIVE dhun --

NON-FUT NARRATIVE ele ---- u' / NEGATIVE me --

PERSISTENT tini ------ ni / NON-FUT DESCRIPTIVE u' --

IMPERATIVE i ------- sẽ / HONORIFIC di --

'OBLIGATIVE + NON-FUT DESCRIPTIVE' ma' ---- ma/--PERSISTENT ni

[ABILITATIVE	phe]	+ NON-FUT DESCRIPTIVE u' -------	[phu]
[PERMISSIVE$_2$	de]		[du]
[Verb-Existential	de]r		[du]r

Verb-Cop khe + NON-FUT DESCRIPTIVE u' --- khu / Negative me --

Verb	[wen]	* Imp i -------	[hũ]	[Go]
	[te]		[ti]	[keep]
	[we]		[wa]	[Come]
	[he]		[hĩ]	[Bring]

Note

1. For the regular alternations of the Tense-Aspect-Person markers with different verb classes refer to 9.2.3.
2. For the stem alternations of the COMPLETIVE, PROGRESSIVE and INCIPIENT aspect markers and of the OBLIGATIVE, ABILITATIVE, PERMISSIVE$_2$ and PERMISSIVE$_3$ mood markers refer to 9.2.2.
3. The verb stems representing the moods mentioned above (i.e.2) are irregular in the sense that they do not make person distinction, the normal Non-1st person forms occurring with all the persons (Cf. Note 2, end of 9.2.5.).
4. The stem /de/ representing PERMISSIVE$_2$ mood belongs to the same group as the stem /pha/ representing ABILITATIVE mood, i.e. Group B of a-ending stems (Cf.9.2.1.). The stem /ji/ representing PERMISSIVE$_3$ mood belongs to Group A of i-ending stems (Cf.9.2.1.)

Semantic Interpretation of Tense-cum-Aspect

Semantic values of Tense-cum-Aspect and Future Tense have already been noted in 9.2.5.

Semantic Interpretation of Aspects

PROGRESSIVE	:	to be V-ing (i.e. progression of some action)
COMPLETIVE	:	to have V-en (i.e. completion of some action)
INCIPIENT	:	to be about to V (i.e. readiness for some action)

PERSISTENT : to V nevertheless. To be more specific:

(s.o./s.th.) used to V and still Vs (NON-FUT DES)

(s.o./s.th.) persisted in V-ing (NON FUT NAR)

(s.o./s.th.) V-ed nevertheless

(s.o./s.th.) will V nevertheless (FUTURE)

IMMEDIATE : to be about to V in immediate future

SPECIFIC : It is used for focussing the element immediately preceding the verb.

Compare these sentences:

mhige: ram mhit-ela	Yesterday Ram played.
mhige: ram mhit-u:	Yesterday Ram did play.
mhige: ram mhit-u:-gu	It was Ram who played yesterday(not any one else).

Also compare :

kene: ram mhit-i:-gu	It is Ram who will play tomorrow (not any one else)
ram kene: mhit-i:-gu	Ram will play tomorrow (not any other day).

Note

1. Specific is used mainly in making an enquiry about a fact or in reporting it.
2. It occurs in embedded sentences connected by /(ju:)sa/ 'if' when the matrix sentence embedding it is counterfactive.(Cf. Examples Nos. 44 to 48).

Semantic Interpretation of Moods

OBLIGATIVE : to have to V

ABILITATIVE : to be able to V

POTENTIAL : It is possible that ... ... (i.e., may V)

CONFIRMATIVE : It is certain that [(s.o./s.th.)has V-en / (s.o./s.th.)will V] r [(PAST) / (FUT.)] r

PERMISSIVE$_1$: permissible by religion, by traditionally cherished belief, by superstition etc. (Its negative means 'It is sacrilegious', hence doing it is sinful or prone to disaster.)

PERMISSIVE$_2$: permissible by rules, especially in games and sports and law.

PERMISSIVE$_3$: socially, ethically permissible; permissible in medication and dieting and in other circumstances; release from some constraint or physical handicap

COUNTERFACTIVE: Speaker thinks that the opposite of what had actually happened would have happened if the condition mentioned in the embedded sentence connected by /(ju')sa/ 'if' was fulfilled.(Cf. Examples Nos. 44 to 48)

OPTATIVE : Speaker desires that something may befall on addressee.

IMPERATIVE : Speaker wants addressee to V

PROPONENT

Inclusive : Speaker proposes s.th. to the addressee (equivalent to 'Let us V' construction in English)

Exclusive : Speaker asks addressee to let (X and) him V (equivalent to 'Let (X and) meV' construction in English)
where x stands for s.o. other than the speaker and the addressee.

Illustrations

V + Aux-Fin is marked off by square brackets for the sake of convenience.

1.

[ji	maca bale: ^phutbal	[	mhit-a	]
cha			mhit-u:	
wa]r			mhit-u:]r	

[I	used to play football when	[I was	a boy.
you		you were	
he]r		he was]r	

2.

[ji:	ela:	[	twan-a	]	[I drink	liquor.
chā:			twā:		You drink	
wā:]r			twā:]r		He drinks]	

3.

[ji	mhige:	[	mhit-a	] [I	played yesterday.
che			mhit-ala	You	
wa]r			mhit-ala]	He]r	

4.

[ji	kane:	[	mhit-e	] [I	will play tomorrow.
cha			mhit-i:	You	
wa]r			mhit-i:]r	He]r	

5. we phutbel [mhit-u' ni] — He still plays football.

6. we [[mhit-u' / mhit-i'] gu] — It is he who [played / will play]

7. we [[mhit-u' / mhit-i'] gu du] — Certainly he [played / will play]

8. hi bhwe' bhwe' we' sã' we [mhit-elə tini]

In spite of heavy bleeding he played nevertheless.

9. chenu we [mhit-i' tini] — One day he will play nevertheless.

10. we [mhit-i' ne] — He is about to play.

11. we [mhit-e ma] — May he play!

12. we kene' [mhit-e <u>phu</u> - <u>ye'</u>] — He may play tomorrow.

13. (a) jhi' [mhit-e <u>nu</u> - <u>wa</u>] — Let us play.

(b) [ji / jipi'] cheke' mhit-e e — Let [me / us*] play once.

where <u>us*</u> excludes the addressee.

14. [mhit-i] — Play!

15. [mhit-a di-sẽ] — Play! (Honorific)

16. weke' [mhit-a di-le] — He played.(Honorific)

he(Hon) played (Hon)

17. mā̃ʼ-yata kalaʼ [teʼ me tyeʼ]

"It is not allowed by religion etc. to keep one's mother as his wife"

"It is sacrilege to keep one's mother as his wife."

18. sa-yagu la [neʼ me tyeʼ] It is sacrilege to eat beef.

cow's meat eat not permissible.

19. aitbar khunu chyẽ [twaʼt-a wan-e me tyeʼ]

Sunday on home leave go not permissible

"It is not good to go away on a journey on Sunday."

20. baksiṅ mhit-e baleʼ pwa-thā̃ʼ cweʼ theʼ yeʼ thaeʼ[daeʼ du]

while playing boxing above the stomach anywhere one likes hit permissible

"In boxing you can hit at any place you like above the stomach"

21. phutbal khyel-eʼ bal lha-tẽʼ [thiʼ me ru]

in the game of football ball by-hand touch not permissible

"In football it is not allowed to touch the ball with hand".

22. nyepaleʼ rajneitik parti [khwal-eʼ-yaeʼ me ru]

in Neapl political party found not permissible.

"In Nepal it is not allowed to found a political party."

23. chama manū̃ʼ-naʼ ñi-gu bhwet [biʼ me ru]

one person-by two vote give not permissible

"One person cannot cast two votes."

24. nhuʼ-gu kanun anusar chama sikā̃ʼ apweʼ kalaʼ [teʼme zu]

new law according to one than more wife keep not permissible

"According to the new law one cannot keep more than one wife"

25. dayabyetic lwe: du-pī: manū:-te:-sā: ja [ne: me jyu:]
diabetic disease by persons having rice eat not permissible
"Persons suffering from diabetic should not eat rice."

26. musmā:te: the: paju-ya mhyae: [bya:-yae: jyu:]
among Muslims one's own uncle's daughter marry permissible
"Among Muslims one can marry his own uncle's daughter."

27. ba:ni: mate moreke kar [cale:-yae: me ru]
in the night light without car drive not permissible
"In the night it is not allowed to drive a car without light."

28. we [mhit-e [ma: / phu]] He [should / may] play.

29. akhire: we [mhit-e [mal-a / pha-te]] At last he [had to / could] play.

30. akiwē: nisē: cha-gu saikal-e: ñima manū: [ge:da-i]
from next year in one bicycle two persons ride will be allowed.
"From next yaar two persons can ride on one bicycle."

31. aparesan dhunka: chan̄gu tuti [cal-e-yae: ji:]
after operation your leg move will be able to
"After operation you will be able to move your leg."

32. we [[mhit-a cwen-a / mhit-e dhunk-ale]] He [is/was playing / has/had play]

33. ji ana thyã' bale' wa [[mhit-a cwan-e dhuñk-ala]]
[mhit-e dhuñk-a cwan-e]
[mhit-e tyan-e]

When I reached there he [had been already playing]
[had already completed playing]
[was to about to play]

34. cha ji ma wa' tele [pi-ya cwan-e ma']
you I not come till should be waiting
"You should be waiting till I come."

35. wa thane thyan-e ñha' jhi' [mhit-e dhuñk-e ma']
he here before arriving we should complete playing
"We should complete playing before he arrives here."

36. hai ma dha' tele [da-ya cwan-e du]
till s.o. says hai is allowed to keep on beating
"One can go on beating till some one says hai."

37. wa car ghanta takka [lal-ka-ya cwan-e phu]
he four hour upto can go on swimming
"He can go on swimming for four hours."

38. wa-ya ñhabalã' thathe [mhit-a cwan-e mal-e ma]
to him always like this may (s.o.) have to keep on playing
"May he always have to keep on playing like this."

39. we [mhit-a cwan-e dhuṅk-u: gu du]
Certainly he had been playing.

40. a: we [ñase-wan-e phe: dhuṅk-ale]
Now he has been able to walk.

41. we we: ñha: jhĩ-sã: jya [y˙e: dhuṅk-a cwan-e nu]
before he comes we work let (us) have completed doing
'Let us have completed doing the work before he comes"

42. karpinsã: jhirã: ya:gu unnati jhi-sã: dachĩ: [y˙e: mal-e dhuṅk-alə]
by others done in ten years development we in one year already needed to be done
'The development done in ten years by others we already need to do it in one year'.

43. jhire lipa napala: bale: wã: la thañagu jya nã:
[y˙e: phe-ya cwan-e dhuṅk-alə]
When I met him after ten years he had already been able to do even this kind of work.

44. ram [me we: gu] (ju:) sa cha [mhit-e mal-i: gu]
Had Ram not come it would have been necessary for you to play.

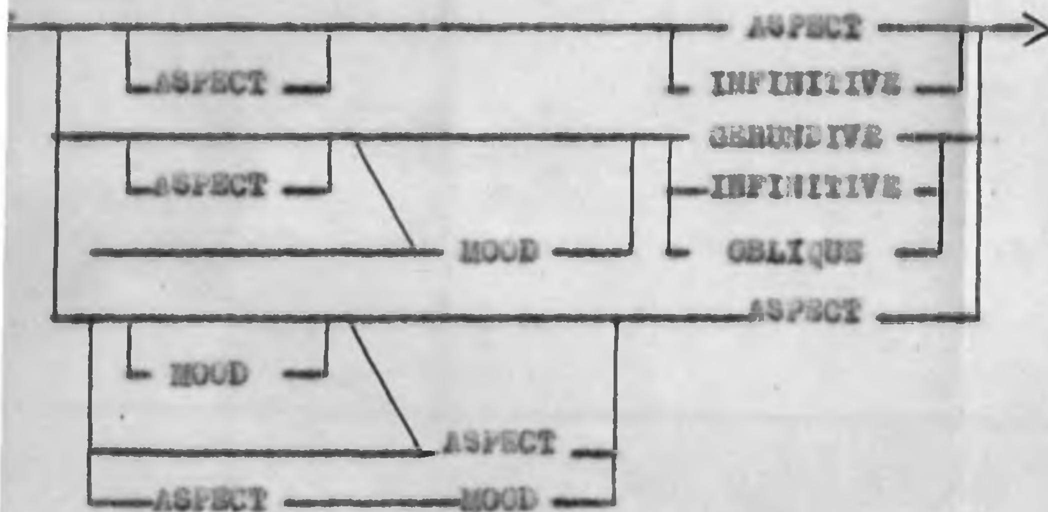
45. cha yek minet jake dhila [ju: gu] (ju:) sa trén [wan-e dhuṅk-i: gu]
Had you been late even by a minute the train would have already left.

46. cha thana [du gu] (ju:) sa ram [mhit-i: gu]
Had you been here Ram would have played.

47. pwa: [ja: gu] (ju:) sa maca [mhit-a cwan-i: gu]
Had (his) belly been full the child would have been playing.

48. nagune ji militari: bharna [ju: gu] (ju:) sa a ji kyaptyen [ju-i tyan-i : gu]
Had I joined the military the year before last now I would have been about to be a Captain.

ux-Non-Fin Expansion



V

Non-Fin a — PROGRESSIVE cwen

CONCURRENT u Vū'
ANTERIOR-DURATIVE u Vū' u Vū'
INFINITIVE$_1$ e
INFINITIVE$_4$ a'

GERUNDIVE a
INFINITIVE$_2$ egu
INFINITIVE$_3$ ete
OBLIQUE

Non-Fin a — PROGRESSIVE cwen
Non-Fin e — COMPLETIVE dhunk
INCIPIENT tyen

Non-Fin e — OBLIGATIVE mal
ABILITATIVE phe
PERMISSIVE$_2$
PERMISSIVE$_3$ ji

ANTERIOR a'

Non-Fin e — OBLIGATIVE mal
ABILITATIVE phe
PERMISSIVE$_2$ de
PERMISSIVE$_3$ ji

Non-Fin a — PROGRESSIVE cwen
Non-Fin e — COMPLETIVE dhunk
INCIPIENT tyen

Non-Fin a — PROGRESSIVE cwen
Non-Fin e — COMPLETIVE dhunk

Non-Fin e — OBLIGATIVE mal
ABILITATIVE phe
PERMISSIVE$_2$ de
PERMISSIVE$_3$ ji

Constraints

The following combinations are blocked :

1. INCIPIENT + MOOD
2. [COMPLETIVE / INCIPIENT] (+ MOOD) + [INFINITIVE$_2$ / OBLIQUE]

Note

(ASPECT +) MOOD + INFINITIVE$_3$

—— (ASPECT +) MOOD + CAUSATIVE + INFINITIVE$_3$

Mood Markers

OBLIGATIVE	-e mal
ABILITATIVE	-e phe
PERMISSIVE$_2$	-e de
PERMISSIVE$_3$	-e ji

Aspect Markers

PROGRESSIVE	-a cwen
COMPLETIVE	-e dhuṅk
INCIPIENT	-e tyan
ANTERIOR	-a:
CONCURRENT	-u V-ũ:
ANTERIOR-DURATIVE	-u V-ũ: V-u V-ũ:

Other Non-Fin Markers

INFINITIVE$_1$	-e
INFINITIVE$_2$	-egu
INFINITIVE$_3$	-ete
INFINITIVE$_4$	-e:
GERUNDIVE	-a
OBLIQUE	-u

Semantic Interpretations

For the semantic interpretations of moods and PROGRESSIVE, COMPLETIVE and INCIPIENT aspects refer to 1.7. and 1.6. respectively of Aux-Fin Expansion and for those of ANTERIOR, CONCURRENT and ANTERIOR DURATIVE aspects and other Non-Fins refer to 9.2.5.

Illustrations

V + Aux-Non-Fin is marked off by square brackets for the sake of convenience.

Concurrent

we [mhit-u mhit-ü'] wene He went playing.

we [mhit-a cwe cwẽ'] khwe-ya he-le

He started weeping while he was playing.

Anterior-Durative

[we wẽ' we wẽ'] akhire' we chegu jeṅgale' thyene

Having gone (walked) for a very long time at last he arrived at a jungle.

weite [pi-ya cwe cwẽ' cwe cwẽ'] jite la n̄he' he we-le

to him to me emp. sleep emp. came

"Having been waiting for a very long time I felt sleepy."

Infinitive$_1$

weya thene weya' [[mhit-e]] ye'
[mhit-a cwen-e]

He likes to come here and [play / be playing]

Infinitive$_4$

we [mhit-e'] wone He went to play.

che thene weya' [mhit-a cwā'] wa

You come here and (you come to) be playing.

Gerundive

weke' [[mhit-a cwan-a] / [mhit-e dhunk-a] / [mhit-e tyen-a]] di-le

He [is/was playing / has/had played / is/was about to play] (Honorific)

chū' din lipa we [den-e pha-ya] wale

After some days he began to be able to stand.

weigu lha' nā' [sank-e ji-ya] wale

(He) began to be able to move his hand too.

akhire' thena'gu jya nā' [ya-na cwen-e mal-a] wene

At last the circumstances turned out such that (we) had to be doing even a work like this.

Infinitive$_2$

ope' dhike' juya' nā' gucca [mhit-a cwen-egu] hisi meru

Having been such a grown up person it does not look nice for you to be playing marble.

athe [mhit-e phe:gu] bā:la:

It is good to be able to play like that.

waya thana waya: [pi-ya cwan-e mal-agu] sa:pahe maya:.

After having come here he does not like it at all to have to be waiting.

Infinitive:

thathe [[mhit-ete]] jike: samaye ma ru
[mhit-a cwan-ete]

I have no time [to play] like this.
[to be playing]

wa wa: nha: thwa jya [ya: dhunk-ete] tha-he-thaku-i

It will be definitely difficult to complete doing this work before he comes.

thana:gu jya [ya: phe:k-ete] cha: yakkwa mihanat ya: mani.

You have yet to do a hard work in order to be able to do this sort of work.

nhabale: thathe dhyeba kharca [ya-na cwan-e phe:k-ete] ji khū ju-i ma ni ka

I have to become a thief (and I am not so far) if I am always to be able to go on doing expenses (i.e. spending money) like this.

Oblique

wa [mhit-u] sā:-nisē: khyel bā:la-na wala

The game began to improve since the time he played.

we [[mhit-e phu]] sā:-nisē: thane chaka: he ma wa:
[mhit-a cwan-e phu]

Since the time he [became able to play] he has not
[became able to keep on playing]
come here even once.

Anterior

we [[mhit-a:]] chyē wona
[mhit-e mal-a:]
[mhit-e dhuṅk-a:]
[mhit-e phe: dhuṅk-a:]

[Having played] he went home.
[Having needed to play]
[Having completed playing]
[Having become able to play]

athe [mhit-a cwan-a:] gubale: jya sidə:k-egu

Keeping on playing like that when are you going to complete the work?

we [wan-e tyan-a:] ji ma wan-a

He being about to go I did not go

(i.e. I did not go as he was about to go.)

wa [mhit-a cwan-e da-ya:] sa:pa he le:t-a:

He is very glad as he is allowed to keep on playing.

we we' n̄he' thwa jya [ya' dhuṅk-e mal-a'] ram mhige' cachi madyā'
Having had to complete doing this work before he comes, Ram did not sleep whole night yesterday.

10.2. Newari Phrase Combinations

A phrase may consist of more than one phrase of the same type combined together with or without a connective (i.e. XP ----- XP + XP + ...). These constituent phrases may stand in additive, alternative, appositional, cumulative or amplificatory relationship with one another.

The distinction between phrase conjoining and phrase embedding is not made. The amplificatory type roughly corresponds to the embedded type. Whenever the phrases are illustrated in a larger context they are underlined.

1. NP ----- NP + NP + ...

Additive

sala (wa) kisi	horse and elephant
chū bhau (wa) khica	rat, cat and dog

Note : the additive conjunction wa 'and' is optionally inserted before the last constituent NP.

Alternative

chū ki bhau	rat or cat
chū ki bhau ki khica	rat, cat or dog

thaũ ram ki syam tyai	Today Ram or Shyam will win.
chanta gugu ye: thwa(la) ki wa	Which one do youlike? This or that?

(Note: /la/ is the question particle.)

kane: ram (ju:)sã: syam (ju:) sã: chwaya hi - haji

Tomorrow send either Ram or Shyam.

kane: ram (ju:)sã: syam (ju:)sã: wai

Tomorrow either Ram or Shyam will come.

cya (ju:)sã: kaphi (ju:)sã: jyu:

Either tea or coffee will do.

Appositional

nyepa:yama juju birendra	Nepal's king, Birendra.

2. AP ----- AP + AP + ...

Additive

jite bã:la:ma (wa) akha: bwanata:ma misa ma:

to-me beautiful (and) educated girl need

"I need a beautiful and educated girl."

jita: hyangu (wa) mhasugu ranta maya:

"I don't like red and yellow colours."

Alternative

thwa sitayagu ki binayagu kalam juima:

This must be Sita's or Bina's pen.

jite' bā'la'me ki akhe' bwane te' me misa ma'
"I need a beautiful or educated girl."

ñime swame menū'
two or three men.

Cumulative

jite cyarke jhirke dā' ma'
"I need a sum of rupee ranging between eight and ten"
i.e. I need eight to ten rupees.

Amplificatory

hū' ñhe'ne cwena cwē: pī' hyeñgwa' thē' haku pī'
those who are sitting in front who are black as coal

ela' sikke twane phu pī' — aphrikaya pī' — ñime
who can drink a lot of liquor — of Africa — two

te' dhike' pī' — bidhyarthite
tall — students

"Those two tall students from Africa
who are sitting in front, who are black as coal,
and who can drink a lot of liquor"

3. AdvP ----- AdvP + AdvP + ...

Additive

we theū kane' (we) kā'sa wei me khu
He will not come today, tomorrow, and the day after tomorrow.

Alternative

we kane! ki kā!se wei

He will come tomorrow or the day after tomorrow

n̈ike! swake!

two (times) or three times,

twice or thrice

Cumulative

jhike! jhinñake!

a number of times ranging between ten and fifteen,

i.e. ten to fifteen times

Amplificatory

mhige! suthe! car baje!

yesterday morning at 4 O'clock

we mhige! suthe! khwe khwā! bulū! pyā! wane

he yesterday in the morning crying slowly out went

"He slowly went out crying yesterday morning."

4. PP ----- PP + PP + ...

Additive

mwā!ni! n̈he! we sunti dhunke!

before mwā!ni! (i.e. Dasera) and after sunti (i.e., Diwali)

Alternative

jigu lagi' ki chaṅgu lagi'

for me or for you

Amplificatory

sunti dhuṅka' aitbar khunu

after Sunti on Sunday

8. Non-FinP ----- Non-FinP + Non-FinP + ...

Additive

we pyakhã' lhu lhũ' mye ha hã' wana

He went dancing and singing

we waya' cya twana' kane' we' mekhu dhaya' wana

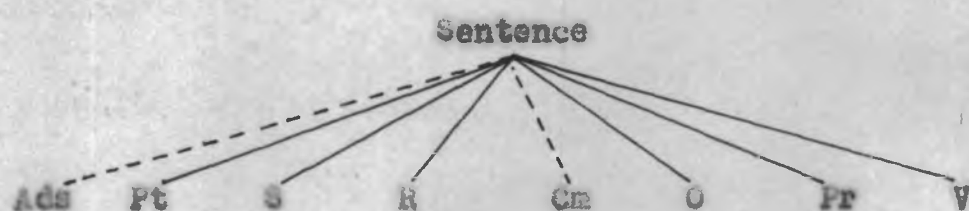
Having come, having had tea, and having said that (he) would not come tomorrow, he went.

10.3. Newari Sentence Types

The division of sentences into various types is based on their structure. This section comprises a sketch of basic sentence types with illustrations followed by brief notes on Circumstantials, Adsententials and Correlation between syntactic functions and morphological forms.

10.3.1. Basic Sentence Types

The following diagram illustrates Hewari sentence patterns in a nutshell :



where, Ads stands for Adsentential

Pt	"	"	Patient Complement
S	"	"	Subject
R	"	"	Residual Complement
Cm	"	"	Circumstantial
O	"	"	Object Complement
Pr	"	"	Predicative Complement
V	"	"	Verb Phrase (Finite)

& where _____ " " elements inside propositional core

----- " " elements outside propositional core

Constraints

1. V cannot occur alone. It has to be accompanied by at least S or, in the absence of S, by 'Pt + Pr' or 'R + Pr'.
2. Pt and O are mutually exclusive.

Given these constraints the propositional core comprises the following thirteen sentence patterns :

1.		S			Pr	V
2.	Pt	S			Pr	V
3.		S				V
4.	Pt	S				V
5.		S	R			V
6.	Pt	S	R			V
7.		S		O		V
8.		S	R	O		V
9.		S		O	Pr	V
10.		S	R		Pr	V
11.		S	R	O	Pr	V
12.	Pt				Pr	V
13.			R		Pr	V

Note

1. Whenever O and Pr occur together Pr is the Predicative Complement to Object. Elsewhere it is the Predicative Complement to Subject provided that the latter occurs.
2. S + R is the normal order. However the R + S order is preferred when (a) Pt precedes them, or (b) S is emphasized, or (c) V is existential.
3. R + O is the normal order. However the order O + R is preferred when V is a verb of motion.

4. R may be more than one in number with some verbs.

5. /khe/ and /ju/ are two copulative verbs in Newari. These verbs, like other verbs, have two uses — descriptive and narrative — in Non-Future sense. They mean as follows :

	Descriptive	Narrative
khe	be	turn out to be (the same as expected or guessed)
ju	be	become

In their descriptive use these verbs have complementary distribution — /khe/ occurs with Noun-Predicative whereas /ju/ occurs with Adjective-Predicative — and are normally deleted in affirmative constructions, e.g.

we jasus [(khe') / me khu]   He [is / is not] a spy.

we gã'si [(ju') / meju']   He [is / is not] lean.

In their narrative use these verbs have contrastive distribution. Both of these verbs can occur with Noun-Predicative as well as Adjective-Predicative, e.g.

we [jasus / gã'si] [khete / jule]   He [turned out to be (as expected) / became] [a spy / lean]

This copula /ju/ is not to be confused with the homonymous intransitive /ju/ 'occur, happen', e.g.

aeksident jule   Accident occurred.

6. The following surface realizations of "Anomalous adjective (cf. 7.1.3.1.) + V-Cop /ju/ 'become' + Tense (Cum Aspect)" are observed :

Adj + ju + Non-Fut Narrative ---- Adj + Non-Fut Narrative

Adj + ju + Future (+ Negative) ---- Adj + Future (+Negative), e.g.

ciku ju-le	---- ciku-le	'became cold'
ciku ju-i (me khu)	---- ciku-i(me khu)	'will(not) become cold'

The following comparative paradigms will make the point clear:

	/khu/ 'steal'(V)		/gə̃:si/ 'lean' + /ju/ 'become' (Adj+V)	
	Aff	Neg	Aff	Neg
N-F Des :	khu-:	me khu-:	gə̃:si(ju-:)	gə̃:si me ju-:
N-F Nar :	khu-le	me khu-:	gə̃:si ju-le	gə̃:si me ju-:
Future :	khu-i	khu-i me khu	gə̃:si ju-i	gə̃:si ju-i me khu

/ciku/ 'cold' + /ju/ 'become' (Anomalous Adj + V)

Affirmative	Negative
ciku (ju-:)	ciku me ju-:
ciku-le	ciku me ju-:
ciku-i	ciku-i me khu

The box illustrates the point in question.

<u>Illustrations</u>

1. S + Pr + V

ram [master / gə̃:si] ju-i		Ram will be [a teacher / lean]

theũ aitbar (khe!)	Today is Sunday.
ram ji-mi kae! (khe!)	Ram is my son.
thwe ghãe! sa-yagu lagi!(khe!)	This grass is for the cow.
we kitab [ram-yate / ram-yagu] me khu	That book is not [for Ram / Ram's]
ram wẽ! thẽ! cwẽ!	Ram looks like a mad person.

2. Pt + S + Pr + V

ram-yate thwe tapuli thik ju-i
to Ram this cap fit will be
This cap will be fit for Ram.

ji-te! we maca ji-mi kae!thẽ! cwẽ!
to me that child like my son looks
That child looks like my son to me.

3. S + V

ram khwe-i	Ram will weep/cry.
[suthe! / car baje!] ju-i ne	It is about to be [morning / 4 O'clock]
[morning / 4 O'clock] about to come about	

4. Pt + S + V

ram-ya pwa! sya-i — Ram will have stomach-ache.
- ram-yate
to Ram stomach will pain

ram-ya / -ram-yate [jwara / ñhe' / musu / waki'] wa-i — Ram will [get fever / feel sleepy / cough (involuntarily) / feel like vomitting]

to Ram [fever / sleep / cough / vomitting urge] will come

ram-ya / -ram-yate [thwa iskul / iskule' wan-e] ya-i — Ram will like [this school / to go to school]

ram-ya / -ram-yate [la' twan-e + pya'ca-i / ja ne' + pitya-i / cwa phae' + tã'nwa-i] — Ram [will feel thirsty + to drink water / will feel hungry + to eat rice / will feel an urge + to pass urine]

ram-ya ñi-ma kela' da-i — Ram will have two wives
two wives will exist

5. S + R + V

ram [pyã' / iskul-e' / iskul] wan-i' — Ram will go [out / to school / to school]

ram simã' kutu-wa-i — Ram will fall down from the tree.
ram myec-e' phya-tu-i — Ram will sit in the chair.

ram sita nape lwa-i Ram will quarrel with Sita.

sitaå ram nape lyewa!-ka-i Sita will fornicate with Ram.

meca dhũ khena! gya-i The child will be frightened of the tiger.

meca ji-ke! we-i The child will come to me.

ram kweth ae! du Ram is in the room.

R + S + V

ram-yake yekkwe dhyeba da-i Ram will have a lot of money.
with Ram a lot of money will exist

nyepa!-le! yekkwe pahad du There are many mountains in Nepal.
in Nepal many mountains exist

ji-gu sansar-e! dye! me ru God does not exist in my world.
in my world god does not exist

[ji-mi-gu iskul-e! / theũ] bida du It is a holiday [in our school / today]

iskul-e! ram wen-i! gu It is Ram who will go to school.

la-khe! cini na! Sugar melts in water.

6. Pt + R + S + V

ram-ya sita lise lwapu ju-i Ram will quarrel with Sita.
Ram's with Sita quarrel will take place

ram-ya sita-nape bya! ju-i Ram will marry Sita.
with Sita marriage

ram-ya ~ ram-yate	nhasā:	hi	wa-i	Ram will bleed through nose
	through nose blood will come			

ram-ya ~ ram-yate	sita-khena:	maya	wan-i:	Ram will feel pity on Sita
	on Sita	pity	will go	

7. S + O + V

ram-ā:	ji-te:	da-i	Ram will beat me.
ram-ā:	sita-yate	kala:-ta-i	Ram will screw Sita.
ram-ā:	gilas	tachya-i	Ram will break the glass.
ram-ā:	khi	[pha-i / ta-i]	Ram will [defecate / fart].

(Note: /khi/ 'anything that is released through anus, usually feces'

/pha/ 'discharge feces, urine, sputum etc.'

/ta/ 'release wind through anus or mouth')

sita	[bwaksi / mari chu-i]	sə:	Sita knows [witchcraft / how to bake a bread]

(Note: The verb /sa/ 'know (how)' takes the Subject in Nom.form.)

8. S + R + O + V

ram-ā:	ji-te:	dhyeba	bi:	Ram will give me money.
ram-ā:	ji-te:	kitab	ñana-bi:	Ram will buy a book for me.
ram-ā:	ji-te:	namestye	ya-i	Ram will do 'Namaste' to me.
ram-ā:	ji-te:	ja	nak-i:	Ram will feed me rice
ram-ā:	ji-te:	sita si-te dha-le		Ram told me that Sita died.

S + O + R + V

ram-ẽ:	ji-ta:	[pine / pune:]	chwe-i	Ram will send me [out / to Poona]
ram-ẽ:	ji-ta:	chyẽ:	pitin-i:	Ram will drive me out of the house.
ram-ẽ:	dhyeba	kholti:	ta-i	Ram will keep money in the pocket.

janak-ẽ: sita-yata ram nape bya:-yana-bi-la — Janak married Sita with Ram
Janak to Sita with Ram gave in marriage

ram-ẽ:	ji-ta:	dwẽdharo:	lak-ala	Ram put me in dilemma.
ram-ẽ:	thwe	jig-u lagi:	ña:gu	Ram bought this for me.

9. S + O + Pr + V

ram-ẽ:	ji-ta:	[daju / khũ]	dha-i	Ram will call me [brother / a thief]
ram-ẽ:	sita-yata	[kala: / cya:]	ta-i	Ram will keep Sita as his [wife / servant].
sitã:	ram	lyewa:	ka-i	Sita will take Ram as a lover.

ram-ẽ: ji-ta: wa-ya daju dheka:-cwen-i: — Ram will mistake me for his brother.

janatã:	ji-ta:	naya:	mane:-ya-i	People will regard me as (their) leader
ram-ẽ:	ji-ta:	[mantri / murchya]	ya-i	Ram will make me [a minister / faint].

10. S + R + Pr + V

ram	jãc-e:	pas	ju-i	Ram will be successful in the examination.

ram thwe iskul-e: bharna ju-i — Ram will get admitted to this school.
in this school admitted will be

11. S + R + O + Pr + V

ñayachis-ẽ: ram-yata sachi-dã: jeribana ya-i
judge to Ram one hundred rupee fine will do

The judge will fine Ram one hundred rupee as a fine.

12. Pt + Pr + V

ji-te: [ciku / iku / casu] ma ju: — It is not [cold / giddy / itchy] to me.

to me [cold / giddy / itchy] is not — I do not feel [cold / giddy / itchy]

ji-te: ciku ju-le — It became cold to me.

ji-te: ciku-le — i.e. I felt cold.

(cf. Note 6 of 10.3.1.)

13. R + Pr + V

[pun-e: / thene / dune / mhige: / ñhine:] ciku ma ju: — It is/was not cold [in Poona / here / inside / yesterday / in the afternoon]

kene: ciku ju-i - It will be cold tomorrow.

kene: ciku-i

(cf. Note 6 of 10.3.1.)

For more examples of sentence types 1 to 10 see 7.2.

10.3.2. Circumstantials

Circumstantials are among those constituents of a sentence that lie outside its propositional core. Other such constituents are Adsententials. Circumstantials can occur as an optional element in all the types of the sentences mentioned above.

Circumstantials consist of an AdvP, a PP, or an Embedded sentence. Semantically they convey the sense of Time, Place, Manner (Conduct, Instrument, means etc.), Causal Source, Condition, Purpose etc.

A sentence may contain more than one circumstantial. The position of circumstantials in a given sentence depends upon the sentence type, the type of the circumstantial, the number of circumstantials etc. Broadly the normal sequence within circumstantials is :

Cause + Condition + Time + Place + Purpose + Manner

Illustrations

The circumstantials are bracketed off or underlined for the sake of convenience.

ram [punəe: / mhigə: / ela-khẽ: / bikh nə-yə: / dyes-yagu lagi: / dyes-e: krənti hə:tə / ñhyu ñhyū:] sitə	Ram died [in Poona / yesterday / due to liquor / by eating poison / for the sake of the country / to bring about a revolution in the country / smiling]
ram [wə nape / nəktini / khwə khwẽ:] wənə	Ram went [with him / just now / crying]
ram ji nape dyənə	Ram slept with me.
lẽ: phəsẽ: gənə	Clothes get dried by wind.
ram həwaijəhajẽ: wələ	Ram came by plane.
ram khipə-tẽ: thã: wələ	Ram came up by a rope.
ram chəngu sə:-lẽ: ñhəlẽ: calə	Ram woke up due to your voice.
jĩ: ramyetə kwəthəe: khənə	I saw Ram in the room.
jĩ: ramyetə kəne: napəlae:	I will meet Ram tomorrow.
ramẽ: jitə: pwə-lẽ: swələ	Ram looked at me through the hole.
ramẽ: jitə: kəthĩ: dalə	Ram beat me with a stick.
ramẽ: cəmcã: ja nələ	Ram ate rice with a spoon.
jikə: duru ñəe:tə dhyebə mə ru	I have no money to buy milk.
ramẽ: jitə: tyeləphwən-ẽ: khəbər bilə	Ram gave me the information through telephone.
wə wə: sə ji kəne: iskule: we: mə khu	If it rains I will not come to school tomorrow.

ram cures n̄ne:ta mye ha hā: pyā: wone

Ram went out singing to buy cigarettes

ram mhige: punge: bikh na-ya: sita

Ram died in Poona yesterday by eating poison

ramā: mhige: jite: jigu kwathae: khwa khwā: khā phukke kona

Yesterday Ram told me everything in my room crying

10.3.3. Adsententials

Adsententials are those constituents of a sentence that lie outside the propositional core of the sentence and normally occur, whenever they occur, preceding the core. They modify the sentence as a whole and, more often than not, act as a semantic link between the sentence of which it is a part and the sentence preceding it. Adsententials may consist of a word, a phrase or a clause. Sentence qualifiers (cf 7.3.6.) function as Adsententials. Also refer to 10.5.1(IV).

Illustrations

Adsententials are underlined for convenience.

1. kare '(urging s.o. to act)'. It may imply a request but it is informal. It occurs only with Imperative sentences.

kare thwa chake: yana-byu

Come on do this (for me).

2. bajya dhæ! 'Please' Lit. '(I) will call you grandpa.' It is used only in informal situations with Imperative sentences.

bajya dhæ! pesa! cheke! wana-byu

Please run an errand (for me)

3. chu dhæ! '(expression of irritation due to things not turning up as expected)'. Lit. 'what to say?'

chu dhæ! we he weya me byu!

What to say he did not turn up at all.

4. chu yæ! '(expression of helplessness, despair etc.' Lit. 'what to do?)'

chu yæ! jike! dhyeba he me ru

What to do I don't have any money at all.

chu yæ! abu juigu karme! he cweya te!gu me ru

What to do (I) am not fated to be a father at all.

5. ... ... dhæ!ke dhæ!ke 'In spite of being told/warned... ...'

wene mete dhæ!ke dhæ!ke we wene

In spite of being told/warned not to go he went.

6. la!sa '(expression of suspicion that s.th. may happen contrary to things desired; implicit warning or reminder ="Make it sure that ... ... counterstative..."/'

la!sa che ane weni! hanẽ!

I suspect that you will go there again (which I don't want).

i.e. Make it sure that you don't go there again.

7. dharwe' dharma jĩ' chũ' he me syu'

I swear/By god I don't know anything at all.

8. ñhathe yana' sã' che car baje' bhitre' thene thyeñka'-we' ma'

By any means you should reach here by 4 o' clock.

9. ñhagu sã' mwa' la lwa'-mañka-cwa

Whatever may be the thing leave it, forget it.

ñhagu sã' awã' nisã' ane gubalã' wane mate

Whatever may be the thing from now on never go there.

10. akã' we jã'ce' phel jule

Therefore he failed in the examination.

11. sayed we kane' wai me khu

Perhaps he won't come tomorrow.

12. phu sa ñarka dã' tyae' byu

If (you) can lend (me) five rupees.

13. jyu' sa thulĩ' gakacwa' ta swe

If possible try to manage with this amount.

14. e' (ju') sa che kane' nisã' thene we' mwa' la

If so you don't have to come here from tomorrow onwards.

15. [dhathẽ' dhae' gu ([dhe' / ju']) sa / bastabe'] wã' chũ' he me syu'

[To tell you the truth / In fact] he does not know anything at all.

16. khẽ chu dha: sa weigu nā: ram he me khu
The matter is that his name is not Ram at all.

17. e: (ju:) sā: we niras me ju:
Even then/However/In spite of that he is not disheartened.

18. dhathẽ: sita sa:pe he bā:la:
Really Sita is very beautiful.

10.3.4. Syntactic Function - Morphological Form Correlation

1. S ---- (i) NP-Nom / V-Cop, V-Pt-Cop, V-Intr, V-Pt-Intr, V-Semitr, V-Pt-Semitr, V-Semitr-Fac (cf. Sentence Types: 1,2,3,4,5,6,10 respectively)

(ii) NP-Abl-Erg / V-Tr, V-Ditr, V-Tr-Fac, V-Ditr-Fac (cf. Sentence Types: 7,8,9,11 respectively)

Exception

S ----- NP-Nom / V-Tr /se/ 'know(how)' (cf. S.Type:7)

Note : When a Non-FinP functions as a Subject/Object NP it does not take any case ending.

2. O ----- (i) NP-Nom / Non-Animate } (cf. S.Types:7,8,9,11)
(ii) NP-Obj / Animate }

Note : For greater detail refer to 7.2.7. to 7.2.10.

3. Pt ----- (i) NP-Obj / V-Pt-Cop (cf. S.Type: 2)

(ii) NP-Gen/ V-Existential /da/, V-Pt-Semitr /ju/ (cf. S.Type 4,6 respectively)

(iii) NP-Gen ~ NP-Obj / elsewhere (cf. S.Types: 4,6)

4. Pr ----- (i) AP / V-Pt-Cop (cf. S.Type: 2)

(ii) NP-Nom/(V-Semitr-Fac, V-Ditr-Fac (cf. S.Types: 10, 11 respectively)

(iii) [NP-Nom / NP-Gen / NP-Obj / AP / PP] / V-Cop, V-Tr-Fac (cf. S.Types: 1,9)

5. R ------ [NP + any case ending / AdvP / PP] (cf. S.Types: 5,6,8,10,11)

For Form-Function correlation for cases refer to 9.1.4.

10.4. Newari Sentence Variations

The term "variation" implies the notion of something being 'transformed' from something 'basic'. The 'basic' is the norm and the 'transformed' is its variant.

Here we shall discuss the processes involved in or rules governing the transformation of (1) 'hȇ' -Statements, (2) Exclamatory sentences, (3) Emphatic Sentences, and (4) Interrogative sentences from the basic, simple sentences. This is followed by

enumeration of rules governing (5) Negative transformations. The section concludes with brief notes on (6) Zero Anaphora and (7) Reordering within a Sentence.

Imperative, Optative, Proponent (etc.) sentences need not be discussed here as they are basic sentences in themselves (cf. Aux-Fin Expansion Chart in 10.1.6.1.). Newari has no passivization.

The process of transformation may involve (a) a change in intonation pattern, or (b) an addition of a particle, or both (a) and (b). It may also lead to deletion of certain constituent parts obligatorily or optionally.

10.4.1. hã Statement

When /hã/ is added to a statement at the end of it it suggests that the statement expresses either a cherished traditional belief (usually superstitious) of the speaker's community or a rumour heard by the speaker who is not sure about it.

Examples

kumari jui chunku'me misayata bya' yaima manū yakane si' hã

It is believed that the man, who marries a woman who had become a 'kumari' in her life, dies soon.

(Note' 'Kumari' is a living goddess of Nepal. The living goddess ceases to be the 'Kumari' when she reaches the stage of puberty or if she happened to sustain an injury. A new girl is then selected to be the 'kumari' from among the girls of a specific community. She

must not have reached the stage of puberty nor must she have sustained any injury in her life. Besides she is put to several kinds of tests before being selected as the 'Kumari'.)

khupacī: dume manū: nape bya: yae: me jyu: hẽ

It is believed that one should not marry a person having six fingers.

ciniyate:sẽ: make:yagu nẽ: la na: hẽ

It is said that Chinese eat monkey's flesh as well.

subhas candre bwes hawaijahaj durghatanae: lana: si: gu hẽ

It is said that Subhash Chandra Bose died in a plane crash.

The particle /hẽ/ can be replaced by the finite verb form /dhai/ Lit. 'will say (Non-I)', e.g.

ciniyate:sẽ: make:yagu nẽ: la na: dhai

It is said that Chinese eat monkey's flesh as well.

It is to be noted that in this case the statement is realized as an embedded sentence and that the subject of the matrix sentence is obligatorily deleted.

10.4.2. Exclamation

Exclamatory sentences can be formed in three ways: (1) by changing the intonation pattern, (2) by introducing the sentence by an exclamatory prointensifier, and (3) by an exclamatory particle in itself. Whenever (2) occurs it is often preceded by (3). For (1) refer to 2(b) of 10.4.4. and for a list of exclamatory particles see 7.3.5.2.

Exclamatory particles may occur alone or be followed by a sentence which may be a statement, a question, a command/request, a wish, or an exclamation. The exclamatory sentence, whether it is preceded by an exclamatory particle or not, begins with an exclamatory prointensifier and has its Subject and Verb often deleted.

It is to be noted that exclamatory particles are (minor) sentences (prosententials, to be more accurate) by themselve whether they occur alone or preceding another sentence.

Examples

hare siba bicarā: sa:pahe dukhe sila	Alas! Poor fellow suffered a lot.
dhikkar thuli nẽ: yae: me phu la	Damn it! Can't you do even this much?
syabas n̄habəlẽ: thathe he ya	Well done! Always do like this.
he bhagawan jimi kae:yata chũ:he me jui ma	O God! May no ill-luck befall my son!
wa: guli bā: la:	Wow! How beautiful(it) is!
aha: guli hisi du	Lovely! How charming(it) is!
chye gapae:cakẽ: nawa:	Ugh! How stinking(it) is!
yama:sa gapae:masi dhika:	Fantastic! How big/tall!

10.4.3. Emphasis

An element in a Newari sentence can be emphasized in five ways :

1. by adding an emphatic particle
2. by changing Narrative form into descriptive form
3. by reordering
4. by adding Specific /gu/ and reordering
5. by embedding and reordering

1. by adding Emphatic Particles

(i) he ~ ye 'that particular thing and not anything else as substitute'

Examples

S + R + C + O + V

chā! jite! thaū pyakhā! kyane ma!

you should show me a movie today.

S-emphasized

chā! he ... ...

You (not anyone else) should show me a movie today.

R-emphasized

... jite! he ... ...

You should show me (not anyone else) a movie today.

C-emphasized

... ... thaū he ... ...

You should show me a movie right today (not any other day)

O-emphasized

... ... pyakhẽ! he ...

You should show me a movie (not any other thing as a substitute to it) today.

V-Main emphasized

... ... kyane he ma!

You must show me a movie today.

When the V contains no auxiliary, it is emphasized by changing V into 'V-shortened form + he + V', e.g.

thwe ya Do this! (unmarked)

thwe ya-he-ya Do this! (V-emphasized)

ram kane! mhiti! Ram will play tomorrow(unmarked)

ram kane! mhi-he-mhiti! Ram will play tomorrow (V-emphasized)

Other emphatic particles are :

(ii) nẽ! also (iii) jeke only (iv) la specifically

/nẽ!/, /jeke/ and /la/ can occur wherever /he/ occurs.

(iv) re It can occur only following an Imperative verb form, e.g. kane! wa Come tomorrow!

kane! wa re Come tomorrow (Emphatic)!

(v) ka It can occur only following a finite verb form and it emphasizes the sentence as a whole, e.g.,

ji iskul wane me khu ka chẽ! chu yae! phu

I won't go to school (Emp), What can you do?

(iv) [ebessye / pekka] (nẽ')

ram kane' [ebessye / pekka] (nẽ') wei

Ram will definitely come tomorrow.

2. by changing Narrative form into Descriptive form

V is emphasized by changing it from Narrative form to Descriptive form. This applies to the Past Punctual sense only e.g.

ram mhige' we-la	Ram came yesterday (Plain, unmarked)
ram mhige' we-'	Ram did come yesterday (V emphasized)

3. by reordering

The normal (i.e. unmarked) order of the syntactic units are given in 10.3.1. When there is a change in this normal order the element adjacent to the verb gets focussed, e.g.

ram kwathae'	du		Ram is in the room (Normal order)
Ram in the room	is		
but, kwathae'	ram	du	Ram is in the room
in the room	Ram	is	('Ram' is emphasized)

ramã'	jita'	dhyeba	bile	Ram gave me money. (Normal order)
Ram	to me	money	gave	

but, ramẽ: dhyeba jita: bila Ram money to me gave	Ram gave me money ('to me' is emphasized)
jita: dhyeba ramẽ: bila to me money Ram gave	Ram gave me money ('Ram' is emphasized)

4. <u>by adding Specific /gu/ and reordering</u>

When Specific /gu/ is added to a sentence, the element adjacent to the verb gets focussed, e.g.

ram kwathae: du	Ram is/was in the room(Unmarked)
but, ram kwathae: du gu	Ram was in the room (not anywhere else).
kwathae: ram du gu	Ram (not anyone else) was in the room.
ramẽ: jita: dhyeba bi:	Ram will give me money (unmarked)
but, [ramẽ: jita: / jita: ramẽ:] dhyeba bi: gu	Ram will give me money (not anything else).
[ramẽ: dhyeba / dhyeba ramẽ:] jita: bi: gu	Ram will give money to me (not to anyone else).
[jita: dhyeba / dhyeba jita:] ramẽ: bi:gu	Ram (not anyone else) will give me money.
ram mhige: mhit-ale	Ram played yesterday(unmarked).
but, ram mhige: mhit-u: gu	Ram played yesterday (not any other day).
mhige: ram mhit-u: gu	Ram (not anyone else) played yesterday.

Note

1. Non-Fut Narrative /-ala/ changes into Non-Fut Descriptive /-u:/ before Specific /gu/.
2. In this way even the element that occurs adjacent to the verb in the normal unmarked order can be emphasized. This is not possible in 3 above.

6. by embedding and reordering

An element in a sentence can be emphasized by putting the element towards the end of the sentence followed by optional emphatic particle /he/ and then by obligatory confirmative particle /kha:/ and by reducing the rest of the sentence to an embedded sentence connected by the Specific /gu/

i.e., [XYZE] ------- XYZ gu E (he) kha:
[XYEZ]
[XEYZ]
[EXYZ]

Where E stands for the element emphasized.

Examples

ramã: mhige: sitayate dala (Normal order)
Ram beat Sita yesterday

ramã: mhige: da: gu sitayate (he) kha:
It was Sita whom Ram beat yesterday.
(/sitayate/ 'to Sita' emphasized)

ramā: sitayate da: gu mhige: (he) khe:
It was yesterday that Ram beat Sita.
(/mhige:/ 'yesterday' emphasized)

mhige: sitayate da: gu ramā: (he) khe:
It was Ram who beat Sita yesterday.
(ramā: 'Ram (agent)' emphasized)

The animate Subject can also be emphasized with a slight modification -- replacing Specific /gu/ by Classifier /ma/ and using the Subject in Nominative form irrespective of its form in the normal unmarked sentence, e.g.
mhige: sitayate da: ma ram (he) khe:
It was Ram who beat Sita yesterday.

10.4.4. Questions

In Newari questions can be asked in three different forms:

1. using interrogative pronouns, pro-adjectives, proadverbs or prointensifiers,
2. using interrogative intonation patterns, and
3. adding interrogative particles (question tags).

From a different point of view questions in Newari can be broadly divided into two groups:

(a) First-hand questions, and
(b) Catch-up questions.

First-hand questions are those questions which can be asked without any conversation preceding it. Catch-up questions, on

the contrary, must be preceded by a piece of conversation. The questioner catches up this piece of conversation, usually a statement, made by the addressee and turns it into the question.

From still another point of view questions can be either polarity questions (yes/no answer) or lacuna questions (answer to fill in the lacuna).

Form 1 goes with First-hand Lacunal Questions. Form 2 and Form 3 go with First-Hand or Catch-up Polarity Questions.

1. Questions formed by using Interrogative Pronouns etc.

Examples

we su (khe')	Who is he?
thwe chu (khe')	What is this?
chẽ' su ye'	Who(m) do you like?
chente chu ma'	What do you need?
chente gaña'me misa ye'	What kind of girl do you like?
chente gume misa ye'	Which girl do you like?
chente gugu kalam ye'	Which pen do you like?
chente guli duru ma'	How much milk do you require?
we gane du	Where is he?
we gubele' wei	When will he come?
we thane gwe'ke' wele	How many times did he come here?
ane guli cikm (ju')	How cold is it there?

Note : The particle /hẽ/ added to these questions gives an informal, intimate, casual touch to it, e.g.

ram gena vene	Where did Ram go? (Neutral)
ram gena vene hẽ	Where did Ram go? (Informal)

This particle is added especially in an answer to a door bell, e.g.

[kune / ene] su hẽ	Who is [down there / there]

2. Questions formed by using Interrogative Intonation Patterns

(a) First-hand Questions

Statement	Question	, e.g.
ram site	ram site	
Ram died	Ram died?	

Note : This type of question is rare in Newari. In its place the Q-particle 'la' [redacted] is commonly used (cf. 3. below)e.g.

ram site la	Did Ram die?

(b) Catch-up Questions

Statement	-----	Question!	, e.g.
S_1 ram site		S_2 ram site!	
Ram died		Ram died!?	

This question implies the following senses :

(i) The speaker just hears some one saying ram site 'Ram died'

(ii) This is a piece of news he is hearing for the first time.

(iii) He is surprised and, probably, shocked (he may be delighted, annoyed etc. depending upon the content of the sentence he hears). In other words the sentence is more an exclamation than a question. That is why (iv) He does not anticipate an answer.

3. Questions formed by adding Interrogative Particles

Interrogative particles, when added to statements (i to v below) or imperative sentences (vi & vii below), yield polarity (i.e. Yes/No) questions.

(a) First-hand Questions

(i) la This is the most commonly used question particle for forming polarity questions, e.g.

Statement	Question
cheṅgu nā̃' ram (khe')	cheṅgu nā̃' ram khe' la
Your name is Ram.	Is your name Ram?
cheṅgu nā̃' ram me khu	cheṅgu nā̃' ram me khu la
Your name is not Ram.	Isn't your name Ram?
we mhige' thene' wele	we mhige' thene wele la
He came here yesterday.	Did he come here yesterday?
(ii) (V) la ki (V-Neg)	(English doesn't use this type of question)
cheṅgu nā̃' ram (khe')	cheṅgu nā̃' ram khe' la ki me khu
Your name is Ram.	*Is or Isn't your name Ram?

we thane wala	we thana wala la ki me we'
He came here.	*Did or Didn't he come here?

<u>Note :</u> (V-Neg) la ki (V) is also possible but rare.

(iii) khala The questioner believes that the statement is true.

we mhige' thane wala khala	He came here yesterday, didn't he?
we mhige' thane me we' khala	He didn't come here yesterday, did he?

(iv) kha' la It occurs with <u>hã</u> Statements (cf. 10.4.1). [redacted]
The question is asked to confirm the rumour etc. the questioner has heard e.g.

ciniyate'sẽ' make'yagu nẽ' la nẽ' [hã / dha'gu] kha'la

[It is said that / *That] Chinese eat even monkey's flesh, Is it true?

(v) kha' la sa Same as (iv) except that the questioner in this case is sure that the addressee knows the true answer.

(vi) nhã' ~ nhĩ' It occurs with Imperative sentences, e.g.

kane' wa nhã' Come tomorrow, O.K.?
Come tomorrow, will you?

kane' jhasẽ nhã' Won't you come tomorrow? (Hon.)

(vii) nhā!/nhī! sa _ sa nhā!/nhī!

Same as (vi), but more emphatic, e.g.

kane! wa nhā! sa	Make sure that you come tomorrow.
- kane! wa sa nhā!	

Note : An imperative question differs from a plain imperative in that it offers the addressee an opportunity of saying yes or no.

(b) Catch-up Questions

Catch-up questions are of various kinds. They may be a full sentence or simply a phrase or a word, e.g.,

S_1 :	ji kane! we!	I will come tomorrow
S_2 : (i)	we! khe! la	Will you come?(Are you sure?)
(ii)	dhathē! khe! la	Really?
(iii)	settye	Do you swear?
(iv)	chu dheya	What did you say? (I don't hear you)
(v)	chu dheya!	What did you say?(threatening)

etc.

10.4.5. Negation

Negation of a construction affects its VP only. In other words the process of negation (of a construction -- Finite or Non-Finite) involves conversion of the VP (of the construction) from its affirmative form to its negative form. This conversion is discussed below in terms of 'Affirmative ===== Negative' rules.

The following allomorphic alternations will be relevant in this section:

Non-Fut NARRATIVE ale - - - u: / Neg-- (when PERSISTENT does not follow it)

Non-Fut DESCRIPTIVE u: - - - ale / Neg-- PERSISTENT

IMMEDIATE na - - - ni / Fut + Neg --

IMPERATIVE i - - - te / Neg --

Negative me - - - makhu / Fut (+ COUNTERFACTIVE) --
/ SPECIFIC--(when CONFIRMATIVE does not follow it)

PERSISTENT tini - - - ni / Non-Fut DESCRIPTIVE --
te / Fut + Neg --
ø / Neg + Non-Fut --

CONFIRMATIVE du - - - ru / Neg --

ANTERIOR a: - - - use/ Neg --

Affirmative ===== Negative Rules

The relevant portions in illustrations, are bracketed off [ ].

1. V-Non-Fut (+ PERS) ======= Neg + V-Non-Fut (+ PERS)

Where, V stands for the right most V stem, Main or Aux, of VP (cf. Expansion charts, 10.1.6). This abbreviation holds good for all the rules in this section.

Examples

Affirmative	Negative
we mhiga: tas [mhit-ale]	we mhiga: tas [me mhit-u:]
He [played] cards yesterday	He [did not play] cards yesterday.

mhigə: we tas [mhit-u']	mhigə: we tas [me mhit-u']
He [played] cards yesterday.	He [did not play] cards yesterday.
we tas [mhit-u']	we tas [me mhit-u']
He [plays] cards.	He [does not play] cards.
we tas [mhit-a cwen-e]	we tas [mhit-a me cwẽ']
He [is playing] cards.	He [is not playing] cards.
thəũ-kene' we [ñhabelẽ' mhit-a cwẽ']	thəũ-kene' we [gubelẽ' mhit-a me cwẽ]
These days he [is always (seen) playing)	These days he [is never (seen) playing]
mhigə' we bã'lakə [mhit-e phe-te]	mhigə' we bã'lakə [mhit-e me phu]
Yesterday he [could play] well.	Yesterday he [could not play] well.
we tas [mhit-e phu]	we tas [mhit-e me phu]
He [can play] cards.	He [cannot play] cards.
hi we' sã' we [mhit-ele tini]	waya kwecẽ' mhit-e me tye che'we tini we [me mhit-ele]
Despite bleeding he [kept on playing.]	He [stopped playing] only when his coach told him not to play.
we thəũ-kene' nẽ' tas[mhit-u' ni]	we thəũ-kene' tas [me mhit-ele]
He [still plays] cards these days also. (He has not left his habit of playing cards.)	He [stopped playing/no longer plays] cards these days. (He has left his habit of playing cards.)

2. V-Fut (+ [PERS / IMME]) ======= V-Fut + Neg (+ [PERS / IMME])

Examples

we kene' [mhit-i']	we kene' [mhit-i' makhu]
He [will play] tomorrow.	He [will not play] tomorrow.
we [mhit-a cwan-i']	we [mhit-a cwan-i' makhu]
He [will be playing.]	He [will not be playing.]
we [mhit-e pha-i]	we [mhit-e pha-i makhu]
He [will be able to play.]	He [will not be able to play.]
we [mhit-i' tini]	we [mhit-i' makhu ta]
He [will play nevertheless.]	He [will not play any more.]
we [mhit-i' ne]	we [mhit-i' makhu ni]
He [is about to play (now).]	He [won't have started playing (till now).]

2.1. V-Fut + COUN ======= V-Fut + COUN + Neg
- Neg + V-Fut + COUNT

che du gu sa we [mhit-i' gu]	che dugu sa we [mhit-i' gu makhu] - we [me mhit-i' gu]
Had you been present he[would have played]	Had you been present he [would not have played.]
che du gu sa we [mhit-a cwan-i' gu]	che du gu sa we [mhit-a cwan-i' gu makhu] - we [mhit-a me cwan-i' gu]
Had you been present he [would have kept/been playing.]	Had you been here he [would not have kept/been playing.]

3. SPECIFIC (+ CONF) =========	SPECIFIC + Neg (+ CONF)
we [[mhit-u' / mhit-i'] gu]	we [[mhit-u' / mhit-i'] gu me dhu]
It is he who [[played / will play]]	It is [not] he who [[played / will play]].
we [[mhit-u' / mhit-i'] gu du]	we [[mhit-u' / mhit-i'] gu me ru]
[It is confirmed that] he [[played / will play]]	[It is confirmed that] he [[did not play / will not play]]
4. V-Non-Fin + e [OPT / PROP / POT]r =======	Neg + V-Non-Fin e [OPT / PROP / POT]r
we [mhit-e ma]	we [me mhit-e ma]
[May] he [play!]	[May] he [not play!]
jhi' [mhit-e nu]	jhi' [me mhit-e nu]
[Let] us [play.]	[Let] us [not play]
we [mhit-e phu]	we [me mhit-e phu]
He [may play.]	He [may not play.]
we [mhit-a cwen-e phu]	we [mhit-a me cwen-e phu]
He [may be playing.]	He [may not be playing.]

4.1. V-Non-Fin + PERM$_1$ ========= V-Non-Fin + Neg + PERM$_1$
        e   e

theũ [mhit-e tya']	theũ [mhit-e metya']
We [can play] today.	We [cannot play] today.
(It is permissible by religion)	(It is not permissible by religion) i.e. It is sacrilegeous to play today.

4.2. V + IMP ========= V-Non-Fin + Neg + IMP
                                      e

mhit-i	mhit-e me te
Play!	Don't play!
mhit-a cwẽ	mhit-a cwan-e me te
Keep/Be playing!	Don't keep/be playing!

5. V-Non-Fin ========= Neg + V-Non-Fin

we [mhit-a'] wene	we [me mhit-use] wene
[Having played], he went.	[Without having played], he went. i.e. He went [without playing.]
kerpinthae' ñhi ñhĩ' [wen-egu] bã'-me-la'	sa'tu'thae' [me wen-egu] bã'-me-la'
It is not nice [to go] to other's place everyday.	It is not nice [not to go] where you have been invited.
we-yate [mhitk-ete] swe	we-yate [me mhitk-ete] swe
Try [to make] him [play.]	Try [not to make] him [play].

che [mhit-u] sā' nisē' ... — che [me mhit-u] sā' nisē' ...

From the time you [played]... — From the time you [stopped playing] ...

Note : Whenever the negative marker /ma/ precedes the verb stem the marker /me/ is infixed just before the last syllable of the stem if the latter is multisyllabic, e.g.

natu-la	spoke	namatu-'	did not speak
kutuwa-la	fell down	kutumawa-'	did not fall down

10.4.6. A Note on Zero Anaphora

Pronouns other than the interrogative type (in all their case forms) and demonstrative proadverbs can be optionally deleted if the immediate context, grammatical or situational, makes the reference obvious to the listener.

Illustrations

(che) gubale' waya
When did (you) come?

ji me wa' tele (chē') (jite') piya cwē
(you) keep waiting (for me) till I come.

wa (ji) kane' we' makhu dhaya' wane
Having said "(I) will not come tomorrow", he went.

(ji') chu yae' (ji) abu juigu (jigu)
karme' he cwaya ta'gu me ru

What (am I) to do? (My) becoming a father is not written in (my) 'karma' at all.
i.e., What (am I) to do? (I) am not fated to be a father at all.

(chā') (bi') phu sa (chā') (jite') ñarka dā' tye' byu
If (you) can (give), (you) lend (me) five rupees.

ram iskul wā' bale' (wā') lā' bina napalate
When Ram went to school (he) met Bina on the way.

wasa' ñae'te (jike') dhyeba ma ru
(I) have no money to buy medicine.

wasa' ñae'te (chanke) dhyeba ma ru sa (chā') (the'yagu) gheri bara' ti
If (you) don't have money to buy medicine, (you) pawn (your) watch.

jhi' sā' (the') mā'-abū' dha'gu khā ñane ma'
We should listen to what (our) parents say.

aperesan dhunka' (chā') (the'gu) lha' tuti bā'lake cale'-ye' ji'
After operation (you) will be able to move (your) limbs well.

(waya) kwe'cā' (waite) mhite ma te dhe'wa tini wa ma mhitale
He stopped playing only when (his) coach told (him) not to play.

waya (the') kala' nape khub lwa' ma'
He quarrels a lot with (his) wife.

ñhu'gu kanun anusar (sunanā') ñime kala' te' ma ru
According to the new law (one) cannot keep two wives.

(ame) chu (jī') chake' (ame) swe'
What is (that with you)? Let (me) have a look at (that).

theũ (thana) sũ' ha me wa'

Today nobody came (here).

ji ana thyẽ' bale' (ana) wa waya cwana

When I reached there it was raining (there).

10.4.7. A Note on Phrase Reordering within a Sentence

Broadly speaking ordering of phrases in Newari sentences is very flexible. The normal order of phrases that function as syntactic elements constituting propositional cores of sentences (i.e, S, O, Pt, Pr, R and V) has been shown in 10.3.1. Some common reordering of these elements under specific conditions have also been subsequently noted (cf. Note 2 & 3). Beside these, other reorderings are also possible but rare.

Similarly the normal order of phrases functioning as various circumstantials has been noted in 10.3.2. Variations in the ordering of circumstantials are much more free than variations in the ordering of core elements. Very many permutations are possible (a) within the circumstantials themselves, or (b) across the circumstantials and the core elements. However it is to be noted that Newari sentences almost invariably end in a VP.

Examples

1. we mhiga' aphise' acanak sita

   he yesterday in-office suddenly died

   "He died all of a sudden in the office yesterday."
   (This may be taken to be the unmarked order.)

Reorderings of Circumstantials

we mhige! acanek aphise! site

we aphise! acanek mhige! site

we aphise! mhige! acanek site

we acanek mhige! aphise! site

we acanek aphise! mhige! site

2. wə̃! mhige! jite! aphise! khwe-khwə̃! phukkə̃!-khə̃ kane

he yester-day to me in-office crying-all the while everything told

"He told me everything in the office yesterday crying all the while"

(This may be taken to be the unmarked order.)

Reorderings

wə̃! mhige! jite! aphise! phukkə̃!-khə̃ khwe-khwə̃! kane

wə̃! mhige! jite! phukkə̃!-khə̃ aphise! khwe-khwə̃! kane

wə̃! mhige! phukkə̃!-khə̃ jite! aphise! khwe-khwə̃! kane

wə̃! phukkə̃!-khə̃ mhige! jite! aphise! khwe-khwə̃! kane

phukkə̃!-khə̃ wə̃! mhige! jite! aphise! khwe-khwə̃! kane

wə̃! mhige! aphise! khwe-khwə̃! phukkə̃!-khə̃ jite! kane

wə̃! mhige! aphise! khwe-khwə̃! jite! phukkə̃!-khə̃ kane

wə̃: mhige! aphise! jite! khwe-khwə̃! phukkə̃!-khə̃ kane

wə̃: mhige! jite! aphise! khwe-khwə̃! phukkə̃!-khə̃ kane

wə̃: jitə! mhige! aphise! khwe-khwə̃! phukkə̃!-khə̃ kane

jitə: wə̃! mhige! aphise! khwe-khwə̃! phukkə̃!-khə̃ kane

mhigə: jitə: ephise: khwə-khwə̃: phukkə̃:-khə̃ wə̃: kanə

mhigə: jitə: ephise: khwə-khwə̃: wə̃: phukkə̃:-khə̃ kanə

mhigə: jitə: ephise: wə̃: khwə-khwə̃: phukkə̃:-khə̃ kanə

mhigə: jitə: wə̃: ephise: khwə-khwə̃: phukkə̃:-khə̃ kanə

mhigə: wə̃: jitə: ephise: khwə-khwə̃: phukkə̃:-khə̃ kanə

so on and so forth.

(With 6 variables without any combinatory restrictions, $\lfloor 6 = 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 = 720$ permutations are possible in the above case)

It must be admitted, however, that not all the permutations are equally acceptable, nor are they without stylistic differences in use.

10.5. Newari Sentence Combinations

Sentences in Newari may be combined in two different ways: (1) by embedding and (2) by conjoining. This section is limited to embeddings that end up as clauses. Those embeddings that end up as non-finite phrases have been already described in 10.1, especially in 10.1.6.

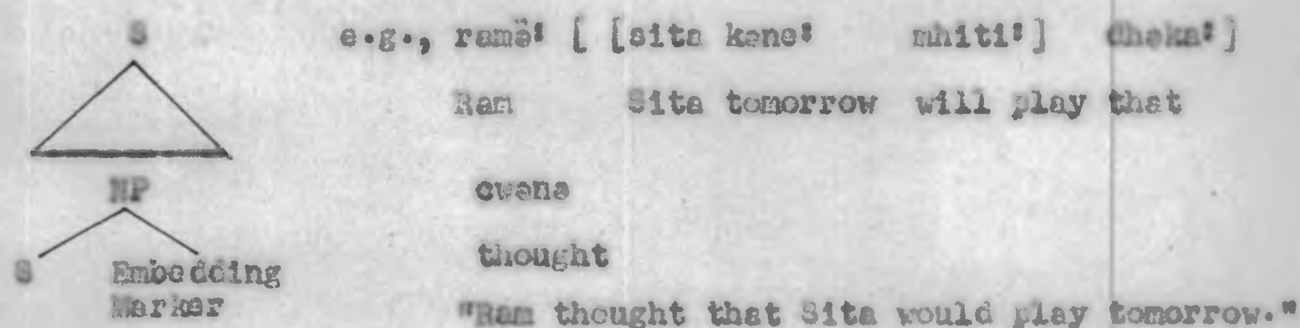
10.5.1. Newari Sentence Embedding

There are four types of sentence embedding in Newari :

I. Sentence embedded as Noun Phrase,
II. Sentence embedded as Adjective Phrase,
III. Sentence embedded as Relative Clause,
IV. Sentence embedded as Circumstantial.

In illustrations the embedded sentences along with subordinating conjunctions etc. serving as embedding markers, if any, are enclosed within square brackets [ ] to make them conspicuous.

I. Embedded as Noun Phrase



Most of the verbs (of the matrix sentence) take /dheka'/ as the embedding marker. Some verbs take /dheka'/ in free variation with /dhaigu/. Still some others take /dheka'/, /dhaigu/, and /dhaigu-khẽ/ as free variants. The verb /dha/ 'say' takes the marker /dheka'/ only optionally.

Examples

ramẽ' [[sita kane' mhiti'] dheka' ~ dhaigu] asa-yana cwanĝudu
Ram is hoping that Sita will play tomorrow.

ramẽ' [[sita kane' mhiti'] dheka' ~ dhaigu ~ dhaigu-khẽ] syu'
Ram knows that Sita will play tomorrow.

ramẽ' [[sita kane' mhiti'] (dheka')] dhala
Ram said that Sita would play tomorrow.

The embedded sentence may be a statement, a question, a request/order, a wish, a proposal etc., e.g.

ramā' [[sita kane' mhite phu] (dhaka')] dhale
Ram said that Sita might play tomorrow.

ramā' jita' [[[sita kane' mhiti'gu khe' la]] dhaka'] nene
[sita gubale' mhiti'gu]

Ram asked me [if Sita would play tomorrow].
[when Sita would play.]

ramā' jita [[kane' mhiti] (dhaka')] dhale
Ram told me to play tomorrow.

ramā' [[sita jā'ce' pas jui ma] (dhaka')] dhale
Ram wished that Sita might pass in the examination.

ramā' jita' [[chake' mhite] (dhake')] dhale
Ram asked me to let him play once.

ramā' jita' [[pyakhā' swa' wane mā] (dhaka')] dhale
Ram proposed to me that we should go to see a movie.

Pronouns in the embedded sentence may be in 'direct' or 'reported' form. This has however no relevance to the syntactic construction of the sentence, nor to the morphological form of the verb. In other words Newari makes no distinction between 'Direct' and 'Indirect' reporting, e.g.

jī: weita [[cha/wa kane: tyai] (dhaka:)] dheya
I to him you/he tomorrow will win (marker) said
"I told him that he would win tomorrow."

wã: jita: [[jī:/wã: chañgu/jigu nã: me syu:](dhaka:)] dhala
he to-me I/he your/my name not know (marker) said
"He told me that he did not know my name."

(Note: It is to be noted that in English 'direct reporting' and 'embedding connective' are mutually exclusive. In Newari the 'embedding connective' occurs whether the embedded sentence is reported 'directly' or 'indirectly'.)

The Subject of the embedded sentence is regularly deleted when it is identical with the matrix Subject, e.g. [Regular deletion is shown by double brackets (( ))]

jī: ((ji)) kane: mhit-e (dhaka:) dha-ya
I I tomorrow will play that said
'I said (that) I would play tomorrow.'

chã: ((cha)) kane: mhit-e (dhaka:) dha-la
'You said (that) you would play tomorrow.'

wã: ((wa)) kane: mhit-e (dhaka:) dha-la
'He said (that) he would play tomorrow.'

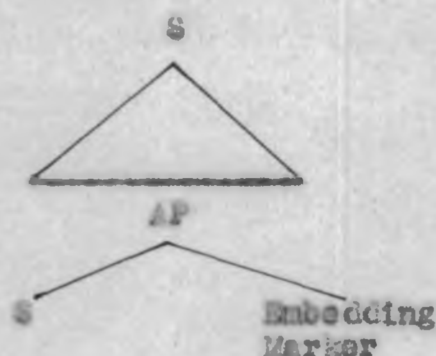
This is understandable because the so-called Non-First Person verb forms (in embedded sentences) automatically convey the sense of identity of Subjects of the embedded sentence and the matrix sentence (cf. Note 2, end of 9.2.5.). This deletion

is as natural as the deletion of the Subject in imperative sentences.

Extraposition of sentences embedded as an NP (to the end position of matrix sentences) is extremely rare in Newari. If at all it occurs, it occurs only in educated speech as a result of the influence of English pattern on it.

The NP made out of the embedded sentence can occupy any position in the matrix sentence that an NP normally occupies. However, unlike other NPs, it cannot take case endings, nor can it take postpositions following it.

II. Embedded as Adjective Phrase



The classifiers /ma/ and /gu/ function as embedding markers here. /ma/ occurs when the AP qualifies an animate noun; /gu/ occurs when it qualifies a non-animate noun.

Examples

[jī: khana] [[gu]] sima 'the tree that I saw'
I saw that tree

[jī' khena] [[me]] [manū' / khica] — 'the [man / dog] that I saw'

[wē' yai] [[gu]] jya — 'the work that he will do'

chimi [ela' ma twē'] [[ma]] pasa — 'Your friend who does not drink liquor'

The AP made out of the embedded sentence can occupy any position in the matrix sentence that an AP normally occupies except that it cannot occur predicatively.

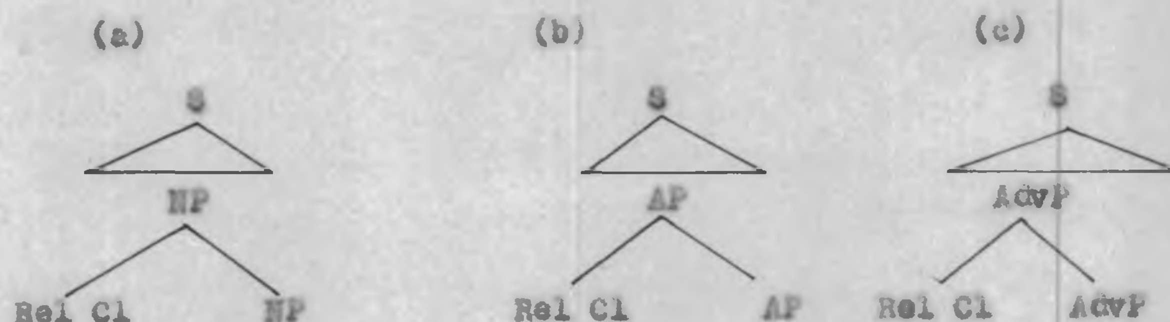
III. Embedded as Relative Clause

Sentences embedded as a relative clause may be divided into three groups:

(a) embedded in NP of the matrix sentence,

(b) embedded in AP of the matrix sentence, and

(c) embedded in AdvP of the matrix sentence.



The embedded relative clause is marked off by [ ] and the phrase in which it is embedded is marked off by [[ ]] in the illustrative examples below.

Examples

(a) syam-yake [ram-yata chu cij ma'] [[we cij]] du

with-Shyam to-Ram what thing is-needed that thing exists

'What thing is needed to Ram, that thing exists with Ram.'

"Shyam has that thing which Ram needs."

syam-yake [ram-yake guli dhyeba du] [[uli dhyeba]] me ru

with-Ram how-much money exist that-much money not-exist

'How much money exists with Ram, that much money does not exist with Shyam'

"Shyam does not have that much money as much of which Ram has."

"Shyam does not have as much money as Ram has."

syam-ã' [ramã' guli ela' twane phu] [[uli la' he]]

shyam Ram how-much liquor can-drink even that-much water

twane me phu

can-not-drink.

'How-much water Ram can drink, even that much water Shyam cannot drink'.

i.e. "Shyam cannot drink even that much of water as much of which Ram can drink liquor."

"Shyam cannot drink even as much of water as Ram can drink liquor."

(b) syam [ram guli gã'si] [[uli gã'si]]

shyam Ram to-what-extent lean(is) to-that-extent lean

me ju'

is-not

'To what extent Ram is lean, to that extent Shyam is not lean'

"Shyam is not lean to that extent to which extent Ram is lean."

"Shyam is not as lean as Ram."

rita nā: [sita guli hisi du] [[uli he hisi]] du

Rita also Sita charming is (emp.)

"Rita is also charming to that extent to which extent Sita is charming"

"Rita is also as charming as Sita."

thane [ane guli ciku] [[uli ciku]] me ju:

here there cold(is)

'To what extent it is cold there, to that extent it is not cold here.'

"It is not as cold here as it is there."

weigu nuga: nū: [weigu khwa: guli haku] [[uli he haku]]

his heart also his face black(is)

'To what extent his face is black, to that extent his heart is also black.'

"His heart is also as black as his face."

(c) syam [ram guli bā:lake khē-lhae: sa:] [[uli bā:lake]]

well talk knows

khē-lhae: me sa:

'How well Ram knows how to talk, that well Shyam does not know how to talk.'

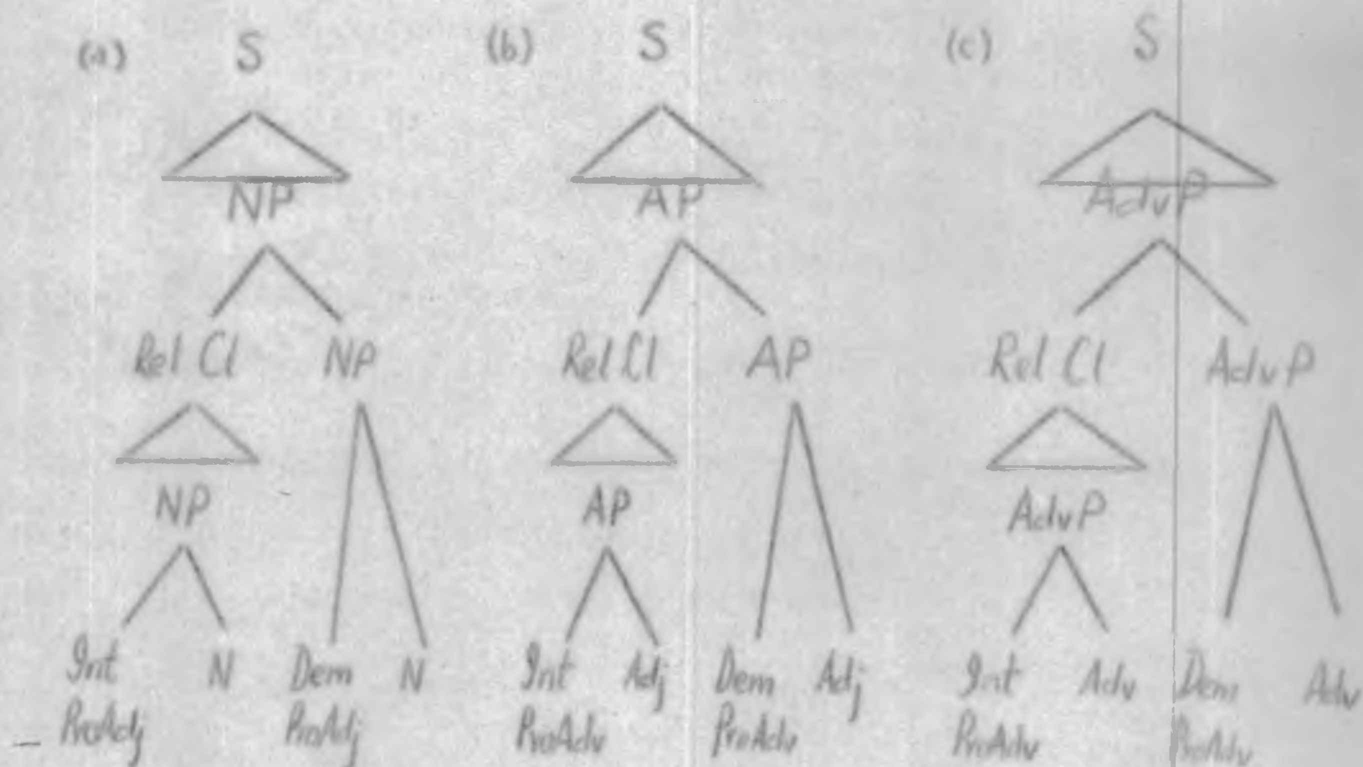
"Shyam does not know how to talk as well as Ram does."

"Shyam cannot talk as well as Ram."

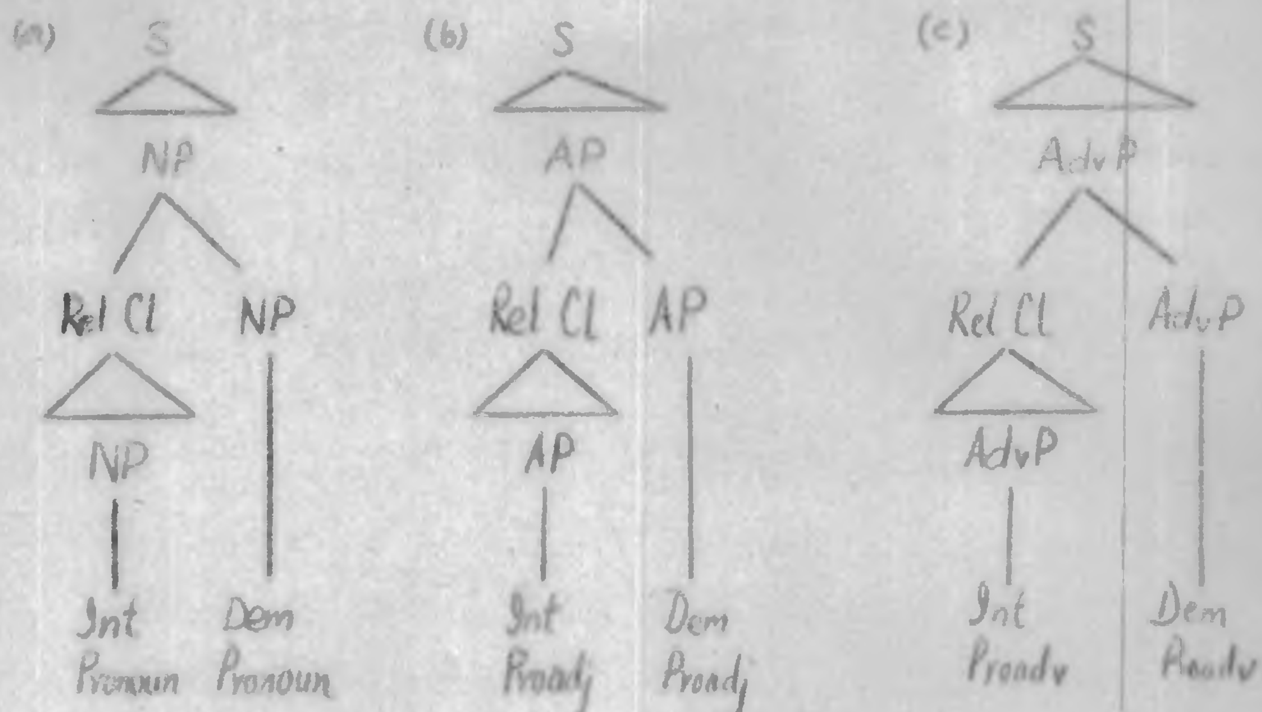
syam nē: [ram guli yakena bwē:-wene phu] [[uli he yak ene]]
fast can-run
bwē:-wene phu

'How fast Ram can run, that fast Shyam can also run."
"Shyam can also run as fast as Ram."

It is to be noted that the relative clause contains, among other things, a phrase corresponding to the phrase in which it is embedded -- the former begins with an interrogative Proadjective/Proadverb and the latter begins with a demonstrative (remote) counterpart. Thus the relative clause embeddings shown above can be further specified as follows:



The NP, AP, AdvP in which the relative clause is embedded as well as the corresponding NP, AP, AdvP respectively of the relative clause may consist of a single Pronoun, Pro-adjective, Proadverb respectively, these being demonstrative in the former phrases and interrogative in the latter phrases. Thus



<u>Examples</u>

(a) syam-yake [ram-yata chu ma'] [[wo]] du
with-shyam to-Ram what is-needed that exists
'What is needed to Ram, that exists with Shyam.'
"Shyam has that which Ram needs."
"Shyam has what Ram needs."

(b) bastebe! ram [we gethe khene du] [[ethe]] me ju!
in-fact Ram he like-what appears-to-be like that is-not
'Like what he appears-to-be, in fact like that Ram is not.'
"In fact Ram is not as he appears to be."

(c) syam [ram guli bwẽ!-wane phu] [[uli]] bwẽ!-wane me phu
Shyam Ram how-much can-run that much cannot run
'How much Ram can run, that much Shyam cannot run.'
"Shyam cannot run that much as much of which Ram can."
"Shyam cannot run as much as Ram."

The relative clause may undergo further transformations resulting in a PP which ends in /ti/ 'as much as' if the relativization is quantitative, in /thẽ!/ 'like' if it is qualitative or of manner and in /gu/ 'which' or /me/ 'who(m), which' if it is identificatory.

(For the sake of convenience we shall call the phrase in which the relative clause is embedded as Ph_1, and the corresponding phrase in the relative clause as Ph_2.)

The transformation takes place in the following steps:

1. Delete the demonstrative pronoun/proadjective/proadverb from Ph_1 and the corresponding interrogative pronoun/ proadjective/proadverb from Ph_2.
2. Insert the appropriate postposition (ti or thẽ! or gu or me) in the relative clause at the end position.
3(a) Delete the leftover of Ph_2 if it is identical with that of Ph_1.

(b) Delete VP from relative clause if it is identical with the VP in matrix sentence. They are to be considered identical even though one is in affirmative form and the other in negative form.

(Note: 1. Step 3(b) is applicable only if the said deletion takes place in step 3(a).

2. Rules 1, 2 and 3 are not ordered.)

<u>Examples</u>

syam-yake [ram-yake guli dhyeba du] [[uli dhyeba]] me ru

1
==== syam-yake [ram-yake dhyeba du] [[dhyeba]] me ru

2
==== syam-yake [ram-yake dhyeba du ti] [[dhyeba]] me ru

3
==== syam-yake [ram-yake du ti] [[dhyeba]] me ru

3b
==== syam-yake [ram-yake ti] [[dhyeba]] me ru

"Shyam does not have as much money as Ram has"

syamā: [ramā: guli ela: twene phu] [[uli la: he]] twene me phu

1
==== syamā: [ramā: ela: twene phu] [[la: he]] twene me phu

2
==== syamā: [ramā: ela: twene phu ti] [[la: he]] twene me phu

"Shyam cannot drink even as much of water as Ram can drink liquor."

syam [ram guli bā:lake khā-lhae: se:] [[uli bā:lake]] khā-lhae: me se:

1
===== syam [ram bā:lake khā-lhae: se:] [[bā:lake]] khā-lhae: me se:

2 ===== syam [ram bā:lake khẽ-lhae: sa: thẽ:/ti] [[bā:lake]]
khẽ-lhae: me sa:

3 ===== syam [ram khẽ-lhae: sa: thẽ:/ti] [[bā:lake]] khẽ-lhae: me sa:

3b ===== syam [ram thẽ:/ti] [[bā:lake]] khẽ-lhae: me sa:

syamyake [ramyata chu cij ma:] [[we cij]] du

1 ===== syamyake [ramyata cij ma:] [[cij]] du

2 ===== syamyake [ramyata cij ma: gu] [[cij]] du

3 ===== syamyake [ramyata ma: gu] [[cij]] du

"Shyam has got the thing which Ram needs."

syamyake [ramyata chu ma:] [[we]] du

1 ===== syamyake [ramyata ma:] du

2 ===== syamyake [ramyata ma: gu] du

"Shyam has what Ram needs."

The relative clause can be pulled out and extraposed at the beginning of the matrix sentence, e.g.

1.(ia) syamyake [ramyata chu cij ma:] [[we cij]] du

(ib) syamyake [ramyata ma: gu] [[cij]] du

(iia) syamyake [ramyata chu ma:] [[we]] du

(iib) syamyake [ramyata ma: gu] du

2(a) syam [ram guli gẽ:si] [[uli gẽ:si]] me ju:

(b) syam [ram thẽ:/ti] [[gẽ:si]] me ju:

3(a) syam [ram guli yakana bwẽ-wane phu] [[uli yakan]] bwẽ:-wan
me phu

(b) syam [ram thẽ:/ti] [[yakana]] bwẽ:-wane phu

Extraposed

1(ia) [ramyate chu cij ma:] syamyake [[we cij]] du

(ib) [ramyate ma: gu] [[cij]] syamyake du

(Note: *[ramyate ma: gu] syamyake [[cij]] du
i.e., the noun qualified by the adjectival relative clause ending in gu/me must follow it immediately.)

(iia) [ramyate chu ma:] syamyake [[we]] du

(iib) [ramyate ma: gu] syamyake du

2(a) [ram guli gẽ:si] syam [[uli gẽ:si]] me ju:

(b) [ram thẽ:/ti] syam [[gẽ:si]] me ju:

3(a) [ram guli yakane bwẽ:-wane phu] syam [[uli yakane]]
bwẽ:-wane me phu

(b) [ram thẽ:/ti] syam [[yakane]] bwẽ:-wane me phu

The relative clause can also be extraposed at the end of the matrix sentence provided that it begins with the interrogating pronoun/proadjective/proadverb. The matrix sentence may or may not begin with the corresponding demonstrative pronoun/proadjective/proadverb, e.g.

1(ia) syamyake [[we cij]] du [chu cij ramyate ma:]

[[we cij]] syamyake du [[chu cij ramyate ma:]

(iia) syamyake [[we]] du [chu ramyate ma:]

[[we]] syamyake du [chu ramyate ma:]

2(a) syam [[uli gē:si]] me ju: [guli ram gē:si]

[[uli gē:si]] syam me ju: [guli ram gē:si]

3(a) syam [[uli yakene]] bwǣ:-wane me phu [guli yakene ram bwǣ:-wane phu]

[[uli yakene]] syam bwǣ:-wane me phu [guli yakene ram bwǣ:-wane phu]

The relative clauses which have undergone further transformations (i.e. (b) examples given above) cannot be transposed at the end position of the matrix sentence.

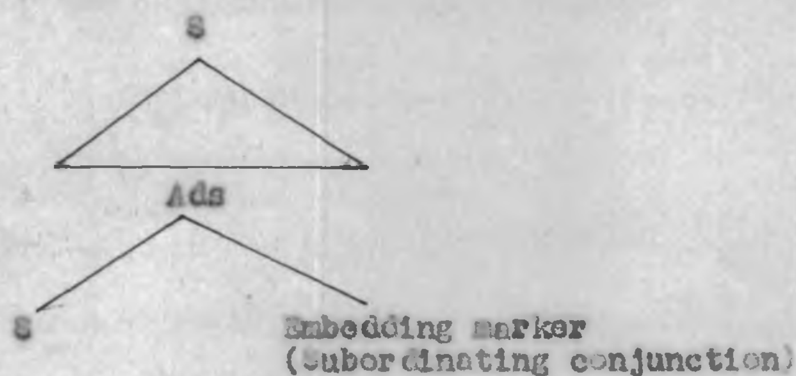
Phrase reordering within relative clause and within matrix sentence is as normal as it is within a simple sentence (cf. 10.4.7.), e.g.

'[ramyate chu cij ma:] syamyake [[we cij]] du'

can be reordered as :

[[ramyate chu cij ma:] / [chu cij ramyate ma:]] [syamyake [[we cij]] du / [[we cij]] syamyake du]

IV Embedded as *Circumstantials*



Connected by /dha'sa/sa/ 'if'

[[[wa wale] dha'sa]] ji we' makhu
[[[wa we'] sa]]

rain comes if I will not come.

"I will not come if it rains".

(Note: /dha'sa/ occurs if the verb is in Narrative form and /sa/ occurs if it is in Descriptive form)

Connected by /gulĩ'/ 'because'

[[wa we'] gulĩ'] ji mhiga' we' ma phata

"Because it rained I could not come yesterday."

Connected by /sã'/ 'notwithstanding (even if; although; no matter wh-)'

[[wa we'] sã'] ji we'

Even if it rains I will come.

[[gẽ'si (ju')] sã'] ram sikka he bela'

Although (he) is lean Ram is very strong.

[[che ñhathæ: wā̃:] sā̃:] chē̃: gubelē̃: sukhe si makhu

No matter where you go you will never be happy.

[[chē̃: ñhakkwa he bwē̃:] sā̃:] che pas jui makhu.

No matter how hard you study you will not pass.

Connected by th- ... /ki/ (where th- is a ProAdv) 'so...that'

[[ramē̃: waite <u>th</u>uli dale] <u>ki</u>] wa murchya he jule

Ram beat him <u>so</u> much <u>that</u> he became senseless.

Connected by /ki/ 'whenever'

[[wa wale] ki] jigu mha syana weigu

Whenever it rains my body starts aching.

Connected by /bale:/ 'when'

[[wa wa:] bale:] ji chyē̃: ma ru

When he came I was not at home.

Connected by /khunu/ 'the day...'

[[wa wa:] khunu] ji chyē̃: ma ru

The day he came I was not at home.

Connected by /dhæ:ka dhæ:ka/ 'in spite of being asked to...'

[[wane mate] dhæ:ka dhæ:ka] wa wane

In spite of his being asked not to go he went

<u>Note:</u> Unlike in English these embedded clauses (which function as [redacted] Circumstantials) cannot occur at the end of the matrix sentence.

10.5.2. Newari Sentence Conjoining

Sentences in Newari can be conjoined with the following coordinating conjunctions :

A. /ki ... ki/ 'either ... or'; /na ... na/ 'neither ... nor'

B. /nã: ... nã:/ 'as well as'

C. /ki/ 'or'

D. /tara/ 'but'

The coordinating conjunctions /wa/ 'and' and /(ju:)sã: ... (ju:)sã:/ 'either ... or' cannot conjoin sentences. They can conjoin only phrases, i.e. phrases other than finite verb phrases (cf. 10.2.).

In cases where one would expect sentences conjoined by an 'and', Newari has the following possibilities:

(i) Sentences with a shared Subject with successive embeddings (the first in thesecond, the second in the third and so on), the embedded sentences functioning as AdvP of time, e.g.

ram [[thana waya:] mhita:] wana

[[Having come here], having played], Ram went away.

(ii) Sentences (with or without a shared Subject) in succession where the last sentence is introduced by /ale/ 'then', e.g.

ram thana wala mhitale ale wana

Ram came here, played, then went away.

ram wele ele syam wene

Ram came, then Shyam went away.

(iii) Sentences in succession with no overt conjunction where all but the last have an inconclusive sentence tone (this is minimal conjoining), e.g.

ram wele syam wene

Ram came, Shyam went away.

ramā' bajā' thale syamā' mye hala bina pyakhā' lhule

Ram played the instrument, Shyam sang, Bina danced.

ram tyata syam buta ji tya nā' me tya' bu nā' me bu'

Ram won, Shyam lost, I neither won nor lost.

The sentences to be conjoined (by the conjunctions A, B, C, D above) must have parallel internal order of phrases.

A. <u>Sentences conjoined with /ki ..ki/ 'either ... or';
/ne ...ne/ 'neither ... nor'</u>

The sentences to be conjoined (S_1 and S_2) may have no shared element or may have one or more shared elements. S_1 and S_2, therefore, can be represented as

XAY and XBY

which, when conjoined, yield

(a) X&AY&BY

or (b) &XAY&BY

where, (i) A and B stand for unshared elements,

X and Y stand for shared elements, and

& ... & stands for /ki ... ki/ or /ne ... ne/.

(ii) X or Y or both X and Y may be void.

(iii) (a) is common and (b) is rare.

Examples

ram theũ wei	Ram will come today.
syam kene' weni'	Shyam will go tomorrow.

ne ram theũ wei ne syam kene' weni'

Neither Ram will come today nor Shyam will go tomorrow.

ram wei	Ram will come
syam wei	Shyam will come
ki ram wei ki syam wei	Either Ram will come or Shyam will come.

ram thene wei	Ram will come here.
ram ene weni'	Ram will go there.

(a) ram ne thene wei ne ene weni'

Ram will neither come here nor go there.

(b) ne ram thene wei ne ene weni'

Neither Ram will come here nor go there.

ram theũ wei	Ram will come today
ram kene' wei	Ram will come tomorrow

(a) ram ki thaũ wei ki kanẽ: wei

Ram will either come today or come tomorrow.

(b) ki ram thaũ wei ki kanẽ: wei

Either Ram will come today or will come tomorrow.

ramẽ: jite: pyakhẽ: kyeni: Ram will show me a movie.

ramẽ: jite: dhyeba bi: Ram will give me money.

(a) ramẽ: jite: ne pyakhẽ: kyeni: ne dhyeba bi:

Ram will neither show me a movie nor give money.

(b) ne ramẽ: jite: pyakhẽ: kyeni: ne dhyeba bi:

Neither Ram will show me a movie nor give money.

ramẽ: jite: dhyeba bi: Ram will give me money

ramẽ: weite dhyeba bi: Ram will give him money

(a) ramẽ: ki jite: dhyeba bi: ki weite dhyeba bi:

Ram will either give me money or give him money.

(b) ki ramẽ: jite: dhyeba bi: ki weite dhyeba bi:

Either Ram will give me money or will give him money.

B. Sentences conjoined with /nẽ: ... nẽ:/ 'as well as'

The conjunction /nẽ: ... nẽ:/ can conjoin sentences only if they have identical VPs. Symbolizing the sentences to be conjoined as XAY and XBY these, when conjoined, yield

(a) XA nẽ: Y Bnẽ: Y

(b) XA nẽ: B nẽ: Y

where, (i) A and B stand for unshared elements, and X and Y stand for shared elements.

(ii) X may be void

(iii) (a) is more common, (b) is less common.

Examples

ram wei	Ram will come.
syam wei	Shyam will come.

(a) ram nẽ: wei syam nẽ: wei

(b) ram nẽ: syam nẽ: wei

Ram as well as Shyam will come.

ram theũ wei	Ram will come today.
ram kane: wei	Ram will come tomorrow.

(a) ram theũ nẽ: wei kane: nẽ: wei

(b) ram theũ nẽ: wei kane: nẽ: wei

Ram will come today as well as tomorrow.

ramẽ: chente dhyeba bi:	Ram will give you money.
ramẽ: jite: dhyoba bi:	Ram willgive me money.

(a) ramẽ: chente nẽ: dhyeba bi: jite: nẽ: dhyeba bi:

(b) ramẽ: chente nẽ: jite nẽ: dhyeba bi:

Ram will give money to you as well as me.

The conjunction /nẽ: ... nẽ:/ can conjoin negative constructions as well, e.g.

ram wei mekhu	Ram will not come.
syam wei mekhu	Shyam will not come.

(a) ram nə̃' wei mekhu syam nə̃' wei mekhu

(b) ram nə̃' syam nə̃' wei mekhu

Ram as well as Shyam will not come.

C. Sentences conjoined with /ki/ 'or'

The conjunction /ki/ 'or' can conjoin only polarity questions with the question particle /la/. Symbolizing the sentences to be conjoined as

XAY la and XBY la

these, when conjoined, yield

(a) XAY la ki BY

(b) XAY ki BY

where, (i) A and B stand for unshared elements, and X and Y stand for shared elements.

(ii) X or Y or both X and Y can be void

(iii) (a) is more common, (b) is less common.

Examples

ram thene weigu la	Will Ram come here?
syam ane weni'gu la	Will Shyam go there?

(a) ram thene weigu la ki syam ane weni'gu

(b) ram thene weigu ki syam ane weni'gu

Will Ram come here or Shyam go there?

che jithæ! we! la	Will you come to me?
ji chanthæ! we! la	Shall I come to you?

(a) che jithæ! we! la ki ji chenthæ! we!

(b) che jithæ! we! ki ji chenthæ! we!

Will you come to me or Shall I come to you?

che thane we! la	Will you come here?
che ane wane la	Will you go there?

(a) che thene we! la ki ane wene

(b) che thene we! ki ene wene

Will you come here or go there?

chẽ! jite! pyakhẽ! kyene la	Will you show me a movie?
chẽ! jite! dhyeba bi! la	Will you give me money?

(a) chẽ! jite! pyakhẽ kyene la ki khyeba bi!

(b) chẽ! jite! pyakhẽ! kyene ki dhyeba bi!

Will you show me a movie or give money?

chente cya ye! la	Do you like tea?
chente kaphi ye! la	Do you like coffee?

(a) chente cya ye! la ki kaphi ye!

(b) chente cya ye! ki kaphi ye!

Do you like tea or like coffee?

ram theũ wei la	Will Ram come today?
ram kane! wei la	Will Ram come tomorrow?

(a) ram theũ wei la ki kane' wei

(b) ram theũ wei ki kane' wei

Will Ram come today or come tomorrow?

The conjunction /ki/ 'or' can join phrases as well. Refer to 10.2.

D. Sentences conjoined with /tara/ 'but'

The conjunction /tara/ is placed between S_1 and S_2, the sentences to be conjoined. The phrases in S_2 having identical reference with the corresponding phrases in S_1, if any, are optionally deleted. However the VP is never deleted.

Examples

ram wala tara syam ma wa'

Ram came but Shyam did not come.

ram phel jula tara esã' weigu khwa' khyũ' maju'

Ram failed but nevertheless his face is not dark.

'Ram failed but still he is not sad.'

ram pas la jula tara (wəya) thard dibhijan wala

Ram did pas but (he) got third division.

ram pas la jula tara (wa) thard dibhijane' pas jula

Ram did pass but (he) passed in third division.

ramã' jita' dhyeba bila tara jĩ' (wa dhyeba/wa) ma kaya

Ram gave me money but I did not take (that money/it).

<u>Note !</u> The conjunction is borrowed from Nepali and is used mainly in educated speech.

So far we have discussed conjoining of two sentences only. Conjoining of more than two sentences is also possible with /ki ...ki/ 'either ... or', /na ... na/ 'neither ... nor', /nə̃ː ... nə̃ː/ 'as well as' and /ki/ 'or' each of ki/na/nə̃ː/ki being repeated as many times more as many more number of sentences to be combined.

P A R T T H R E E

COMPARISON OF NEPALI AND NEWARI WITH ENGLISH

AND

ITS PEDAGOGIC APPLICATIONS

CHAPTER ELEVEN

COMPARISON OF PHONOLOGY

The phonologies compared here are essentially word phonologies. The English phonology taken as a point of reference is essentially that of the Received Pronunciation (RP) as described by A.C. Gimson in his book 'An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English', 1970. Help has also been sought occasionally from 'The Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English', Third Edition, 1974 by A.S. Hornby and others.

The chapter is divided into four main parts :

1. Phonemic Differences
2. Phonetic Differences
3. Distributional Differences
4. Pedagogic Applications

11.1. Phonemic Differences

11.1.1. Consonants

English Consonants : p, b, t, d, č, ǰ, k, g, m, n, ṅ,
f, v, θ, ð, s, z, š, ž, r, l

Note : t, d are alveolar like n, s, z, r, l.

Nepali Consonants: p, ph, b, bh, t, th, d, dh, ṭ, ṭh, ḍ, ḍh, c, ch, j, jh, k, kh, g, gh, m, n, ṅ, s, r, l

Note : t, th, d, dh are dental, unlike n, s, r, l which are alveolar.

Newari Consonants: p, ph, b, bh, t, th, d, dh, c, ch, j, jh, k, kh, g, gh, m, mh, n, nh, n̈, n̈h, ṅ, s, r, l, lh

Note : t, th, d, dh are alveolar like n, nh, s, r, l, lh.

+ English, -Nepali : f, v, θ, ð, z, š, ž

+ English, -Newari : f, v, θ, ð, z, š, ž

- English, + Nepali: t, d (dental); ph, th, ṭh, ch, kh, bh, dh, ḍh, jh, gh

Note : We have taken English t, d, and Nepali ṭ, ḍ as phonemically equivalent, the difference being taken up below as a phonetic one.

- English, + Newari: ph, th, ch, kh, bh, dh, jh, gh, mh, nh, n̈, n̈h, lh

<u>Observations</u>

1. All the three languages have aspirated and unaspirated series of voiceless stops phonetically. Whereas aspiration is phonemic with Nepali and Newari voiceless stops, it is allophonic with English voiceless stops.

2. Aspiration carries a high degree of distinctive load (or, to use the term of Bruner, Goodnow, and Austin, 1956, p.31, a high "degree of criteriality") in Nepali and more so in Newari consonantal systems whereas it is only marginally distinctive in English consonantal system.

3. English has a good number of fricatives; Nepali and Newari have only one (and the same) fricative each.

4. In the region of apical stops English has the alveolar /t, d/, Nepali has the dental series /t, th, d, dh/ and the retroflex series /ṭ, ṭh, ḍ, ḍh/, and Newari has the alveolar series /t, th, d, dh/. In speaking English, Nepali speakers tend to substitute the retroflex for the alveolar.

11.1.2.<u>Semivowels</u>

English Semivowels : y, w, h

Nepali Semivowels : y, w, h

Newari Semivowels : y, w, h

Observation : No phonemic difference.

11.1.3.<u>Vowels (Covowels included)</u>

English Vowels : i, u, e, ə, æ, ʌ, ɔ, i:, u:, ə:, ɔ:, a:, e^{i}, a^{i}, $ɔ^{i}$, $ə^{u}$, a^{u}, $i^{ə}$, $u^{ə}$, $e^{ə}$, also: word accent

Nepali Vowels : i, u, e, ə, o, a, also: nasalization

Newari Vowels : i, u, e, ə, a, i:, u:, e:, ə:, a:, æ:,
also: nasalization

+ English, -Nepali : æ, ʌ, ɔ, i:, u:, ə:, ɔ:, a:, e^i, a^i, $ɔ^i$, $ə^u$, a^u, $i^ə$, $u^ə$, $e^ə$, also: word accent

+ English, -Newari : æ, ʌ, ɔ, ɔ:, e^i, a^i, $ɔ^i$, $ə^u$, a^u, $i^ə$, $u^ə$, $e^ə$, also: word accent

- English, + Nepali: o, a, also: nasalization

Note : The vowel [a:] appears in Nepali as a variant of /a/.

- English, + Newari: a, e:, æ:, also: nasalization

Note : The vowel [æ:] appears in English as a variant of /æ/.

Observations

1. English has both monophthongs and diphthongs; Nepali and Newari have only monophthongs. On the other hand, vowel sequences are common in Nepali and Newari but relatively rare in English.
2. Word-accent is phonemic in English (though with a low distinctive load); Nepali and Newari have no distinctive word-accents as such.
3. Nasalization is phonemic in Nepali and Newari; it is not so in English (English vowels are rarely and non-distinctively nasalized).

4. Vowel length is phonemic in Newari and English; it is not so in Nepali. It is, however, to be noted that, unlike in Newari, i/u/ɔ are distinguished from iː/uː/ɔː respectively in English not solely because of their quantitative differences but also because of their qualitative differences.

11.2. Phonetic Differences

11.2.1. Consonants

1. The phonetic correlates of English /f, v, θ, ð, š, ž/ have no equivalents in Nepali and Newari. The phonetic correlate of English /z/, i.e. [z] is seen in the phonetic correlates of Nepali and Newari /j/, i.e. [z] which occurs intervocalically and word finally.
2. The aspirated phonetic correlates of English /p, t, č, k/, i.e. [pʰ, tʰ, čʰ, kʰ] are more or less similar to the aspirated correlates of Nepali /ph, ṭh, ch, kh/ and Newari /ph, th, ch, kh/ but for the following differences :
   (i) The differences noted in 3 and 4 below.
   (ii) Phonetically the English aspirates show cavity friction, i.e. the stop is followed by the voiceless counterpart of the following continuant; Nepali and Newari aspirates, on the other hand, show local friction at the glottis. This difference has a very important bearing on pedagogy.

(iii) Whereas Nepali and Newari aspirates are strongly and uniformly aspirated wherever they occur. English aspirates may be strongly or weakly aspirated as follows :

A. English voiceless stops are strongly aspirated when they occur syllable initially, before an accented vowel.

B. They are weakly aspirated when they occur

(a) syllable initially, before an unaccented vowel,

(b) after a fortis fricative, before an accented vowel,

(c) after /s/ in the immediately preceding syllable, and

(d) word finally if they are released at all.

C. They are unaspirated after /s/ in the same syllable.

3. English /t, d/ and Newari /t, th, d, dh/ are alveolar; Nepali /ṭ, ṭh, ḍ, ḍh/ are postalveolar.

4. Nepali and Newari /c, j/ vary from laminoalveolar to laminopalatal. In any case they are produced further front in the mouth than English /č, ǰ/. English /č, ǰ/, in addition, tend to have lip rounding which is not found in Nepali and Newari /c, j/. The overall effect is that the English sibilants have a 'darker' quality and the Nepali and Newari sibilants a 'clearer' quality.

5. English nasals and lateral are syllabic when they occur word finally, after a consonant; Nepali and Newari nasals and laterals simply do not occur in this environment and elsewhere they are never syllabic.

6. English /r/ is an approximant except intervocalically and after /θ/ when it is a tap. Nepali and Newari /r/, on the other hand, are approximants initially, taps intervocalically, and trills elsewhere. In addition, English /r/ is postalveolar whereas Nepali and Newari /r/ are alveolar.

7. English /l/ is velarized (and hence of a 'darker' quality) when it occurs word finally or before a consonant; Nepali and Newari /l/ are never velarized.

8. Nepali and Newari voiced consonants are more or less uniformly voiced; English voiced consonants, on the other hand, are devoiced, partially or completely (when they are devoiced, it is solely their lenis feature that distinguishes them from their voiceless counterparts which are always fortis) in at least one of these environments : (i) word initially, (ii) word finally, (iii) following a voiceless consonant. To be more specific :

A. voiced stops and fricatives are partially devoiced in word initial and final positions.

B. nasals are partially devoiced following a voiceless consonant.

C. lateral, approximant, and semivowels (/w/ and /y/) are completely devoiced following a strongly accented voiceless stop, but they are only partially devoiced when (a) they occur following a voiceless stop which, in turn, is preceded by /s/, or (b) when they are preceded by an unaccented or weakly accented voiceless consonant.

9. In the word final position English voiceless stops are usually unreleased and the oral closure of these stops is often reinforced by a glottal closure; their Nepali and Newari counterparts are usually released in this environment.

10. Nepali /ḍ/ has a flap variant with or without vocalic off-glide accompanying it; English and Newari /d/ do not have such a variant.

11. Nepali and Newari /ph, kh/ have affricate and fricative variants; English /p, k/ have no such variants.

12. Unlike English and Newari, Nepali consonants are palatalized before a front vowel or /y/.

13. Unlike English and Newari, Nepali has two series of apical stops.

14. Unlike English, Nepali and Newari have aspirated voiced stops.

15. Unlike English and Nepali, Newari has aspirated nasals and lateral.

11.2.2. Semivowels

1. Nepali and Newari /h/ are always voiced; English /h/ is voiced only when it occurs between voiced sounds.
2. Nepali and Newari /y, w/ are breathy following /h/ or a voiced aspirated stop; English /y, w/ simply do not occur in this environment. On the other hand, English /y, w/, unlike Nepali and Newari /y, w/, may be partially or completely devoiced (cf. 8c of 11.2.1.).

11.2.3. Vowels

Quantitative Differences

1. English long vowels and diphthongs are slightly longer than Nepali vowels, but considerably shorter than Newari long vowels.
2. English short vowels are as long as Newari short vowels, but considerably shorter than Nepali vowels.

Note : Vowels in English are relatively longer before voiced consonants and word finally than before voiceless consonants. This, phonetically speaking, results in three distinctly comparable vowel lengths as follows :

V:	V·	V
bee, bead	beat, bid	bit

The /iː/ of words like 'beat' is distinguished from the /i/ of words like 'bid' mainly on the basis of the difference in their qualities including tense/lax feature.

Nepali V is as long as English V·; Newari V is as long as English V, but Newari Vː is considerably longer than English Vː.

Qualitative Differences

Once long vowels and diphthongs are established as separate phonemes as distinct from short vowels and monophthongs respectively, English vowels show little variation in the quality of their phonetic correlates in different environments. (/ə/ and /əː/ are two exceptions with which a great latitude of tongue height is possible, varying from half-close to half-open.) Nepali and Newari vowels, on the other hand, show slight variations in their quality in different environments. (For details refer to 1.3.4. and 6.3.3. respectively.)

Ideally, the best comparison of the vowels is the environmentwise comparison. As it is not intended to go into such minute details here, the non-nasalized V (in the environment CVC) for Nepali and the non-nasalized short V (in the environment CV #) for Newari are chosen, rather arbitrarily, as norms for the sake of convenience in carrying out their qualitative comparison with their English counterparts. Thus the Nepali or Newari vowel in question will be this norm vowel unless otherwise mentioned.

1. English /i:/ has the same quality as Newari /i/, but is slightly retracted than Nepali /i/. English /i/ is considerably centralized than Nepali or Newari /i/.

2. English /u:/ has the same quality as Newari /u/, but is slightly fronted than Nepali /u/. English /u/ is considerably centralized than Nepali or Newari /u/.

3. English /e/ has the same quality as Newari /e/, but is much lower than Nepali /e/. Newari /e/, when preceded by /y/, has the same position as the starting point of English /e^{i}/; Nepali /e/ is slightly higher than this point. The starting point of English /e^{ə}/ is further below.

4. Nepali /o/ is considerably higher and rounder than English /ɔ:/.

5. Nepali /ə/ has the same quality as English /ə/; Newari /ə/ and /ə:/ are slightly retracted than either of them. Newari /ə/ following /w/ has almost the same position as the starting point of English /ə^{u}/ which has a lip-rounding akin to that of Newari /ə:/ following /w/.

6. Nepali /a/ and Newari /a/ are half way between English /ʌ/ and the starting point of /a^{u}/ in its high-low dimension, and between the starting point of English /a^{i}/ and /a:/ in its front-back dimension.

Comparison of English Vowels with Nepali and Newari Vowels

□ Cardinal Vowels

○ English Vowels

◇ NepaliVowels

▽ Newari Vowels

11.3. Distributional Differences

The main distributional differences between English on one hand and Nepali and Newari on the other lie in the way these languages form sequences within a word of (i) consonants, (ii) consonant(s) + semivowel, (iii) vowel + semivowel + vowel, and (iv) vowels.

11.3.1. Consonant Sequences

Barring the following exceptions, Nepali and Newari do not admit of consonant sequencing word initially as well as word finally :

1. initial sCr sequences in a few tatsam Sanskrit words like /stri/ 'woman' and /smriti/ 'memory, memorial' in Nepali and in a single English loanword /sprin/ 'spring' i.e. device of twisted or coiled metal or wire' in Nepali and Newari,
2. initial sC and Cr sequences in Nepali and only in non-native words in Newari,
3. initial Cl sequences in a few English loanwords like /glas/ 'glass' and /plasṭik/ 'plastic' in Nepali and Newari,
4. final CC sequences in a few proper nouns like /anand/ 'name of a male person' and /birgenj/ 'name of a town in Nepal' and a few English loanwords like /benc/ 'bench' and /silk/ 'silk' in Nepali and Newari.

However it is to be noted that these sequences are maintained only rarely and that too only in the educated speech. In uneducated speech and in the majority of educated speech these sequences are broken by introducing (i) an intrusive /i/ initially in initial sequences beginning with /s/, (ii) an intrusive /i/ or /ə/ between the consonants of other initial CC sequences, and (iii) an intrusive /ə/ at the end of the final CC sequences, or an intrusive /i/ inserted between the consonants of the final CC sequences, e.g.

(i)	stri	istri	woman; iron(device)
	smriti	ismriti	memory, memorial
	sprin̊	isprin̊	spring (device)
	stər	istər	standard
	skul	iskul	school
(ii)	krisnə	kirisnə	a male name
	brət	bərtə	fast (N)
	glas	gilas	glass
	plesʈik	pəlasʈik	plastic
(iii)	anənd	anəndə	a male name
	birgənj	birgənjə	a town in Nepal
	benc	bencə	bench
	silk	silik	silk

English, on the other hand, admits of upto three-consonant sequences initially and four consonant sequences finally with the following limitations:

1. In initial $C_1C_2C_3$ sequences C_1 has to be /s/; C_2 has to be /p/, /t/ or /k/; and C_3 has to be /r/ or /l/.

2. In initial C_1C_2 sequences C_2 has to be one of these : /r, l; p, t, k, m, n/ where /p, t, k, m, n/ can occur only if C_1 is /s/.

3. Most common word-final consonant sequences are those formed as a result of suffixation of an allomorph of plural number or of genitive case or of third person, singular number, present tense -- [s] or [z] -- or an allomorph of past tense -- [t] or [d] -- or the ordinalization/nominalization marker [θ]. However other combinations are also abundant in final CC sequences, less so in final CCC sequences, but do not occur at all in final CCCC sequences. Final CCCC sequences are rare. Some of them are as follows:

-mpts	prompts	-lfθs	twelfths
-lkts	mulcts	-ksθs	sixths
-lpts	sculpts	-ntθs	thousandths
-ksts	texts	-mpst	glimpsed

11.3.2. Consonant(s) + Semivowel Sequences

Initial Cy and Cw sequences are observed in all the three languages. English has, in addition, CCy and CCw sequences as well.

11.3.3. Vowel + Semivowel + Vowel Sequences

The VyV, VwV, and VhV sequences do not occur within a simple word in English; but in Nepali and Newari they do. In other words, unlike in Nepali and Newari, semivowels do not occur intervocalically in English except in complex words such as 'New York', 'nowhere', and 'know-how' or across words such as 'to you', 'high wall' and 'near him'.

11.3.4. Vowel Sequences

In Nepali VhV sequences are maintained only in slow and careful speech. In normal colloquial speech they are realized as VV sequences. Such VV sequences, i.e. the VV sequences formed as a result of elision of intervocalic /h/, are numerous. In fact almost any two of Nepali vowels can combine, in either order, to form such a sequence (cf. 1.5.2.).

The same is true of Newari but here, in addition to /h/, the /g/ of the classifier/specific-aspect-marker /gu/ and the h/y of the emphasis marker ha/ye also get deleted when they occur intervocalically in the normal colloquial speech (cf. 6.5.2.).

Leaving these sequences apart, Nepali and Newari have the following VV sequences :

Nepali : ui, ei, ai, əu, au, oi, iu

Newari : ui, ei, ai, əu, au

Comparing these sequences with English diphthongs : e^{i}, a^{i}, $ɔ^{i}$, $ə^{u}$, a^{u}, $i^{ə}$, $u^{ə}$, $e^{ə}$, the following disparities stand out :

1. English does not have diphthongs comparable to Nepali ui, ei, and iu and Newari ui, and ei.

2. Nepali and Newari do not have vowel sequences comparable to English e^{i}, $i^{ə}$, $u^{ə}$, and $e^{ə}$. Newari, in addition, does not have a vowel sequence comparable to English $ɔ^{i}$.

VVV sequences also occur in Nepali and Newari. In Nepali they occur mainly in passive verb phrases (cf. 5.4.3.) and in Newari they occur as a result of elision of intervocalic g, y, h, e.g.

<u>Nepali</u>

pa-i-e	were found
ga-i-e-na	did not go (passive)
di-i-e la	will be given
dho-i-e- cha	happened to be washed
tuh-i-eko (bacca)	(the baby) that was aborted
-----tu-i-eko (bacca)	(the baby) that was aborted

<u>Newari</u>

su-ya-gu	-----	su-i-gu	-----	su-i-u	whose (s.th.)?
we-ya-gu	-----	we-i-gu	-----	we-i-u	his/her (s.th.)
bi-ya-gu	-----	bi-a-gu	-----	bi-a-u	(s.th. I/we) gave
ya-i-gu	-----	ya-i-u			(s.th. you/he/she/ they) will do.

The only VV sequences found in English are the sequences consisting of 'a diphthong + ə' the /ə/ of which may be either an inseparable part of a word or a suffix added to a root. However in these sequences the diphthong is maintained as it is only in slow and careful speech; in normal or rapid speech it is reduced to a lengthened monophthong, e.g.

Noah	$nə^{u}ə$	nə·ə
fire	$fa^{i}ə$	fa·ə
our	$a^{u}ə$	a·ə
player	$ple^{i}ə$	ple·ə
slower	$slə^{u}ə$	slə·ə
higher	$ha^{i}ə$	ha·ə
employer	$implɔ^{i}ə$	implɔ·ə

11.3.5. <u>Other Significant Observations</u>

1. In Nepali geminates occur freely; in Newari they occur only in a few words most of them being borrowed from Nepali (cf. 6.5.1.); in English they do not occur at all.
2. In Nepali /r/ occurs freely before a consonant as well as word finally; in Newari /r/ occurs in these environments mainly in a few Nepali loanwords; in English /r/ cannot occur at all before a consonant and it does not occur word-finally [redacted] except when the next word begins with a vowel and follows without pauses.

3. Newari shows yu/iu contrast (cf. 6.2.2.); Nepali has iu sequence but not the yu one; English, on the contrary, has yu but not iu.

4. In English most of the vowels occur initially, medially and finally. However the following limitations may be noted:

(i) /ə/ occurs only in unaccented syllables;
/əː/ occurs only in accented syllables.

(ii) only /ə/, /i/ and /u/ can occur in totally unaccented syllables.

(iii) /e/, /æ/, /ʌ/, and /ɔ/ do not occur finally.

(iv) all long vowels and /u/ do not normally occur before /ŋ/.

(v) /u/ and /uə/ do not occur initially.

For other significant distributional limitations in Nepali and Newari refer to 1.6. and 6.6. respectively.

11.4. Pedagogic Applications

The phonological errors committed by the speakers of Nepali and Newari learning English can be divided into two types. The first type comprises errors committed due to the lack of exact correspondence between the sound system of English and that of Nepali or Newari so that items in English are rendered by near-equivalents available in the native language acting as a filter language (and, in case

of Newari, in the additional filter language -Nepali).
For example, use of clear 'l' for English dark 'l' , replacement of English ʌ by a, pronouncing English words like 'skin' with an initial intrusive i as [iskin], and pronouncing the word 'contrast' the same way whether it is used as a noun or as a verb are clear instances of errors of this type.

The second type of errors are those errors which are committed mainly due to the inconsistency within the English language itself in its correlation between sound and symbol. When the learner pronounces the pairs of words idle/idol, Stephenson/Stevenson etc. differently they commit this second type of error. On the other hand when he pronounces 'farm' and 'warm' with the same vowel sound he again commits this second type of error.

Clearly errors of the first type are committed largely due to filter-language interference whereas this interference has nothing to do with the second type of errors which can be committed by any foreign learner irrespective of his linguistic background.

We shall first discuss the first type of errors committed or likely to be committed by the speakers of Nepali and Newari in the light of our comparative study. I shall also be using my own knowledge of the common problems they encounter and of the frequent errors they commit while learning English. Often the suggestions to overcome the problems and to remedy the errors are implicit in our discussion of problems and errors

itself. However they will be made explicit whenever such explicitness will be helpful in making a point.

The sources possibly leading to the second type of errors will be hinted at later.

11.4.1.Consonants

In Nepali consonants are palatalized before a front vowel. Carrying forward this native habit Nepali speakers tend to palatalize English consonants as well in this environment, e.g. 'pin' [$p_y$in], 'pen' [$p_y$en] etc.

Newari speakers also commit this error in spite of the fact that the contrast between Ce and Cye does exist in Newari. This unexpected error occurs in Newari English perhaps because they learn English through the filter language -Nepali.

11.4.2.Stops

1. Phonetically Nepali and Newari, like English, have both aspirated and unaspirated voiceless stops. As such, apparently, Nepali and Newari speakers should have little difficulty in learning English voiceless stops. However they are found to be problematic as the learners tend to pronounce these stops without any aspiration not only after /s/ in the same syllable (where it is correct), but everywhere. The following facts account for this error :

(i) Aspirated voiceless stops in English differ from those of Nepali and Newari. The former involve cavity friction (i.e., the stop is followed by the voiceless counterpart of the following continuant) and the latter glottal friction. Besides aspiration varies in its prominence from strong to weak with the variation in the environment. As a result Nepali and Newari speakers rightly feel that English aspirates are not the same as the ones they have in their language.

(ii) Aspiration is allophonic in English whereas it is phonemic in Nepali and Newari. The speakers of Nepali and Newari, conditioned to look upon [p]/[p^h], [k]/[k^h] etc. as two distinct sound units each, naturally hesitate to use what they consider as two distinct sound units for a single sound unit /p/, /k/ etc. in English.

(iii) English correlation between sound and symbol is misleading. For example, ph (in 'phase', 'physics' etc.) and th (in 'thank', 'thick' etc.) are used to represent the sounds [f] and [θ] respectively. (Their obvious correlation would have been to the sounds [p^h] and [t^h] respectively.) The Nepali and Newari speakers, who learn spoken English primarily and mainly through written English, are naturally carried away by this tricky correlation. Partly due to this reason and partly because Nepali and Newari do not have the fricative sounds [f] and

[θ] which therefore sound like [p^h] and [t^h] to their ears, they use [p^h] and [t^h] (the latter is dental in Nepali, but alveolar in Newari) for English [f] and [θ]. Now having fixed [p^h] and [t^h] for English [f] and [θ] respectively, they have no alternative but to use [p] and [t] (the latter is postalveolar in Nepali but but alveolar in Newari) for English /p/ and /t/ respectively which is supported by the natural correlation between sound and symbol.

So while teaching English voiceless stops to the speakers of Nepali and Newari care should be taken that these stops are aspirated in the proper environments. Pedagogically the varying amounts of aspiration may be overlooked, so that the learner merely needs to learn that English voiceless stops are to be aspirated everywhere (including positions before l and r) except when they occur following s in the same word or word-finally where they are not to be aspirated. They should also be made aware of the fact that English voiceless stops in word final position are not only unaspirated, but are often unreleased and reinforced by glottal closure. Also enough attention should be given to make them aware of the phonetic difference between [p^h] and [f] between [t^h] and [θ], and between English aspiration and Nepali/Newari aspiration.

2. In addition to the error of aspiration (or unaspiration to be more accurate), Nepali and Newari speakers also make some

errors in the point of articulation of English /č ǰ/ which are wrongly pronounced, after their native /c j/, much franker in the mouth.

Nepali speakers, in addition, tend to substitute Nepali postalveolar /ṭ ḍ/ for English alveolar /t d/.

3. Nepali and Newari voiceless stops are relatively less fortis than their English counterparts so that Nepali/Newari rendering of words like 'pea' and 'cap' as [pi:] and [kæp] may be confused with the words 'bee' and 'cab' respectively by the native speakers of English.

4. English /b g/ pose no problem worth mentioning. Nepali and Newari learners of English of course tend to voice them fully in all environments.

11.4.3. Fricatives

Fricatives are the chief stumbling block to the Nepali and Newari students as Nepali and Newari do not have any of the English fricative other than /s/ as a phoneme. Phonetically [z] and [š], however, do occur as variants of /j/ and /s/ respectively.

Nepali and Newari speakers commonly render English f, v, θ, ð, z, š, ž as p^h, b^h, t^h, d, j, s, j respectively, t^h, d being dental in Nepali but alveolar in Newari. Thus in Nepali or Newari English the phonemic contrast between

/ǰ/, /z/, and /ž/ is neutralized as also between /s/ and /š/. In addition, in Newari English the contrast between /d/ and /ð/ is also neutralized. As a result the Nepali and Newari learners pronounce the following pairs of words exactly in the same way: jeep/zip (because the contrast between /iː/ and /i/ is also neutralized), jest/zest, jew/zoo ('jew' is pronounced wrongly without y.), lodge/laws (both pronounced [lɔz] so that the distinction between [dʒ] and [z] as well as that between [ɔ] and [ɔː] is neutralized.), major/measure, see/she, so/show, same/shame, sue/shoe etc. Newari speakers in addition, pronounce each of the pairs day/they, die/thy, den/then etc. alike.

This may naturally lead to misunderstanding. Misunderstanding may also result from the replacement of English [f], [θ] by Nepali/Newari English [p^h], [t^h], respectively. For example fan' when pronounced as [p^hæn] may easily be misunderstood for 'pan'. Similarly fast, fin, fee, thin, thank, three, and through may respectively be misunderstood for past, pin, pea, tin, tank, tree and true. (Some of these pairs are rarely misunderstood when they occur in larger contexts because, as they belong to different word-classes, the context makes it clear which is which, e.g. 'three' cannot be misunderstood for tree and vice versa if they occur in phrases or sentences.)

The substitution of [b^h] for [V] produces a heavy foreign accent, but does not lead to misunderstanding.

11.4.4. Other Continuants (or Sonorants)

1. No consonants can be syllabic in Nepali and Newari. Therefore the speakers of these languages tend to substitute the syllabic nasals and laterals by the nasal or lateral in question preceded by an intrusive vowel which can be ə, e or i, e.g. [m̩], [n̩], and [l̩] of 'prism', 'sudden', and 'little' are respectively pronounced as [əm], [en], and [il].

2. English lateral is dark (i.e. velarized) word finally and before a word final consonant, e.g., 'mill' [miɫ] and 'milk' [miɫk]. Elsewhere it is clear (i.e. not velarized.). Nepali and Newari have only clear lateral and therefore the speakers of these languages substitute it for both clear as well as dark lateral in English.

3. English /r/ and /l/ are devoiced following a voiceless consonant, but the Nepali and Newari speakers tend to pronounce them voiced and the /r/ in this environment in addition, tends to be pronounced a trill instead of an approximant. For example 'tree' and 'please' are pronounced [tri] and [pliz] instead of [tʰɹ̥i/tɹ̥i] and [pʰl̥iz/pl̥iz].

11.4.5. Semivowels

English semivowels pose no problem to the speakers of Nepali and Newari except that they tend to voice /h/ everywhere and pronounce /w/ with slightly less lip rounding.

11.4.6. Consonant Sequences

One of the major problems for the speakers of Nepali and Newari learning English is the consonant sequences in English. (Nepali and Newari do not admit of initial and final sequencing of consonants with a few exceptions.) The most notable one is the initial sC(C) sequences which are often pronounced by Nepali and Newari students with an initial intrusive i, e.g. 'skin' is pronounced [iskin].

This error can be possibly corrected by asking the students pronounce the words in question with a lengthened s at first and then gradually cutting it short to the normal length, e.g. ssssskin -- ssaskin -- sskin -- sskin -- skin.

Equally or, perhaps, more difficult ones are the final sequences of four or some of the three consonants. Words containing these sequences tend to be pronounced by dropping the middle consonant(s) of the sequence, e.g.

Words	Correct pronunciation	Wrongly pronounced as
twelveth	[twelfθ]	[twelt^h]
wants	[wɔnts]	[wans] (like 'once')
friends	[fɹendz]	[p^{h}rens]
texts	[teksts]	[teks] (like 'takes')

Some final CC sequences are also found somewhat difficult e.g. 'eightth', 'watched', 'friend', 'second' etc.

The fact that the final sequence of a consonant + a syllabic sonorant is pronounced with an intrusive vowel (and consequently making the syllabic consonant non-syllabic) has been already mentioned above.

11.4.7. Vowels

The problems regarding vowel pronunciation are numerous and varied. It will not be an exaggeration to say that there is hardly any vowel that is pronounced accurately by the speakers of Nepali and Newari learning English. This is understandable because our comparative study of English vowels with those of Nepali and Newari clearly reveals that there is hardly any vowel which is exactly identical to a Nepali or a Newari vowel.

However the main areas of difficulty can be specified as follows :

1. Short/Long Contrast (i/i:, u/u:, ɔ/ɔ:, ə/ə:)

In general short vowels tend to be pronounced slightly longer and long vowels slightly shorter so that the short/long contrast is neutralized in Nepali and Newari English. For instance, the speakers of Nepali and Newari pronounce 'live' and 'leave' alike. Similarly, bit and beat; sin and seen; full and fool; cot and caught etc.

This neutralization is understandable in Nepali English because Nepali does not make short/long contrast. But it is unexpected in Newari English as Newari does have short/long contrast. This unexpected happening may be partly because English long vowels are considerably shorter than Newari long vowels and partly because Newari speakers learn English in the same situation as the Nepali speakers do and with Nepali as a filter language.

2. Diphthongs

English has these diphthongs : e^i, a^i, $ɔ^i$, $ə^u$, a^u, $i^ə$, $e^ə$ $u^ə$. All of these diphthongs are problematic to the Nepali and Newari learners in one way or the other. However diphthongs of special difficulties out of these are e^i, $ɔ^i$, $ə^u$, $e^ə$ and $u^ə$.

a^i and a^u are the easiest diphthongs for Nepali and Newari learners to learn. However they tend to pronounce them not as diphthongs but as vowel sequences ai and au respectively giving equal prominence to either of the vowels in each sequence.

e^i is pronounced as e neutralizing the distinction between /e^i/ and /e/. For example wet and wait are pronounced alike. So are met and mate, as also tell, tall and tale. This is true of both Nepali and Newari English.

$ə^u$ is pronounced o in Nepali and we(:) in Newari. This leads to neutralization of /ɔ/, /ɔ:/ and /$ə^u$/ phonemes (cf. 2 (iii) below).

ɔ^{i} is pronounced wai both in Nepali and Newari English.

i^{ə}/e^{ə} contrast is neutralized both being realized as i(y)a in Nepali and Newari English, e.g. here, hear/hair, hare are all pronounced alike. 'near' rhymes with 'bear'; 'here' with 'there' in Nepali and Newari English.

u^{ə} is sometimes pronounced as u(w)ə (e.g. the word 'doer' [du(w)ər]) and sometimes as o in Nepali and we in Newari. In the latter case the u^{ə}/ə^{u} contrast is neutralized, e.g. poor/pour are pronounced alike.

3. <u>ʌ, ɔ, ɔ: vowels</u>

We have already noted in (1) above that the distinction between ɔ and ɔ: is neutralized in Nepali and Newari English. In this section we shall therefore represent both of these by ɔ.

Nepali and Newari do not have ʌ and ɔ vowels. As a result ʌ is always substituted by ə. ('must' rhymes with 'first') ɔ however has various substitutions. In words like cot, caught, call it is substituted by ə; in words like wasp, want, war, watch, walk, wall by 'a' (which is also used to substitute English a:); and in words like fog, fodder, four, force by o in Nepali and we(:) in Newari (which is also used to substitute English ə^{u}).

These substitutions result in the neutralization of the following contrasts:

(i) ɔ/ɔ:/ /ə/ə:

The vowels in all of these words are pronounced alike : cot/ caught, call/ cut/ corrupt/ curse.

(ii) ɔ/ɔ:/a:

The vowels in these words are pronounced alike : want, wasp/ war, watch, walk, wall/ car, card, past, calm.

(iii) ɔ/ɔ:/$ə^u$

The vowels in the following sets of words are pronounced alike: moss/ more/ most

fog, fodder/ four, (be)fore/ for, focus

politics, porridge/ pour, pore, port/ pole, poll, post

4. Vowel Sequences

The speakers of Nepali and Newari often pronounce English vowel sequences with an intrusive y or w depending upon the written shape of the words concerned, e.g. 'mayor' is pronounced [meyər] and 'flower' is pronounced [p^hlawər].

11.4.8. Word accent and Vowels

In English the placement of (primary) accent in a word may change with the change in the function of the word and with the shift of accent the vowels, in turn, may change in their

quality. For example the word 'record' is pronounced [ˈrekɔːd] when it functions as a noun, but [riˈkɔːd] when it functions as a verb. Similarly, 'contrast' as a noun is pronounced [ˈkɔntraːst] but as a verb it is pronounced [kɔnˈtraːst]. The word 'relate' is pronounced [rileit], but its derivative 'relative' is pronounced [ˈrelətiv].

This shows that word accent in English is closely related to the vowel system. As such, while teaching vowel system, word accent should also be taught side by side.

As all these things are unknown in Nepali and Newari, this is an area where the speakers of Nepali and Newari unmistakingly commit mistakes.

11.4.9. Errors arising out of false analogy within English

Here we shall talk about errors that the learners of English language may commit due to the in-built inconsistencies with the English language itself, mainly in its correlation between sound and symbol.

The glaring examples of this inconsistency is that in English the same written symbol may represent several different sounds and conversely, the same sound may be represented by several different written symbols.

Examples

Single spelling, multiple sound-values

g in gesture, target; th in thank, that, Thomas; ch in orchard, Chicago, Michal; x in exit, exist, luxury, luxurious etc. etc. (Similar vowel lists can be added abundantly.)

Multiple spellings, single sound-value

[k] in king, car, neck, technique;

[f] in fat, phase, rough, chiff etc. etc.

(Similar vowel lists can be added abundantly.)

Spelling without sound-value

r in car, card etc; h in hour, ghost, rhyme etc.; l in calm, walk etc, k in know, knowledge etc.; p in psalm, psychology ; b in lamb, comb etc. ; g in sing, singing, singer etc.

Sound without a corresponding spelling

The intrusive r between two vowel sounds across words as in indiar en pakistan 'India and Pakistan'.

The Nepali and Newari speakers learning English are apt to make the following errors because of such inconsistencies in English.

1. unnecessary addition of r sound in words like car, card.

2. failure to assimilate the voicing feature of the inflexional suffixes -s and -ed to the preceding consonant of the stem, e.g. caps [kæps], but bags [bægz]; bagged [bægd], but booked [bukt].

3 dropping of the final consonant when the following word begins with the same consonant sound, e.g. 'french cheese' *[frenciz] 'orange juice' *[ɔrinjus].

4. pronouncing wh- sequence as [wh-] (Note: wine/whine y/why, witch/which are each pronounced alike.)

5. pronouncing the h- sound in words like heir, ghost, rhyme, Thomas; the b-sound in words like lamb, comb, thumb; the g-sound in words like singing, singer, and sometimes even in sing.

6. metathesis of consonants in words like 'ask'

7. systematic mispronunciation of the suffixes like -ness, -ment, -able, -ate, -nent, -ant, -ance, -cian, -tion, etc.

8. pronuncing -man of 'gentleman', 'stateman', 'post-man' etc. as [mæn] in analogy with 'man' [mæn] and similarly pronouncing -band of husband etc. as [bænd] in analogy with the free word 'band' [bænd] and so on.

C H A P T E R   T W E L V E

COMPARISON OF FUNCTIONAL STEM CLASSES

Stems in English, Nepali and Newari can be studied from two points of view, namely

1. the grammatical (especially syntactic) functions they perform as they enter into larger constructions and
2. their internal (i.e., morphological) structures.

The former yields a functional classification and the latter a structural classification of stems.

Functionally English, Nepali and Newari stems may be Nominals, Verbs or Particles. Structurally they may be Simple or Complex. Complex stems, in turn, may be Derived, Composite or Reduplicated.

12.1. Nominals

Nominal stems can be divided into the following basic groups :

English	Nepali	Newari
Nouns	Nouns	Nouns
Pronouns	Pronouns	Pronouns
Adjectives	Adjectives	Adjectives
Proadjectives	Proadjectives	Proadjectives
————	Classifiers	Classifiers

Observations

1. Some of the nouns in Newari which convey the notions of location and time correspond to adverbs and prepositions in English and to adverbs and postpositions in Nepali. Similarly the pronouns /ane/ 'there', /thana/ 'here', and /gana/ 'where' in Newari correspond to proadverbs with the same meanings in English and Nepali. The reason why these items in question are treated as nouns/pronouns in Newari is that these, like other nouns/pronouns, inflect for cases, though in an irregular fashion (cf. 1 & 2 of 7.3.1., 7.3.3., and particularly the end of 9.1.1.).

2. Unlike in English and Nepali, a great majority of the native adjectives of quality in Newari are anomalous adjectives which come very near in being verbs. (For the list of these adjectives refer to 7.1.3.1. and for other details see Note 6 of 10.3.1.)

3. English does not have stems corresponding to Nepali and Newari proadjective stems of quality and quantity. The senses conveyed by these stems in Nepali and Newari are conveyed by corresponding proadjectival phrases in English, e.g.

English	Nepali	Newari
how much	keti	guli
what kind/sort of	kasto	gan̄a'

A single exception to this generalization is the pro-adjective 'such' which can occur in free variation with the proadjectival phrase 'that kind of/those kinds of'.

4. The non-numeral adjectives of quantity (many, a few, some, all, several etc.), some of the indefinite proadjectives (any, some etc.), and the articles (a/an, the) are all often grouped as 'determiners' in English grammar.

5. Nepali and Newari, unlike English, do not have 'articles' as a separate sub-class, but the numeral ek/cha 'one' and the proadjective tyo/wa 'that' at times function in Nepali/Newari like English 'a/an' and 'the' respectively, e.g.

Eng :	Yesterday a man came here.	I liked the man very much.
Nep :	hijo yahā ek-jana manis aekothyo	malai tyo manis sarai manparyo
New :	mhige: thene cha-ma manū: wala	jita: wa manū: sa:paye yala

However the parallelism is not to be stressed too far. There are many situations which demand 'the' in English but which do not demand tyo/wa in Nepali/Newari correspondingly e.g.

Eng :	the water of this place	the book you gave me
Nep :	yahā ko pani	timi le dieko kitab
New :	thana-yagu la:	chā: byu: gu kitab

Similarly there are cases where 'a/an' occurs obligatorily in English, but ok/cha occur only optionally in Nepali/Newari, e.g.

Eng : He gave me a book. | He saw an elephant

Nep : usle malai (euta) kitab diyo | usle (euta) hati dekhyo

New : wẽ: jite: (cha-gu) kitab bile | wẽ: (cha-ma) kisi khene

There are cases where 'a/an' occurs obligatorily in English, but ek/cha do not occur at all in Nepali/Newari e.g.

Eng : He went to see a movie | I have not seen an elephant so far.

Nep : u sinema herne gayo | maile aje samme hati dekheko chaine

New : wo pyakhã: swo: wona | jĩ: theũ tekke kisi mokhana ni

In making a generic reference, English uses 'a/an' or 'the' with countable nouns. Both remain untranslated in Nepali/Newari, e.g.

Eng : An aeroplane is a flying machine.

Nep : hawaijahaj (euṭa) uḍne mesin ho

New : hawaijahaj (chagu) bwe:gu myesin khe:

Eng : The aeroplane is a gift of science.

Nep : hawaijahaj bigyan ko (euṭa) dan ho

New : hawaijahaj bigyan-yagu (chagu) dyan khe:

Uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns in English of course do not take 'a/an' and the generic 'the'.

12.1.1. Nouns

Nouns in all the three languages make the Singular/Plural number distinction. Nepali nouns in addition inflect for gender. Newari nouns have an elaborate case system. (Details in 14.1.)

Nouns make the following distinctions :

English	Nepali	Newari
± Proper	± Proper	± Proper
± Countable	± Countable	± Countable
± Animate	________	± Animate
± Human	± Human	± Human
± Female	± Female	________
________	________	± Kinship
________	________	± Senior

These distinctions are based primarily on the basis of grammatical features such as syntactic cooccurrence, inflectional characteristics, concord behaviour and Noun-Pronoun correlation and only secondarily on semantic grounds. However it is to be noted that the criteria on which these distinctions are based may

vary from language to language, e.g. '± animate' distinction is made in English on the basis of Noun-Pronoun correlation (' -Animate' nouns correlate to 'it' whereas '+ Animate' nouns correlate to 'he/she') and admissibility of the Genitive case, ('s, added to '+ Animate' and Time nouns only), whereas the same distinction is made in Newari on the basis of altogether different criteria such as Classifier - Noun cooccurrence (the classifier /ma/ cooccurs with '+ Animate' nouns and the classifier /gu/ cooccurs with '- Animate' nouns) and 'Adjective/Proadjective' - Noun agreement (Adjective/Proadjectives agree in Number with '+ Animate' nouns only) (cf. 7.1.1.).

The criteria for establishing these features of nouns in Nepali and Newari are discussed in 3.1.1. and 7.1.1. respectively.

12.1.2. Pronouns

Pronouns, like nouns, make the Singular/Plural distinction in all the three languages. (In Nepali and Newari plural is marked either by plural marker or reduplication; in English plural morpheme is often fused with the base or, in some cases, the Singular/Plural distinction is neutralized.) In addition, English and Newari pronouns also make case distinctions. Personal pronouns in all the three languages make a three-fold distinction of person.

Pronouns in all the three languages may be divided into the following six groups :

1. Personal
2. Demonstrative
3. Interrogative
4. Relative
5. Reflexive
6. Indefinite

We shall discuss these pronouns one by one. First the pronouns are listed in three columns, one for each language, so that the corresponding forms are placed side by side horizontally. The main points of difference are then noted subsequently under 'observations'.

1. Personal Pronouns

Person	Variety	Sub-variety		English		Nepali		Newari	
				Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
First	Royal	Inclusive		–	we	–	həmi (-həru)	–	jhi: (-pĩ:)
		Exclusive		I-we	"	mə/həmi	"	ji	ji-pĩ:
	Neutral	Inclusive		–	"	–	"	–	jhi:(-pĩ)
		Exclusive		I	"	mə	"	ji	ji-pĩ:
Second	Super-Hon	Royal		you	you	məusuph	məusuph-həru	məsuph	məsuph-pĩ:
						– sərkar	– sərkar-həru	– sərkar	– sərkar-pĩ:
						– məusuph sərkar	– məusuph sərkar-həru	– məusuph sərkar	– məusuph sərkar-pĩ:
		Aristocratic		"	"	həjur	həjur-həru	həjur	həjur-pĩ:
	Hon	Formal		"	"	yəhã	yəhã-həru	chi	chik-pĩ:
		Neutral		"	"	təpaĩ	təpaĩ-həru	"	"
	Non-Hon	Neutral		"	"	timi	timi-həru	che	chi-pĩ:
		Inferior		"	"	tə̃	"	"	"
Third	Human	Royal	Male	he	they	same as in II P.		Same as in II P.	
			Female	she	"	"		"	
		Hon	Male	he	"	wəhã "	wəhã-həru	wekə:	wekə:-pĩ:
			Female	she	"	"	"	"	"
		Non-Hon	Male	he	"	u – tyo	uni-həru – tini-həru	we	i-pĩ:
			Female	she	"	u/uni – tyo/tini	"	"	"
	Non-Human			it	"	tyo	tini-həru	"	"

Observations

1. First person pronouns make Royal/Neutral (i.e., the king-queen vs. the rest) distinction in singular in English and Nepali, the neutral plural form being used on formal occasions in singular Royal variety. In Newari we have a different situation altogether. As the king or queen never speaks in Newari (at least publicly), the need for such a distinction does not arise at all in real life situations. When the speech of king or queen is translated directly or when a king or queen speaks as a character in a story in Newari the same forms are used for them as the ones used for any other person.
2. Newari makes an inclusive/exclusive distinction in the first person plural.
3. Second person pronouns make a six-fold distinction in Nepali : Royal, Aristocratic, Formal Honorific, Neutral Honorific, Neutral Non-Honorific, and Inferior Non-Honorific. (Note: In section 3.1.2.1. the following terms have been used: 'Royal' for 'Royal'; 'Extra-Honorific' for 'Aristocratic'; 'Honorific' for both 'Formal Honorific' and 'Neutral Honorific'; 'Intimate' for 'Neutral Non-Honorific'; and 'Extra-Intimate' for 'Inferior Non-Honorific'.) From the point of view of Pronoun - Verb agreement this six-fold distinction is reduced to a four-fold distinction, the same

verb forms being used with Royal as well as Aristocratic varieties as also the same verb forms being used with Formal Honorific as well as Neutral Honorific varieties of pronouns e.g. (illustrated here with the verb /khel/ 'play' in simple past tense):

Royal	:	mausuph	khel-i-baksk-yo
Aristocratic	:	hajur	khel-i-baksk-yo
Hon-Formal	:	yahā	khel-nu-bha-yo
Hon-Neutral	:	tapaī	khel-nu-bhayo
Non-Hon-Neutral	:	timi	khely-au
Non-Hon-Inferior	:	tã	khel-is
Gloss	:	you	played

(Note: The difference between Hon-Formal and Hon-Neutral varieties lies in the fact that whereas the former is used exclusively on formal occasions, the latter can be used on any occasion, formal or informal.)

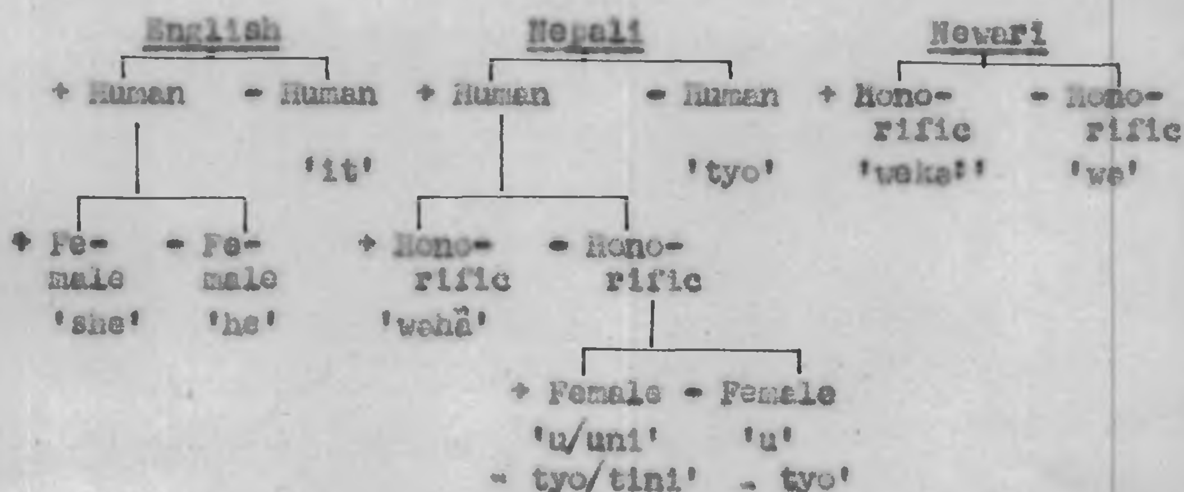
As mentioned in Observation 1 above, the real life situation does not exist so as to demand Royal and Aristocratic varieties of second person pronouns in Newari. In direct translation and stories, as in first person, Newari may use the ones borrowed from Nepali but with the native plural marker /pĩ:/. Apart from these, second person pronouns show Honorific /Non-Honorific distinction in Newari, the former correspond to two

varieties of Honorific pronouns and the latter, similarly, to two varieties of Non-Honorific pronouns in Nepali.

Second person pronouns in English make none of these distinctions except that on formal occasions English at times uses special honorific phrases like 'your majesty', 'your royal highness', 'your lordship', 'sire' etc. to refer to the royal couple, to other members of royal family, to the members of aristocratic families etc., e.g. the expression : "As you please, your majesty." It is to be noted here that English uses both 'you' and/or 'your majesty' which is not possible in Nepali or Newari where the Royal form has to be repeated for each instance.

4. Nepali uses the same second person pronouns also in the third person to refer to the royal couple and other members of the royal family (an instance of neutralization). The same is true of Newari. (Newari uses the ones borrowed from Nepali but with native plural marker.) English uses special honorific phrases like 'his/her majesty', 'his/her royal highness' etc. on special occasions, but elsewhere the same neutral he/she are used.

Apart from these, English third person forms make distinctions along two axes: '± Human' and '±Female'; Nepali along three axes: '± Human', '± Honorific', and ' ± Female'; Newari along a single axis: '± Honorific' as follows :



5. Special anaphoric forms are available in the third person in English. In Nepali they are available except for Non-Human third person for which the Remote Demonstrative forms are used. Remote Demonstrative forms are also used, but less commonly, in place of Human third person anaphoric pronouns. The Proadverb of place /wahã/ 'there' is used for third person honorific pronouns. In Newari Remote Demonstrative forms are alone used in the third person.

6. The Number distinction is neutralized in the second person pronouns in English. It is never neutralized in Nepali and Newari personal pronouns, the plural forms being always marked by the same plural marker that is also used with nouns (i.e., /haru/ in Nepali and /pĩ:/ in Newari).

7. English makes a Male/Female distinction in third person singular; Nepali makes this distinction only with non-honorific pronouns in third person and that too only marginally; such a distinction is made nowhere in Newari pronominal system.

2. <u>Demonstrative Pronouns</u>

				English		Nepali		Newari	
				Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
Human	Hon	Male	Remote	that	those	wəhā̃	wəhā̃-həru	wekə:	wekə:-pī:
			Proximate	this	these	yəhā̃	yəhā̃-həru	"	"
		Female	Remote	that	those	wəhā̃	wəhā̃-həru	"	"
			Proximate	this	these	yəhā̃	yəhā̃-həru	"	"
	Non-Hon	Male	Remote	that	those	u ~ tyo	uni-həru ~ tini-həru	wə	i-pī:
			Ad Prox	"	"	"	"	ame	am-pī:
			Sp Prox	this	these	yo	ini-həru	thwə	thi-pī:
		Female	Remote	that	those	u/uni ~ tyo/tini	uni-həru ~ tini-həru	wə	i-pī:
			Ad Prox	"	"	"	"	ame	am-pī:
			Sp Prox	this	these	yo/ini	ini-həru	thwə	thi-pī:
Non-Human			Remote	that	those	tyo	tini-həru	wə	i-pī:
			Ad Prox	"	"	"	"	ame	am-pī:
			Sp Prox	this	these	yo	ini-həru	thwə	thi-pī:

Observations

1. As regards spacial relationship between the speaker and the object referred to, English and Nepali demonstrative pronouns make a two-fold distinction : Remote (away from the speaker) and Proximate (near the speaker) whereas Newari demonstrative pronouns other than the Honorific ones make a three-fold distinction : Remote (away from both the speaker and the addressee), Addressee Proximate (away from the speaker, but near the addressee), and Speaker Proximate (near the speaker). (This three-fold distinction is completely neutralized in Honorific forms.) English uses 'that' and 'this' for humans only in constructions like That's a man/the man! Who's that? Otherwise that one and this one may be used.

2. Nepali, English, and Newari demonstrative pronouns make distinctions along four, three, and two axes respectively as follows:

Nep : ± Human; ± Honorific; ± Female; ± Remote

Eng : ± Human; ________; ± Female; ± Remote

New : ______; + Honorific; ______; Remote/Ad Prox/Sp Prox

3. The Plural in Nepali and Newari demonstrative pronouns is marked by plural markers; in English the plural morpheme is fused together with the base.

4. The Male/Female distinction is neutralized in Nepali Honorific forms, in singular as well as plural. English and Newari do not make this distinction at all with demonstratives.

3. Interrogative Pronouns

	English	Nepali		Newari	
		Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
General Human	who	ko	ko ko	su	su su
Non-Hum	what	ke	ke ke	chu	chu chu
Specific Animate	which(one)	kun	kun kun	gu-me	gu-me gu-me
Non-Anim	which	"	"	gu-gu	gu-gu gu-gu

4. Relative Pronouns

General Human	who(m) - that	jo	jo jo	su	su su
Non-Hum	which - that	je	je je	chu	chu chu
Specific Animate	who(m) - that	jun	jun jun	gu-me	gu-me gu-me
Non-Anim	which - that	"	"	gu-gu	gu-gu gu-gu

Observations on Interrogative and Relative Pronouns

1. Two different series of pronominal forms are available for interrogative and relative pronouns in Nepali. Newari has only one series for the both. In English there is some homonymy between the two series.

2. Reduplication of the singular form gives the corresponding plural form in Nepali and Newari interrogative and relative pronouns. In English these pronouns do not make number distinction. (However the Singular/Plural distinction may be made in interrogative as follows :

(i) Sg form vs sg form + all, e.g. who vs who all
(ii) Sg form + one vs Sg form + ones, e.g. which one vs. which ones)

3. Interrogative and Relative pronouns in Nepali and Newari make General/Specific distinction (specific ones being used to select one(s) from a limited set). In English such a distinction is made by interrogative pronouns, but not by relative ones. Out of these pronouns the general ones in all the three languages make '± Human' distinction correspondingly. Newari specific ones, in addition, cooccur with a pair of classifiers (/ma/ and /gu/) which make '± Animate' distinction.

4. Specific interrogative and relative pronouns often occur together with the identification marker /cãi/ in Nepali and /peti:/ in Newari.

5. Reflexive Pronouns

English		Nepali		Newari	
Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
(antecedent pronoun +) self	(antecedent pronoun +) selves	aphu	aphu	the:	the:-pĩ:
	each other/(between) antecedent pronoun + selves	aphu	aphu aphu/ apas ma	the:	the: the: (le:)
	one another/(among) antecedent pronoun + selves		"		"
	each individually/ respectively		aphu aphu/ aph-aphai		the: the:

Observations

1. Unlike Nepali and Newari reflexive pronouns, English reflexive pronouns 'self' and 'selves' do not have a free and independent existence of their own. They occur along with the antecedent pronoun or pronominal equivalent of antecedent noun in accusative case, e.g.

English	Nepali	Newari
[he] himself	u aphu	we the:
[Ram]	ram aphu	ram the:

2. Reflexive pronouns in Nepali and Newari usually occur along with the emphatic marker; e.g.

Nepali :	u aphu-nei ----- u aphei	he himself
Newari :	we the:-ye/we the:-tũ:	he himself.

3. Reciprocal and distributive senses are expressed in Nepali and Newari by reduplicating the reflexive pronouns. In English these senses are expressed by phrases like 'each other', 'one another', 'between yourselves', 'among themselves', and 'each individually/respectively'.

4. In English reciprocal phrasal constructions make a 'two/more than two' distinction in careful usage. Nepali and Newari reciprocal pronouns do not make such a distinction.

6. **Indefinite Pronouns**

		English		Nepali		Newari	
		Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
General	Animate	anyone, anybody		kohi/kasai-	kohi/kasai-	sũ:	
	Non-Anim	anything		kehi	kehi	chũ:	
Specific	Animate	someone, somebody	some	kunai ~ kasai	kunai(kunai) ~ kasai(kasai)	gu-mã:	gu-mã:(gu-mã:)
	Non-Anim	some(thing)	"	"	"	gu-gũ:	gu-gũ:(gu-gũ:)
General	Animate	whoever/ whosoever		jo(sukai)		ñha-me	
	Non-Anim	whatever/ whatsoever		je(sukai)		ñha-gu	
Specific	Animate	whoever/ whosoever		jun(sukai)		ñha-me	
	Non-Anim	whichever/ whichsoever		"		ñha-gu	
General	Animate	everyone, everybody	all	pratek, harek	sab(ai)	harek	phu(k)ka/ phukẽ:
	Non-Anim	everything	"	"	"	"	"
Specific		each	"	"	"	"	"
	Animate	another/ (the) other	(the) others	aru	aru(aru) ~ aru(-haru)	mye-me	mye (mye)-pĩ:
	Non-Anim	"	"	arko	arko	mye-gu	mye (mye)-gu
	Male	so and so	so and so	phalano	phalana phalana	phalana	phalana phalana
	Female	"	"	phalani	"	"	"

Observations

1. Nepali kohi/kehi can occur both with singular as well as plural verb forms; English anyone/anything can occur only with singular verb forms; Newari verb system simply does not make any number distination at all.

2. There are two possible negative construction of 'verb + anyone/anything' in English, namely (i) 'verb + not + anyone/anything' and (ii) 'verb + none/nothing'. Only the former of the two is possible in Nepali and Newari.

3. Though the 'every/all' distinction exists in Nepali and Newari as it does in English, Nepali and Newari, however, tend to use 'all' (i.e. /sabai/ in Nepali and /phukẽ:/ in Newari) even in those situations in which English normally uses 'every' e.g.

English : Nowadays everybody is sick at home.
Nepali : ajkal gharma sabai(jana) birami chan
Newari : thaũ-kane: chyẽ: phukẽ: birami

4. In English one/we/you are also used as indefinite pronouns corresponding to Nepali/kasai-/ and Newari /sũ/, e.g.

English : According to law one/we/you cannot keep two wives.
Nepali : kanun anusar kasaile pani duiṭa swasni rakhna paũdaina
Newari : kanun anusar sunã: nã: nĩma kala: ta: ma ru

12.1.3. Adjectives

The following general statements can be made about adjectives of English, Nepali, and Newari :

1. All the three languages have adjectives of quality (new, big etc.), quantity (two, many etc.), and, identity (second, eldest etc.).

2. Generally adjectives in all the three languages occur before the noun they qualify in their attributive function and after it in their predicative function. However the following exceptions may be noted :

(i) Adjective clauses (e.g., the book which is one the table) and their further transformed phrases (e.g., the book on the table) occur after the noun they qualify in English. Their equivalent forms in Nepali and Newari occur, like other adjectives, before the qualified noun itself.

(ii) Adjectives of quantity may occur before or after the noun they quantify in Nepali and Newari. In English these adjectives invariably occur before the quantified noun (except in constructions like "...books many of which...").

3. In English some adjectives inflect for degrees of comparison (unmarked vs comparative vs. superlative).

4. In Nepali declinable adjectives of quality and identity inflect for gender and number.

5. In Newari adjectives of quality and identity agree with animate nouns in number.

6. Newari adjectives, other than non-numeral qualitative ones, take classifiers which mark '± Animate' distinction (/me/ goes with ' + Animate' and /gu/ with '-Animate'). In Nepali only numeral adjectives take classifiers which mark '± Human' distinction (/jana/ goes with '+ Human' and /(we) ṭa/ with 'Human').

<u>Adjectives of Quality</u>

1. In Nepali and Newari adjectives of quality can be converted into corresponding adjectives of identity by adding the identification marker which is /cāl/ in Nepali and /pati'/ in Newari.

2. Most of the native adjectives of quality in Newari are verbal adjectives, i.e. they are anomalous adjectives which come very near in being verbs (cf. 7.1.3.1. and, particularly, Note 6 of section 10.3.1.)

Adjectives of Quantity

The following are the lists of non-numeral adjectives of quantity:

English	Nepali	Newari
many, a lot of, lots of, a great/good deal of, plenty of	dherai, thuprai, kaphi, prasasta	yekkwa, sikka, kaphi (B), prasasta (B)
much, a lot of, a great/good deal of, plenty of	dherai, thuprai kaphi, prasasta	yakkwa, sikka, kaphi (B), prasasta (B)
a few	ali*	bheca*
a little	ali(kati)	bhe(ti:)ca
more	dherai, jyada	yakkwa, apwa:
less	thorai, kam	kam (B)
all	sab(ai)	phukkã:
some	ali*	bheca*
some	ali(kati)	bhe(ti:)ca
enough	prasasta, caine jati	makkwa
several	kaĩyaũ	kayaũ

Note: More often than not ali*/bheca* are replaced by compound numerals like

[dui-tin jana] [dui-tin (wa)ṭa] — [nima-swama] [nigu-swangu] — 'two or three'

Observations

1. The English equivalents of Nepali and Newari non-numeral adjectives of quantity may be single stems (e.g., 'many) or phrases (e.g. 'a lot of').

2. In English non-phrasal quantitative adjectives of great as well as small dimension (i.e. 'many/much' as well as 'a few/ a little') make countable/non-countable distinction. InNepali and Newari quantitative adjectives of great dimension do not make such a distinction and those of small dimension make it only marginally.

3. Non-numeral adjectives of quantity along with the 'articles' are often termed as 'determiners' in English. Nepali and Newari do not have articles in the sense English has them (cf. Observation 5 in 12.1.).

Adjectives of Identity

Non-numeral adjectives of identity show male/female distinction in Nepali and Newari, e.g.

English	Nepali	Newari
my youngest son	mero kancho chora	jimi kancha-me kae'
my youngest daughter	mero kanchi chori	jimi kanchi-me mhyae'

12.1.4. Proadjectives

1. Demonstrative

				English Sg.	English Pl.	Nepali Sg.	Nepali Pl.	Newari Sg.	Newari Pl.
Of Quality		Remote	Animate	that kind of	those kind of	testo	testa	aña:-me	aña:-pĩ:
			Non-Anim	"	"	"	"	aña:-gu	aña:-gu
		Ad Prox	Animate	"	"	"	"	amña:-me	amña:-pĩ:
			Non-Anim	"	"	"	"	amña:-gu	amña:-gu
		Sp Prox	Animate	this kind of	these kind of	esto	esta	theña:-me	theña:-pĩ:
			Non-Anim	"	"	"	"	theña:-gu	theña:-gu
Of Quantity	Countable	Remote	Human (Nep) Animate(New)	-	that/ so many	-	toti-jana	-	we:-me
			Non-Hum(Nep) Non-Anim(New)	-	"	-	toti-waṭa	-	we:-gu
		Proximate	Human (Nep) Animate(New)	-	this many	-	eti-jana	-	thwe:-me
			Non-Hum (Nep) Non-Afiim(New)	-	"	-	eti-waṭa	-	thwe:-gu
	Non-Count	Remote		that/ so much	-	toti	-	uli	-
		Ad Prox		"	-	"	-	amli	-
		Sp Prox		this much	-	eti	-	thuli	-
Of Identity	General	Remote		that	those	tyo	ti	we	we
		Ad Prox		"	"	"	"	ame	ame
		Sp Prox		this	these	yo	i	thwe	thwe
	Specific	Remote	Animate	that	those	tyo	ti	u-me	u-pĩ:
			Non-Anim	"	"	"	"	u-gu	u-gu
		Ad-Prox		"	"	"	"	ame	am-pĩ:
		Sp Prox	Animate	this	these	yo	i	thu-me	thu-pĩ:
			Non-Anim	"	"	"	"	thu-gu	thu-gu

2. Interrogative Proadjectives

			English Sg.	English Pl.	Nepali Sg.	Nepali Pl.	Newari Sg.	Newari Pl.
Of Quality		Animate	what kind of	what kind of	kesto	kesta	geñā'-me	geñā'-pī:
		Non-Anim	"	"	"	"	geñā'-gu	geñā'-gu
Of Quantity	Countable	Human (Nep) Animate (New)	-	how many	-	kati-jena	-	gwe'-me
		Non-Hum (Nep) Non-Anim(New)	-	"	-	kati-weṭa	-	gwe'-gu
	Non-Count		how much	-	kati	-	guli	-
Of Identity	General	Human	what	what	ko	ko ko	su	su su
		Non-Human	"	"	ke	ke ke	chu	chu chu
	Specific	Animate	which	which	kun	kun kun	gu-me	gu-me gu-me
		Non-Anim	"	"	"	"	gu-gu	gu-gu gu-gu

3. Relative Proadjectives

			English Sg.	English Pl.	Nepali Sg.	Nepali Pl.	Newari Sg.	Newari Pl.
Of Quality		Animate	-	-	jesto	jesta	geñā'-me	geñā'-pī:
		Non-Anim	-	-	"	"	geñā'-gu	geñā'-gu
Of Quantity	Countable	Human (Nep) Animate(New)	-	-	-	jeti-jena	-	gwe'-me
		Non-Hum (Nep) Non-Anim (New)	-	-	-	jeti-weṭa	-	gwe'-gu
	Non-Count		-	-	jeti	–	guli	–
Of Identity	General	Human	-	-	jo	jo jo	su	su su
		Non-Human	what	what	je	je je	chu	chu chu
	Specific	Animate	-	-	jun	jun jun	gu-me	gu-me gu-me
		Non-Anim	-	-	"	"	gu-gu	gu-gu gu-gu

4. Indefinite Proadjectives

		English Sg.	English Pl.	Nepali Sg.	Nepali Pl.	Newari Sg.	Newari Pl.
General	Animate	any	any/some	kohi	kohi (kohi)	sū̃:	sū̃: (sū̃:)
	Non-Anim	"	"	kehi	kehi(kehi)	chū̃:	chū̃: (chū̃:)
Specific	Animate	a certain/ some	certain/some	kunai	kunai(kunai)	gu-mẽ:	gu-mê: (gu-mẽ:)
	Non-Anim	"	"	"	"	gu-gū̃:	gu-gū̃: (gu-gū̃:)
General	Animate	any (N(s)) who(so)ever		jo(sukai)(N(s))		ñha-me (N(s))	
	Non-Anim	any (N(s)) what(so)ever/ what(so)ever (N(s))		je(sukai)(N(s))		ñha-gu (N(s))	
Specific	Animate	any (N(s)) who(so)ever/ whichever (N(s))		jun(sukai)(N(s))		ñha-me (N(s))	
	Non-Anim	any (N(s)) whichever/ whichever (N(s))		"		ñha-gu (N(s))	
General		every	all	pratek, herek	sab(ai)	herek	phu(k)ke/ phukẽ:
Specific		each	"	"	"	"	"
	Animate	another/ (the) other	(the) other	arko	arko	mye-me	mye(mye)-pĩ:
	Non-Anim	"	"	"	"	mye-gu	mye(mye)-gu
	Male	such	such and such	phalano	phalana-phalana	phalana	phalana phalana
	Female	"	"	phalana	"	"	"

Observations

The observations made about demonstrative, interrogative, relative and indefinite pronouns are also more or less true about their corresponding proadjectives. However the following points may be noted :

1. English has only 'phrasal constructions' corresponding to Nepali and Newari proadjectives of quality and quantity. (The proadjective 'such' is an exception.)

2. With proadjectives three kinds of plural are possible in Nepali and Newari as follows:

(i) Singular in kind, plural in number

(ii) Plural in kind, singular in number

(iii) Plural in kind, plural in number.

English does not make any distinction between (ii) and (iii), as also between (i) and the exclusively singular form, e.g.

Number	Kind	Sg.	Pl.
Sg.	English:	what kind of	what kinds of
	Nepali :	kasto	kasto kasto
	Newari :	gañā:-me	gañā:-me gañā:-me
Pl.	English:	what kind of	what kinds of
	Nepali :	kasta	kasta kasta
	Newari :	gañā:-pĩ:	gañā:-pĩ: gañā:-pĩ:

3. As regards countable proadjectives of quantity, Nepali makes Human/Non-Human distinction, Newari makes Animate/Non-Animate distinction, but the phrasal equivalents in English make none of these distinctions.

4. In Newari, unlike the corresponding pronouns, general pro-adjectives do not make number distinction.

5. English does not have relative pro-adjectives corresponding to Nepali and Newari ones (except the rare use of what as in what money you have that ---). The constructions in Nepali and Newari with a relative proadjective are rendered in a different way in English, for example, as follows :

Nep : timilai jasto manis cahincha testo manis yahâ chaina

New : chanta gan̄a:-ma manū: ma: en̄a:-ma manū: than ma ru

(Gloss: What kind of man you need, that kind of man is not available here)

Eng : The kind of man you need is not available here.

Note also the indefinite proadjectives whichever and whatever are also used relatively on occasion.

6. In English the constructions like 'any (N) whosoever' are rarely used, the constructions like 'every (N)' being commonly used instead. Just the opposite is true in Nepali and Newari, e.g.

English : Any child whosoever knows it (Rare)

Nepali : yo kura jun sukai baccalai pani thaha cha (Common)

Newari : thwa khẽ n̄ha-ma macā: na: syu: (Common)

English : Every child knows it (Common)

Nepali : yo kura harek baccalai thaha che (less common)

Newari : thwe khã harek macã syu: (rare)

Similarly,

English : Anything whatsoever is expensive here. (Rare)

Nepali : yahã je cij pani mahango che (Common)

Newari : thane ñha-gu cij nã: thike: (Common)

English : Everything is expensive here. (Common)

Nepali : yahã harek cij mahango che (less common)

Newari : thane harek cij thike: (less common)

12.1.5. Classifiers

Newari has an exhaustive and elaborate system of classifiers. Nepali classifier system is relatively less exhaustive and less elaborate. English has only quasi-classifiers which behave like classifiers semantically, but are nouns grammatically.

First an outline of the classification of classifiers is given. This will be followed by detailed discussion.

Newari classifiers can be classified as follows:

1. Adverbial Classifiers

1.1. Iterative Classifiers: thu , ru:

1.2. Recurrent Classifiers: ke:

2. Adjectival Classifiers

2.1. Unmarked Classifiers (i.e., the Classifiers that can cooccur with almost any adjective/preadjective)

2.1.1. The Classifier that cooccur with animate nouns: me

2.1.2. " " " " " non-animate nouns: gu

2.2. Marked Classifiers (i.e. the classifiers that can cooccur only with numeral adjectives and countable preadjectives of quantity)

2.2.1. The Classifiers that cooccur with countable(unit) nouns.

2.2.1.1. The Classifier that cooccurs with animate nouns: me

2.2.1.2. " Classifiers " occur " non-animate nouns: pa:, pa, ga:, pu, gu, etc.

2.2.2. The Classifiers that cooccur with non-countable (mass) nouns: kuː, phuti, gwara, dhiː etc.

Nepali has classifiers only corresponding to Newari Classifiers noted in 1. and 2.2.; English has quasi-classifiers only corresponding to Newari classifiers noted in 1 and 2.2.2.

1. Adverbial Classifiers

These classifiers occur following quantifier adjectives/ proadjectives and together function as an adverb phrase of frequency.

Newari has three adverbial classifiers: /thu/, /ruː/ and /kaː/. Of these /thu/ and /ru/, which have a limited distribution, have an iterative sense. /kaː/, on the other hand, has an unlimited distribution and normally has recurrent sense.

Nepali has five adverbial classifiers :
/patak/, /palṭa/, /coṭi/, /baji/, and /khep/. These classifiers are in free variation with one another (although /khep/ is less common than the other four), have unlimited distribution, and, unlike the Newari ones, do not make the semantic distinction 'iterative vs recurrent'.

English has only one adverbial quasi-classifier corresponding to all the above Newari and Nepali classifiers : 'times'

Examples

Iterative (on one occasion)
Newari : waː jiteː jhi-thu dale
Nepali : usle malai das patak piṭyo
English : He beat me ten times

Recurrent (on separate occasions)

Newari : theũ teke wã: jita: jemma hi-ka: da:gu du

Nepali : aja samma usle malai jamma das patak piṭeko cha

English: Till today he has beaten me ten times altogether.

2. Adjectival Classifiers

The major bulk of the classifiers belongs to this group. These classifiers normally occur before a quantifying adjective /proadjective and a quantified noun.

The occurrence of a particular type of classifier in Newari conditioned both by the type of adjective/proadjective that preceeds it and by the type of noun that follows it. From the point of view of 'adjective/proadjective--classifier' cooccurrence Newari classifiers can be divided into two groups:

2.1. Unmarked classifiers : the classifiers that cooccur with any adjective/proadjective other than (i) non-countable adjective/proadjective of quantity, and (ii) general proadjectives of identity.

2.2. Marked classifiers : the classifiers that cooccur only with numeral adjectives and corresponding countable proadjectives of quantity.

2.1. Unmarked classifiers :

Nepali classifiers and English quasi-classifiers can cooccur only with countable adjectives/proadjectives. Hence Nepali

and English do not have classifiers/quasi-classifiers corresponding to the unmarked group of Newari classifiers which consist of only two classifiers: /ma/ and /gu/, the former of which occurs before an animate noun and the latter before non-animate noun.

2.2. Marked Classifiers

These classifiers can be divided into two sub-groups :

2.2.1. The classifiers that cooccur with countable (unit) nouns

2.2.1. The classifiers that cooccur with non-countable(mass) nouns

Nepali and Newari have both these types of classifiers whereas English has quasi-classifiers corresponding to only the latter type.

2.2.1. The classifiers that cooccur with countable (unit) nouns can be further divided into two sub-groups separately for Newari and Nepali as follows:

Newari

2.2.1.1. The classifier that cooccurs with animate nouns : ma

2.2.1.2. " classifiers " cooccur " non-animate " :
pa', pa, ga', pu, gu etc.

Nepali

2.2.1.1. The classifier that cooccur with human nouns: jana

2.2.1.2. " " " " " non-human " : (wo)ṭa

(Note: English has no quasi-classifiers corresponding to these classifiers of Newari and Nepali.)

Examples

Newari : n̄i-me manū:/n̄i-me khica/n̄i-pa: kalti/n̄i-pa lha:/
n̄i-ga: ā:/n̄i-gu kyera/n̄i-gu myec
Nepali : dui-jona manis/dui-(wa)ṭa kukur/dui-(wa)ṭa khalṭi/
dui-(wa)ṭa hat/dui-(wa)ṭa āp/dui(wa)ṭa kera/dui-(wa)ṭa mec
English: two men/two dogs/two pockets/two hands/ two mangoes/
two bananas/two chairs

2.2.2. Newari and Nepali have classifiers and English has quasi-classifiers representing various shapes and sizes of non-countable (mass) nouns some of which are given below:

English	Nepali	Newari
piece, bit	ṭukra; (wa)ṭa	ku:; gu
drop	thopa	phuti
string	mala	ma:
ball	dallo	gwara
lump	ḍhiko	dhi:, pā:
pair	jor	jwa:(with animate nouns)
		ju (with non-animate nouns)
package; heap	poko	pwa:; dwā
etc.	etc.	etc.

Note: Units of measurement including the containers in terms of which the mass nouns can be measured can be treated as classifiers in Nepali and Newari, but not in English where they function as nouns, e.g.

English :	two gallons of oil	two bottles of liquor
Nepali :	dui pathi tel	dui sisi raksi
Newari :	n̄i pha cikā:	n̄i sisi ela:

NB: 1 pha = 1 pathi = 1 gallon (approximately)

12.2. Verbs

From the point of view of syntactic function verbs in Nepali and Newari may be classified into the following ten groups:

1. Copulative
2. Patient-Copulative
3. Intransitive
4. Patient-Intransitive
5. Semitransitive
6. Patient-Semitransitive
7. Transitive
8. Ditransitive
9. Transitive-factitive
10. Ditransitive-factitive

Unlike Nepali and Newari, English does not have patient constructions and, consequently, English does not have patient-verbs. The translation equivalents of patient-verbs in English are their corresponding verbs, i.e. copulative for patient-copulative and so on.

12.3. Particles

Syntactically particles in all the three languages may be divided into the following sub-classes :

1. Adverbs and Proadverbs
2. Intensifiers and Prointensifiers
3. Prepositions/Postpositions
4. Conjunctions
5. Prosententials
6. Adsententials (Sentence qualifiers)
7. Emphatic particles
8. Negative particles
9. Question particles
10. Quotative particles
11. Expletive particles

Observations

1. Broadly speaking prepositions in English correspond to postpositions in Nepali and Newari. Newari, however, has only a few postpositions so that various notions of location (such as 'in front', 'behind', 'above', 'below', 'inside', 'outside', etc), which are expressed by prepositions in English and by postpositions in Nepali, are expressed by nouns (with irregular inflections) in Newari (cf. 7.3.3. and end of 9.1.1.).

2. English, Nepali and Newari have prosentential particles as follows :

English	Nepali	Newari
Responsive	Responsive	Responsive
Exclamatory	Exclamatory	Exclamatory
Vocative	Vocative	Vocative
________	Question tag	Question tag
________	Initiator	Initiator
________	Hortative	Hortative

2.1. Nepali and Newari have a 'polite/non-polite' pair of responsive particles corresponding to which English has only a neutral one, e.g.

(1) As a response to a call :

	English	Nepali	Newari
Polite	Yes	hajur	hajur
Non-polite	Yes	hẽ	hẽ!

(ii) As a positive response to a command/request, e.g. come tomorrow!

	English	Nepali	Newari
Polite :	Okay	has	has
non-polite:	Okay	la	de

Note : (a) 'Okay' may be substituted by a finite construction like 'will do' or 'yes, I will' in English.

(b) Wherever politeness is demanded explicitly in English the courtesy-words like 'please' and 'Sir' are used in addition, e.g. (i) Yes, Please, (ii) Okay, Sir

(c) English 'Okay, Sir' is equivalent to Nepali and Newari 'has hajur'

2.2. Nepali and Newari have stem question-tags: English question tags are finite constructions modelled on the preceding construction to which the tags are added.

Question tags can be added to statements and imperative sentences in all the three languages. In addition they can be optionally added to lacuna questions as well in Nepali and Newari, e.g.

English	Nepali	Newari
Who is he?	u ko (hã)	wa su(hã: ~ hã:)

Question tags added to statements in English are of four types (the second type being the best known):

(i) Antipolar tag with low-rise sentence tone and having the implied, sense "Do you or don't you agree?" e.g.

He cried, didn't he?

He didn't cry, did he?

(ii) Antipolar tag with high-fall sentence tone and having the implied sense "I think you will agree with me that..." e.g.

He cried, didn't he?

He didn't cry, did he?

Note: In some varieties of English, eh? (high-fall) can also be used in place of this tag.

(iii) Equipolar tag with high-fall sentence tone and having the implied sense "Perhaps he didn't (on second thought)" e.g.

He cried, did he?

(iv) Equipolar tag with low-rise sentence tone and having the implied sense "I didn't know that" or "But I thought other", e.g.

He cried, did he?

Note: In some varieties of English, eh? (low rise) can also be used in place of this tag.

Question tags added to statements in Nepali and Newari are as follows :

(i) Nepali : /hogi/; Newari : /khala/

These are equivalent to English type (ii), e.g.

Nepali :	u royo hegi	u roena hegi
Newari :	we khwela khela	we makhwa: khela
Gloss :	He cried, didn't he?	He didn't cry, did he?

(ii) Nepali : /ta/; Newari /lasa/

These tags carry the implied sense : "Did/din't the thing (as expressed by the preceding statement to which the tag is added) turn up as it should under normal situation?"

Nepali :	u royo ta	u roena ta
Newari :	we khwela lasa	we makhwa: lasa
Gloss :	But, did he cry? (as expected)	But, didn't he cry? (Normally in such a situation he does cry)

(iii) Nepali : /re/; Newari : /hã/

These tags are added to the addressee's statement itself expressing unfamilarity and surprise, shock etc. at the information communicated by the statement (an instance of exclamatory question tag), e.g.

	Addressee	Speaker
Nepali :	u maryo	u maryo re
Newari :	we sita	we sita hã
Gloss :	He died.	(What?) Did you say he died? (Oh! I am shocked to hear it.)

(iv) Nepali /re/

This tag, like (iii), is added to the statement made by

the addressee itself to express doubt about the veracity of the statement, e.g.,

Addressee	Speaker
u royo	u royo re
He cried	He cried? (But I don't think so.)

Question tags added to the imperative sentences in English are as follows :

(i) Equipolar or antipolar tags with low-rise sentence tone are added to affirmative imperative and antipolar tags with low-rise sentence tone added to negative imperative. Both of these imply 'a persuasive request or a mild command', e.g.

Come tomorrow, [will you / won't you] ?

Don't come tomorrow, will you?

(ii) Equipolar tag with low-fall sentence tone which implies either an abrupt command or an impatient request, e.g.

Come tomorrow, will you?

Don't come tomorrow, won't you?

Question tags added to imperative sentences in Nepali and Newari are as follows :

(i) Nepali : /hai/; Newari : /nhā:/ ~ /nhi:/

These are equivalent to English (i) type, e.g.

Nepali	:	bholi au hai	bholi na au hai
Newari	:	kane: wa nhā:	kane: wa: mate nhā:
Gloss	:	Come tomorrow,	don't come tomorrow,
		[will you / won't you] ?	will you?

(ii) Nepali : /hai ta/; Newari : /nhā: sa/

These tags imply 'a prerequisite or postrequisite condition (which is expressed by the imperative to which the tag is added) for the fulfilment of the addressee's request or demand' In other words the speaker seems to say '(Don't) V if you want things to go your way.' Or, 'Let it be as you like it, but make sure that you (don't) V.', e.g.

Addressee says :

Nepali	:	malai das rupia sapat deu na
Newari	:	jita: jhirka dā: tyae: byu re
Gloss	:	Lend me ten rupees

Speaker replies in question

Nepali	:	bholi au hai ta
Newari	:	kane: wa nhā: sa
Gloss	:	(Here is your money) but make sure that you come tomorrow, Okay?

Or, (Okay I agree to lend you ten rupees)
but come tomorrow, Okay?

(iii) Newari : /khē'la/

This tag implies very forceful request or command. It is also used as a threatening, e.g.

kene' wa khē'la	Make sure that you come tomorrow, Okay?
	(If you don't come tomorrow, the result may be harmful or even disastrous)

2.3. Unlike Nepali /khai (khai)/ and Newari /se/ (which imply the sense 'Give way, let me V') which are stem-initiators, English uses a phrasal construction 'Excuse me' as an initiator.

3. Nepali has both bound as well as free emphatic particles; English and Newari have only free ones.

3.1. Where English uses reflexive pronouns to emphasize the antecedent noun or pronoun, Nepali and Newari may use, like English, reflexive pronouns, and/or, unlike English, emphatic particles, e.g.

English	Nepali	Newari
Ram <u>himself</u>	<u>ram aph-ai</u>	ram the' <u>tũ'</u> - <u>ye</u> - <u>he</u>
	- ram-<u>ai</u>	- ram <u>ye</u> - <u>he</u>
today <u>itself</u>	aja-<u>i</u>	thaũ <u>ye</u> - <u>he</u>

3.2. Nepali emphatic particle nai/ai/i and Newari emphatic particle ye - he correspond to English emphatic particle 'right' in

some situations, e.g.

English	Nepali	Newari
right now	ahile-nai	a: ye
right here	yahā-nai	thana he
	___ yahī	

3.3. Some free emphatic particles have almost perfect correspondence among all the three languages :

English	Nepali	Newari
only	matra	jaka
also	pani	nã:

A note of caution is needed here to emphasize 'almost' in the above phrase 'almost perfect correspondence' as the following examples will illustrate the lack of perfect correspondence in some situations :

Nepali : ram matrai pas bhayo

Newari : ram jaka pas jule

English : Only Ram passed.

Better "Ram alone passed."

Or, "It is only Ram who passed."

Nepali : ram pani aena

Newari : ram nã: ma we:

English : Ram also did not come.

Better "Ram did not come either."

3.4. The emphatic particles used to emphasize imperative verb forms are equivalent to the auxiliary 'do' in English, e.g.

English	Nepali	Newari
Do eat!	khau ne	na re

3.5. Some of the Nepali and Newari emphatic particles have no equivalents at all in English, e.g.

English	Nepali	Newari
Yesterday (unlike other days)	hijo te	mhiga' la
I (Emph.) can't. (I don't know if s.o. else can.)	ma te sakdina	ji la ma phu

4. Only Newari has a polarity question particle /la/. The interrogative function played by this particle in Newari is played by word order or intonation pattern in English and by intonation pattern in Nepali, e.g.

Newari :	we usẽ' me ru	we usẽ' me ru la
Nepali :	u birami cha	u birami cha
English :	He is sick	Is he sick? / He is sick?

5. Nepali as well as Newari has a quotative particle each corresponding to which English (which has no such particle) uses

finite constructions like '(s.o.) says that' and 'It is said that', e.g.

English : (i) (He says that) he won't come.

(ii) (It is said that) tomorrow is a holiday.

Nepali : (i) u aunna re

(ii) bholi bida che re

Newari : (i) wa wo: makhu hã

(ii) kane: bida du hã

12.4. Stem-Class Homonymy

Stem-class homonymy is found in all the three languages. However it is relatively much more common in English than in Nepali or Newari. Some of the commoner types in each language are as follows :

English

Noun and Verb intransitive	:	rain, sleep, stop, change
Noun and Verb transitive	:	water, shell, stop, change
Verb intransitive and Verb-transitive	:	stop, change
Preposition and Adverbial particle	:	in, on, up, down
Pronoun and Proadjective	:	this, all, each, which

Nepali

Noun and Verb intransitive :

mut 'urine/urinate' paḍ 'fart(N)/fart(V)'

khel 'game/play' jit 'victory/win'

Noun and Verb transitive :

lekh 'article/write' cor 'thief/steal'

khel 'game/play' jit 'victory/win'

Postposition and Adverb :

bhitre 'in, inside' mathi 'on (top of), up'

Pronoun and Proadjective :

yo 'this' sabai 'all' harek 'each'

Noun and Adjective :

kano 'blind person/blind' laṭo 'dumb person/dumb'

Newari

Pronoun and Proadjective :

thwe 'this' phukā: 'all' harek 'each'

Noun and Adjective :

kā: 'blind person/blind' maca 'child/young'

12.5. Pedagogic Applications

What follows is a brief survey of pedagogical applications applicable to both the speakers of Nepali and Newari learning English.

1. Articles

Nepali and Newari do not have an article system as such. So errors pertaining to the use of articles are quite common in Nepali and Newari English. Even well-educated persons are liable to commit these errors.

The English article system can be viewed for the present purpose as consisting of a series of contrastive binary distinctions as follows : (Errors are committed when a learner fails to grasp these distinctions.)

(i) a vs. an

(a) A few very poor learners use a throughout, e.g., 'a dog', 'a fruit' as well as *a ant,', '*a orange'.

(b) Some know the distinction but are misled by spelling e.g., '*a honest man', '*a heir-apparent', '*an unique event', '*an universal truth'.

(c) Most of the learners know this distinction very well, yet they do at times commit this error when the 'article + noun' construction is interrupted by an adjective, e.g. 'a book' but '*a expensive book';
'a orange' but '*an juicy orange'.

Similarly,

(ii) a(n) vs. the : Non-specific vs. specific

(iii) a(n) vs. its absence : countable sg. vs. uncountable sg.
countable sg. vs. countable pl.

(iv) the vs. its absence : common vs. proper.

A Nepali/Newari speaker is liable to make wrong substitutions in either direction -- thus, he may use a(n) for the or the for a(n) and so on.

2. Some other distinctions that Nepali/Newari speakers are liable to overlook in English are :

(i) (Countable vs. Uncountable :)
many vs. much; a few vs. a little

(ii) (Unmarked vs. Comparative:)
many, much vs. more; a few, a little vs. less;
tall vs. taller etc.

(iii) (Two vs. More than two:)
each other vs. one another; between vs. among;
both vs. all; either vs. any; neither vs. none

(iv) a few vs. few; a little vs. little

(v) every vs. each

(vi) every vs. all

(vii) every vs. any

(viii) any vs. some

(ix) it vs. that, this

(x) alone vs. only
(e.g., 'Only Ram passed' for 'Ram alone passed.')

(xi) either vs. also
(e.g. 'Ram also didn't pass.' for 'Ram didn't pass either.')

(xii) -self vs. -selves

3. The following items in English (given on the left side) do not have parallel constructions in Nepali/Newari. So while teaching these items the points given on the right side should be specifically noted.

(i) Reflexive pronouns	:	correlation with the preceding noun or pronoun.
(ii) Ordinal pro-forms	:	second eldest, last but one etc.
(iii) 'nothing/nobody'	:	They take verbs in (a) affirmative and (b) singular forms.
(iv) Responsive particles	:	Okay, will do, yes I will etc. (Nepali/Newari speakers tend to use 'Okay' all the time.)
(v) question tags	:	(a) these are modelled after the preceding sentence, (b) change in intonation pattern (Nepali/Newari speakers tend to use high-fall 'isn't it' all the time).
(vi) Emphatic particles	:	he himself, they themselves, but, right now, right here (Nepali/Newari speakers tend to use *now itself, *here itself)
(vii) Quotation	:	It is said that, s.o. says that (Nepali/Newari have a quotative particle instead.)

A few other likely errors are : *one time (for 'once') *ten time (for 'ten times'), *ten-rupees note (for 'ten-rupee note), *ten-days long journey (for 'ten-day long journey or ten days' long journey).

4. Nepali and Newari learners tend to overlook some of the functional distinctions of grammatically homonymous words, e.g. only a few learners seem to be aware of the fact that the nouns like <u>water</u>, <u>shell</u>, <u>skin</u> can also be used as transitive verbs.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

COMPARISON OF STEM FORMATION

Structurally stems in English, Nepali and Newari are either Simple or Complex. Simple stems are those monomorphemic roots that can stand by themselves as words. Complex stems are formed out of bases through derivation, composition or reduplication.

Unlike in English and Nepali, all the native words in Newari end in an open syllable.

13.1. Simple Stems

Simple stems are chiefly monosyllabic or disyllabic in English and Nepali but chiefly monosyllabic in Newari.

Newari monosyllabic stems in their syllable structure appear to exploit all the phonologically possible phonemic combinations in syllable nuclei. Such is not the case with English and Nepali. (This has naturally led to a high incidence of lexical homonymy in Newari monosyllabic stems.)

13.2. Complex Stems

All the three languages use the morphological processes of affixation (prefixation and suffixation), modification, composition, and reduplication to form complex stems. Of these processes derivation by suffixation and composition, on the whole, dominate in all the three languages.

English has, in addition, an abundance of derivation by prefixation but not much of derivation by modification, and reduplication. Nepali, on the contrary, uses derivation by prefixation rather restrictedly (mainly in literary, learned and technical terms) but uses derivation by modification, and particularly, reduplication relatively more freely and extensively. The same is true of Newari except that derivation by prefixation is extremely rare in it.

13.2.1. <u>Affixation</u>

All the three languages use prefixation and suffixation but not infixation to form complex stems. (Infixation is however observed in Newari in some of the negative verbal constructions where the negative marker /ma/ is infixed in the polysyllabic verb base, e.g.

wā: jite: natu-:	He speaks to me.
wā: jite: na-ma-tu-:	He does not speak to me.)

On the whole affixation is used more abundantly and more productively in English than inNepali and much more so than in Newari.

Affixes in English undergo morphophonemic fusion with the bases to which they are added. As a result many of the English affixes may have more than one form in terms of written shape, pronunciation and stress pattern. This is especially true of the Latin and Greek elements in the vocabulary.

Examples

1. in- 'not'
   in-definite, in-finite, in-correct
   im-moral, im-possible, im-perfect
   il-legal, il-logical
   ir-regular, ir-relevant

2. a- 'not, without'
   amoral [e^iˋmorl]
   aseptic [əˋseptik]
   apathy [ˋæpəθi]

3. ex- 'out, out of, from'
   export (N) [ˋekspo:t]
   export (V) [ikˋspo:t]
   exile (N or V) [ˋegza^il]
   exempt (A or V) [igˋzempt]

4. -tion 'nominalizer (V/A + tion --- N)'
   relation [rele^išn]
   competition [kəmpətišn]
   explanation [eksplene^išn]
   exemplification [igzemplifike^išn]
   crucifixion [krusifikšn]
   suspicion [səspišn]
   extension [ikstenšn]
   confusion [kənfyužn]

tension [tenšn]

precision [prisižn]

Such morphophonemic fusions and the resultant allomorphic alternations are rare in Nepali and still rarer in Newari.

Most of the prefixes are of classical origin both in English (from Greek and Latin) and in Nepali (from Sanskrit and Perso-Arabic). Prefixation is rare in Newari. Newari, however, borrows, rather freely (mainly in educated speech) most of the prefix-derived stems from Nepali as single units. (The fact that these prefixes are not used with native bases proves this.)

13.2.2. Modification

English has only a few stray cases of derivation by segmental modification (e.g., sing/song, fall/fell, feed/food, heat/hot) whereas Nepali has a few but well-defined and productive patterns of derivation by modification (cf. 3.2.3.). Newari has only one such pattern (cf. 8.3.2.). In Nepali and Newari this morphological process is used for causativization and transitivization of verbs.

English has in addition, unlike Nepali and Newari, derivation by modification in the accentual pattern with related vowel changes. Some common types may be illustrated:

'accent n.(-ent), accént v.t.(-ent)
'separate adj.(-et), séparate v.t.(-e¹t)
ábsent adj.(-ent), absént v.t.(-ent)
éxperiment n.(-ent), expériment v.i.(-ent)

13.2.3. Composition

In all the three languages endocentric constructions dominate over exocentric ones and within endocentric ones, subordinating ones dominate over coordinating ones. In English the subordinating construction 'N + N ---- N' and the alternative coordinating construction 'Num + Num ---- Num' account for most of the compounds. In Nepali and Newari, in addition to these two constructions, there is a third construction which is also quite common, namely the copulative coordinating construction 'N + N ---- N'.

13.2.4. Reduplication

English uses the process of reduplication only limitedly and chiefly with phonesthetic bases, often with a consonantal or vocalic modification, e.g. bow-wow, chit-chat, chop-chop, chug-chug, ding-dong, ping-pong, hotch-potch, hugger-mugger, jim-jams, riff-raff, teeny-tiny, zig-zag. Some non-phonaesthetic examples are: bye-bye, hocus-pocus, hanky-panky.

Nepali and Newari use this process extensively and extremely productively. The process is exploited for (i) forming adverbs of manner out of phonesthetic bases, (ii) conveying cumulative senses, (iii) pluralizing pro-stems, (iv) emphasizing verbs, adverbs etc., (v) particularizing things, (vi) expressing various shades of colour, temperature, size, weight etc. and etc. etc.

The reduplication may be unmodified or modified. The modification may be consonantal or vocalic and with or without an insertion of a particle or an emptymorph.

For details refer to 3.4. (Nepali Reduplication) and 8.4. (Newari Reduplication).

	Nepali	Newari	Common Gloss
(i)	u kwā-kwā royo	we hwaẽ:-hwaẽ: khwela	He cried bitterly.
(ii)	cya-sya	cya-ci	tea and things alike or things that usually go together with it
(iii)	ke-ke	chu-chu	what (pl.)
(iv)	khau (na) khau	na (re) na	Eat! (emphatic)
	chiṭo-chiṭo	yakena-yakena	quickly (emphatic)
(v)	raṭo raṭo	hyaṅgu-hyaṅgu	exclusively red ones
(vi)	ciso ciso	khwaū̃-khwaū̃	somewhat cold
	etc.	etc.	etc.

13.3. A Note on Phonesthetic Stems

From the point of view of the sound and sense relationship phonesthetic stems may be onomatopoetic, synaesthetic, or symbolic.

Onomatopoetic forms imitatatively denote a sound or an object which produces a sound. For example, the dog barks 'bow-wow' and the bell goes 'ding-dong' in English. The bird

'cuckoo' is named after the sound it makes and the game 'ping-pong' after the sound its ball makes.

Synaesthetic forms are based on resemblances between sound and the data of other senses. For example, the words - fly, flap, flip, flop, flit, flutter, flash, flare, flame, flicker, flimmer etc. -- correlate the sound [fl-] with the visual-kinaesthetic perception of a short-lived movement' in English. Similarly the sound [sl-] is correlated in English with the tactile perception of something 'smoothly wet' in the series of words : slime, slush, slop, slobber, slip, slide etc.

In symbolic forms the phonetic-semantic correlation is between the linguistic sound and various more or less abstract, non-tangible meanings. For instance the sound [i] correlates to something being relatively "smaller, neater' as opposed to the sound [ɔ] which correlates to something being relatively 'larger, duller'. For example, 'flip' (as in 'flipping a coin (down) on the counter') denotes a movement 'smaller, smarter, quicker,' than the one denoted by 'flap' (as in 'flapping of wings by a bird'). The movement denoted by 'flop' (as in 'flopping about by a fish caught in the bottom of a boat'), on the other hand, is 'heavier, clumsier, slower' than the one denoted by 'flap'.

Formally phonesthetic stems may be simple, derived or reduplicated.

All the three languages have all these varieties of phonesthetic stems, but Nepali and Newari, on the whole, seem to exploit this mechanism more copiously and more systematically.

Syntactically phonesthetic stems are used in English chiefly as verbs, sometimes as nouns or adjectives, and rarely as adverbs. Nepali and Newari also use these stems as verbs, nouns and adjectives, but what distinguishes these languages from English is their systematic, frequent and extremely productive use of these stems as adverbs of manner (especially in colloquial speech), e.g.

English	Nepali	Newari
He cried bitterly.	u kwā̃ kwā̃ royo	we hwā̃: hwā̃: khwale
He smiled gently.	u musukka hā̃syo	we musukka n̄hile
He farted inaudibly.	usle phusse paḍyo	wā̃: phusse khi tele
He ran away quietly.	u suṭṭo bhagyo	we sutte bisyewana
Blood streamed out profusely.	regat hwal hwalti ayo	hi bhwe: bhwe: wale
Blood trickled drop by drop	reget ṭop ṭap jharyo	hi tap tep wale
People rushed in	manishane hwarre pase (people rushingly entered)	manū̃:ta hwarre dwā̃:wale (people rushingly entered)
The bird flew away with a flutter.	cara bhurra uḍere gayo	jhangaːca bhurra bwai wana
The needle pricked with a thrust.	siyole ghwappa ghwapyo	mulū̃: cwasse sule
He gazed at me intently	usle malai kwar kwarti heryo	wā̃: jita: bhwe: bhwe: swale

13.4. A Note on Causativization

Semantically causativizations are of two types :

(Note: The numbering in the examples below correspond to one another in all the three languages so that the English ones serve both as examples of English causativization and as colloquial gloss to the Nepali and Newari causativizations.)

Type 1

become/get s.th. + causativization ---- cause to become/get s.th.

English

1. The fruits decayed. — He caused the fruits to decay.
2. The door opened. — He opened the door.
3. The clothes got wet. — He wetted the clothes.
4. The water became hot. — He heated the water.
5. The fire burnt. — He lit the fire.
6. The tree fell. — He felled the tree.
7. The building collapsed. — He demolished the building.
8. The building collapsed. — The wind collapsed the building.
9. The child became weak. — The medicine weakened the child.
10. The child became glad. — He made the child glad.

Nepali

1. phalphul saḍ-yo — usle phalphul saḍ-a-yo
2. dhoka khul-yo — usle dhoka khol-yo
3. luga bhij-yo — usle luga bhij-a-yo
4. pani taṭ-yo — usle pani taṭ-a-yo

5. ago bal-yo	usle ago bal-yo
6. rukh ḍhal-yo	usle rukh ḍhal-yo
7. ghar bhaṭk-yo	usle ghar bhaṭk-a-yo
8. ghar bhaṭk-yo	hawale ghar bhaṭk-a-yo
9. bacca kamjor bha-yo	ausadhile baccalai kamjor par-yo
10. bacca khusi bha-yo	usle baccalai khusi par-yo

Newari

1. phalphul dhwagi-ta	wē: phalphul dhwagi-k-ala
2. khapa ca-la	wē: khapa ca:-k-ala
3. lā: pya-ta	wē: lā: pya-k-ala
4. la: kwa-ta	wē: la: kwa-k-ala
5. mi cya-ta	wē: mi cya-k-ala
6. sima kwe:ḍ-ala	wē: sima kwe:th-ala
7. chyē ḍun-a	wē: chyē thun-a
8. chyē ḍun-a	phasā: chyē thun-a
9. maca kamjwar ju-la	waslā: macayata kamjwar ya-ta
10. maca khusi ju-la	wē: macayata khusi ya-ta

Type 2

do s.th. + causativization ---- make s.o. do that

English

11. The child ate rice. — (i) He fed rice to the child

(ii) He fed the child with rice.

12. The child worked. — He made the child work.

13. The child stole money.	He made the child steal money.
14. The child cried.	He made the child cry.
15. The child slept.	He made the child sleep.
16. The child died.	He killed the child.
17. The child went home.	He sent the child home.
18. The child made a toy.	He made the child make a toy.
19. Ram begged pardon of me.	He made Ram beg pardon of me.

Nepali

11. baccale bhat kha-yo	usle baccalai bhat khwa-yo
12. baccale kam gar-yo	usle baccalai kam gar-a-yo
13. baccale paisa cor-yo	usle baccalai paisa corna laga-yo
14. bacca ro-yo	usle baccalai rwa-yo
15. bacca sut-yo	usle baccalai sut-a-yo
16. bacca mar-yo	usle baccalai mar-yo
17. bacca ghar ga-yo	usle baccalai ghar paṭha-yo
18. baccale khelauna bana-yo	usle baccalai khelauna banauna laga-yo
19. ramle mesite maphi mag-yo	usle ramlai mesite maphi mag-na laga-yo
(Ram with me pardon begged)	(He to Ram with me pardon caused to beg).

Newari

11. macâ' ja na-le	wā̃' macayata ja na-k-ale
12. macā̃' jya ya-ta	wā̃' macayata jya ya-k-ale
13. macā̃' dhyeba khu-le	wā̃' macayata dhyeba khui-k-ale
14. maca khwa-le	wā̃' macayata khwa'-k-ale

15. meca dyan-e   wā: mecayate thyan-e

16. meca si-te   wā: mecayate sya-te

17. meca chyẽ wan-e   wā: mecayate chyẽ chwa-le

18. mecā: ñhewa:sa de:k-ele   wā: mecayate ñhewa:sa de:ke bi-le

19. ramā: jike: maphi phwan-e   wā: ramyate jike: maphi phwan-ke bi-le

19a. " " " "   " " " " phwan-k-ele

(Ram with me pardon begged)   (He to Ram with me pardon caused to beg)

Morphologically causativization may be brought about through:

in English	in Nepali	in Newari
————	suffixation (1,3,4,7,8,12,15)	suffixation (1 to 5, 11 to 14, 19a)
stem-class homonymy (2, 8)	————	————
modification (6)	modification (2,5,6,11,14,16)	modification (6,7,8,15,16)
suppletion (5,7,11,16,17)	suppletion (9,10,17)	suppletion (9,10,17)
different kinds of phrasal constructions	phrasal construction	phrasal construction
[V: cause to V(1) V: make V(12 to 15, 18, 19) [become / get] A: V(3,4,9) become A: make A(10)]	[V: V make(13,18, 19)]	[V: V make (18, 19)]

[Note: As for the last alternative, namely, phrasal construction, the languages differ. English contrasts between Verb, Become + Adjective on the one hand and Verb, Cause to + Verb, Make + Verb, Make + Adjective on the other hand. Nepali and Newari are similar; both contrast between Verb and Verb + Non-finite ending + Cause (in Nepali 'V + na + lagau'; in Newari 'V + ke + bi')]

Syntactically causativization may bring about the following changes in sentence structure.

English	Nepali / Newari
$N_1 + V_{cop} + A/N_2$ ------- $N_3 + V_{fac} + N_1 + A/N_2$ (10)	$N_1 + A/N_2 + V_{cop}$ ------- $N_3 + N_1 + A/N_2 + V_{fac}$ (9, 10)
$N_1 + V_{cop} + A$ --------- $N_2 + V_{tr} + N_1$ (3, 4, 9)	________________
$N_1 + V_{intr}$ --------- $N_2 + V_{tr} + N_1$ (2, 5 to 8, 16)	$N_1 + V_{intr}$ --------- $N_2 + N_1 + V_{tr}$ (1 to 8, 14 to 16)
$N_1 + V_{intr}$ --------- $N_8 + V_{fac} + N_1 + (to)\ V_{intr}$ (1, 12, 14, 15)	________________

$N_1 + V_{semitr} + R$ -------

$N_2 + V_{ditr} + N_1 + R$

(17)

$N_1 + R + V_{semitr}$ ------

$N_2 + N_1 + R + V_{ditr}$

(17)

$N_1 + V_{tr} + N_2$ -------

$\begin{bmatrix} N_3 + V_{ditr} + N_2 + R(N_1) \\ N_3 + V_{ditr} + N_1 + R(N_2) \end{bmatrix}$

(11)

$N_1 + N_2 + V_{tr}$ -------

$N_3 + N_1 + N_2 + V_{ditr}$

(Nep : 11, 12)

(New : 11, 12, 13)

$N_1 + V_{tr} + N_2$ -------

$N_3 + V_{ditr} + N_1 + V_{tr} + N_2$

(13, 18)

$N_1 + N_2 + V_{tr}$ -------

$N_3 + N_1 + N_2 + V_{tr} + V_{ditr}$

(Nep : 13, 18)

(New : 18)

$N_1 + V_{1\,ditr} + N_2 + R(N_3)$ ---

$N_4 + V_{2\,ditr} + N_1 + V_{1\,ditr} + N_2 + R(N_3)$

(19)

$N_1 + R(N_2) + N_3 + V_{1}ditr$ -----

$N_4 + N_1 + R(N_2) + N_3 + V_1 ditr + V_2 ditr$

(19)

English	Nepali	Newari
———	———	$N_1 + R(N_2) + N_3 + V_{ditr}$ ----- $N_4 + N_1 + R(N_2) + N_3 + V_{ditr}$ (19a)

13.5. A Note on Cardinal Numeral System

All the three languages have decimal system with the following differences :

English	Nepali	Newari
thir-teen etc. '(3-10) 13' etc.	te-ra etc. '(3-10) 13' etc.	jhin-swa etc. '(10-3) 13' etc.
thirty-four etc. '(30-4) 34' etc.	caũ-tis etc. '(4-30) 34' etc.	sui-pye etc. '(30-4) 34' etc.
thirty-nine etc. '(30-9) 39' etc.	unan-calis etc. '(-1-40) 39' etc	sui-gu etc. '(30-9) 39' etc.
[a / one] [hundred / thousand / etc.]	(ek) [sae / hajar / etc.]	[sa / dwa:] chi
'(1-[100 / 1000 / etc.]) [100 / 1000 / etc.]'	'((1)- [100 / 1000 / etc.]) [100 / 1000 / etc.]'	'([100 / 1000]-1) [100 / 1000]'
[but, two-hundred etc. '(2-100) 200' etc.	'dui-sae etc. '(2-100) 200' etc.	ñi-sa: etc. '(2-100) 200' etc.]
three-hundred and five etc. '(3-100 and 5) 305' etc.	tin-sae-pãc etc. '(3-100-5) 305' etc.	swe-sa: wa ña etc. '(3-100 and 5) 305' etc.

two-thousand-three-hundred and five etc.	dui-hejar-tin sae-pac etc.	ñi-dwa! we swe-se! we ña etc.
'(2-1000-3-100 and 5) 2305' etc.	'(2-1000-3-100-5) 2305'etc.	'(2-1000 and 3-100 and 5) 2305' etc.
————————	saḍe-tin-sae etc.	swe-ḍa!-tya etc.
	'(1/2-3-100) 350' etc.	'(3-100-1/2) 350' etc.

In addition, Nepali, unlike English and Newari, have these fractions: /sewa/ '1/4 / 1+1/4', /pauno/ '-1/4', /ḍeḍ/ '1+1/2', and /aḍai/ '2+1/2' (cf. 3.5.).

13.6. Pedagogic Applications

All the three languages use the morphological processes of affixation, modification, composition, and reduplication to form complex stems. So there is hardly any grammatical problem as such involved in teaching English derivation to the speakers of Nepali and Newari. Rather teaching English stem-formation largely involves lexical exercises.

The languages however differ in the relative load they place upon the various morphological processes as pointed out earlier (cf. 13.2). English exploits derivation by affixation and composition to a much greater extent than either derivation by modification or reduplication. So out of the total time allotted to teaching stem-formation in English, a great portion should go to teaching derivation by affixation and composition. A brief survey of main teaching points in this section follows:

1. Affixation

English uses derivation by affixation abundantly. This should be taught with proper contextualization. The morphophonemic changes that take place between the affixes and the bases should also be noted. This includes taking note of changes in accentual pattern with relative vowel changes (cf. 10.4.3 and 13.2.1.).

Some of the common derivational affixes are given below. (For their meaning, pronunciation and examples see Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English, 3rd ed. pp. 1032-5, or any other English grammar.)

Prefixes

a-, anti-, aut(o)-, be-, bi-, co-, con-, de-, di-, dis-, en-, equi-, ex-, extra-, fore-, in-, inter-, intra-, mal-, micro-, mis-, mono-, neo-, non-, out-, over-, poly-, post-, pre-, pro-, proto-, pseud(o)-, quasi-, re-, sub-, super-, tele-, un-, under-, up-, vice-, well-

Suffixes

N + Suf ---- N : -eer, -ese, -ess, ette, -hood, -ian, -ism,
-ist, -let, -man, -ship, -y

A + Suf ---- N : -cy (also -ecy), -ity, -ness

V + Suf ---- N : -ance (also -ence), -ant (also -ent), -ator, -ee,
-er, -ment, -or, -tion (also -sion, -ation,
-ition)

N + Suf ---- A : -able (also -ible), -al, -ary, -ate, -en, -ese, -esque, -ful, -ial, -ic, -ish, -less, -like, -ly, -ous, -worthy, -y

V + Suf ---- A : -ant (also -ent), -ative, -fic, -ive

N + Suf ---- V : -en, -(i)fy

A + Suf ---- V : -en, -(i)fy, -ize (also -ise)

N or A + Suf ---- Adv : -ly, -wise

N or Prep + Suf ---- Adv: -ward

Other Suffixes :

(i) used to form a noun : -ade, -age, -an, -arian, -cracy, -crat, -dom, -(e)ry, -ics, -ide, -ling, -logy, -ory, -tude, -ure

(ii) used to form an adjective: -fold, -form, -some, -ish

2. Modification

English has many instances of derivation by modification in the accentual pattern with relative vowel changes. Some common types are :

record	n.	[ˈrekɔ:d]	v.t.	[rikˈɔ:d]
contrast	n.	[ˈkɔntra:st]	v.t., v.i.	[kenˈtra:st]
accent	n.	[ˈæksent]	v.t.	[ekˈsent], [ækˈsent]
experiment	n.	[ikˈsperiment]	v.i.	[ikˈsperiment]
absent	adj.	[ˈæbsent]	v.t.	[ebˈsent], [æbˈsent]
separate	adj.	[ˈsepret[	v.t., v.i.	[ˈsepere[1]t]

Nepali and Newari speakers tend to pronounce these words alike whether they function as a(n) noun/adjective or a verb, the common pronunciation used being the ones with the fewest reduced vowels.

They may also fail to notice functional distinctions of some of these words -- thus only a few learners seem to be aware of the fact that 'absent' and 'accent' can also be used as verbs.

3. Composition

English has a large number of compounds most of which are idiomatic in sense. As lexical problems lie outside our scope these are not discussed here.

However, a pronunciation peculiarity which should be brought home to the learners, may be noted here. A compound word is generally pronounced with the only primary accent at the beginning of it. Compare :

1a. I ˋlike this ˋred ˋcap.

b. ˋCall a ˋred-cap.

2a. We ˋlove ˋletters.

b. ˋLove-letters are ˋinteresting to ˋread.

3a. He ˋwent home ˋsick and ˋtired.

b. I am ˋhome-sick.

4. Reduplication

The various senses conveyed by reduplication in Nepali and Newari are conveyed by different means in English. For example, the adverbial sense of manner usually conveyed by reduplicated stems in Nepali and Newari are conveyed in English by different adverbs like bitterly, gently, loudly, quietly, profusely, intently, hurriedly, etc. (cf. 13.2.4 and 13.3.).

Nepali and Newari learners tend to be poor in their stock of such adverbs.

5. Causativization

The following points should be noted while teaching causativization :

(i) Unlike in Nepali and Newari, causativization in English cannot be brought about through suffixation but, on the other hand, it may also be brought about through stem-class homonymy. The latter point is more important for our present purpose. The Nepali and Newari learners should be made aware of the fact that, unlike in their native languages, most of the verb stems in English can function intransitively as well as transitively, e.g. 'The door opened.' and 'He opened the door.' 'The cream separated from the milk.' 'The churner separated the cream from the milk.

(ii) In Nepali and Newari causativization is brought about mainly through suffixation and modification; in English it is brought about mainly through stem-class homonymy, suppletion and phrasal changes.

(iii) Causativizations with the following syntactic changes have no parallel counterparts in Nepali and Newari (hence need special attention):

(a) $N_1 + V_{cop} + A$ ----- $N_2 + V_{tr} + N_1$
(The clothes got wet.) (He wetted the clothes.)

(b) $N_1 + V_{intr}$ ----- $N_2 + V_{fac} + N_1 +$ (to) V_{intr}
(The child slept.) (The drug caused the child to sleep.)

(iv) For a given semantic situation the means through which causativization is brought about may vary from language to language. In the following example it is brought about through phrasal change in English, but through suffixation in Nepali and through modification in Newari.

Eng :	The child slept.	He made the child sleep.
Nep :	bacca sut-yo	usle baccalai sut-a-yo
New :	maca dyan-e	wa' macayata thyan-e

The examples given in 13.4. will illustrate this point further.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

COMPARISON OF INFLECTION

Inflection, both nominal and verbal, is a common feature of all the three languages. However inflections in Nepali and Newari are more varied and complicated than in English.

Stems in English may inflect by suffixation, modification, homonymous forms, or suppletion. Of these inflection by suffixation is the most dominating one. In addition, cases of inflection by modification and by homonymous forms are considerably numerous

Stems in Nepali and Newari inflect mainly by suffixation. In addition, there are also a few cases of inflection by reduplication.

Inflections by modification and homonymous forms are unknown in Nepali and Newari just as inflection by reduplication is unknown in English. All the three languages have a few instances of inflection by suppletion.

Newari shows a high degree of morphophonemic fusion between the stems and suffixes. It is so mainly because several of the Newari inflectional suffixes consist of cosegmental features like nasalization and length. Nepali shows very little such fusion. English shows fusion to a moderate degree.

14.1. Nominal Inflection

English, Nepali, and Newari have the following inflectional grammatical categories for nominals :

English	Nepali	Newari
Gender	Gender	______
Number	Number	Number
Person	Person	Person
Case	______	Case

It may be pointed out that Gender in English is vestigial. Indeed some grammarians deny that English has any gender distinctions.

14.1.1. Gender

Gender is a grammatical category in Nepali but not in Newari, and not very prominently so in English.

In Nepali most of the nouns, a large number of adjectives and some of the pronouns and proadjectives inflect for Gender making a two-fold distinction: Non-Feminine vs. Feminine. English third person singular pronouns do make Male/Female/Non-human (he/she/it) distinction and the nouns select one of these pronouns. Newari does not make even this distinction.

14.1.2. Number

All the three languages have Number as an inflectional grammatical category. All of them make the Singular vs. Plural distinction.

In English most of the nouns and the demonstrative pronouns/proadjectives 'this' and 'that' inflect for number overtly.

Adjectives and proadjectives of quality do not inflect for number. Other pronouns, adjectives, and proadjectives (the last two of which are often grouped together as 'determiners') are inherently either singular or plural. Thus one, a(n), each, every, another, anything, someone, I, he, she, it are inherently singular whereas two, some, all, many, a few, several, we, they are inherently plural. A few proadjectives -- the, other, majority of, any -- and the personal pronoun 'you' can correlate with singular as well as plural nouns. Some of these, for instance the personal pronouns -- I/ we; he, she, it/they -- can be said to inflect by suppletion. The adverbial classifier 'time' also inflects for number, e.g. 'one time (or once)' but 'ten times'. The pronoun 'other' has a plural 'others'.

In Nepali and Newari most of the nominals inflect for number. Nouns and personal and demonstrative pronouns inflect by suffixation, the same suffix being used for both. Reduplication is used for pluralization with most of the other nominals.

Unlike in English, even adjectives and proadjectives of quality do inflect for number, the Newari ones under restricted circumstances throgh. Classifiers in Nepali and Newari do not inflect for number.

12.1.3. Person

Personal pronouns in all the three languages inflect for Person by suppletion. All of them make a three-fold distinction for person. Nouns in all the three languages belong to the third person.

12.1.4. Case

Newari has an elaborate case system (Nouns/Pronouns/Classifiers: Nominative, Genitive, Comitative, Objective, Ablative-Ergative, Locative). English has a case system only marginally. (Nouns: Unmarked (N) and Genitive (N's); Pronouns: Unmarked (he), Genitive (his), and Objective (him)). Nepali has no case system at all. The senses (semantic as well as grammatical) conveyed by various case endings in Newari are conveyed by postpositions in Nepali, and partly by case-ending, partly by prepositions, and partly by syntactic position in English.

The following listings roughly present the formal correspondences between the three languages :

English	Nepali	Newari
N/Pn	N/Pn	N/Pn-Nom
N-Gen/Pn-Gen of N(-Gen)/Pn-Gen	N/Pn k-C "	N/Pn-Gen "
N/Pn (with the main V-have)	N/Pn sita (with V-exist)	N/Pn-Com (with V-exist)
(to) N/(to)Pn-Obj	N/Pn lai	N/NP-Obj
N/Pn	N/Pn le	N/NP-Abl-Erg
by N/by Pn-Obj(Passive)	"	"
with N/with Pn(Instrument)	"	"
from N/from Pn-Obj	N/Pn baṭe	"
on, in, at N/on, in at Pn-Obj.	N/Pn ma	N/Pn-Loc

For form-function correlations refer to 9.1.4 and 10:3.4 (Newari) and 5.3.4 (Nepali).

14.2. Verb Inflection

An English verb stem can occur in one of the five inflected forms, V, V^s, V^ed, V^en, V^ing. Similarly a Newari verb stem can occur in fifteen various inflected forms. Nepali has a bewildering number of such inflected forms.

English, Nepali, and Newari have the following inflectional grammatical categories for verbs :

English	Nepali	Newari
Mood	Mood	Mood
Tense	Tense	Tense
Aspect	Aspect	Aspect
Person	Person	Person
Number	Number	———
———	Gender	———

In the indicative (i.e. Unmarked) mood, Tense, Person, Number have fused realizations in English. Similarly Person, Number, Gender have fused realizations inNepali and Tense, Aspect, Person have fused realizations in Newari

Tense in Nepali is marked by the verb 'be' (ch! Non-Past vs. thy! Past).

Aspect as a finite category at the morphological level is a pecularity of the newari language alone.

The fuller description of the realizations of all the verbal categories involve, in addition to inflections, phrasal constructions in all the three languages and, therefore, this description along with the English-Nepali-Newari correspondences is postponed till the VP section (15.1.6).

Here only a brief sketch of correlation between various inflected forms and the grammatical categories they represent for each language is presented.

English

Finite

Mood : Imperative : V

Mood	Tense	Person-Number	
Indicative	Non-Past	3rd Sg	: V^s
(Unmarked)		Rest	: V
	Past		: V^ed

Non-Finite

Aspect : Perfective : V^en
Progressive : V^ing

Infinitive : V

Nepali

Finite

Mood : Imperative : V^s
2nd Imperative : V^nu
Optative : V^os
Proponent : V^aũ

Mood	Person	Number	Gender	Tense	
				Non-Past	Past
Indicative (Unmarked)	I	Sg		ch-u	thy-ẽ
		Pl		ch-aũ	thy-aũ
	II			ch-au	thy-au
	III	Sg	Non-Fem	ch-a	thy-yo
			Fem	ch-i(n)	thy-i(n)
		Pl		ch-an	thy-e

(Note: (i) thy ----- th / -- V front, -y

(ii) V-stem + Simple Aspect + Past + GNoP

----- V-Stem + Simple Aspect + GNoP

e.g., gar + a + th + yo ----- gar-a-yo "(He) did"

but (iii) V-Stem + Habitual Aspect + Past + GNoP remains intact,

e.g., gar-de-th-yo "(He) used to do")

Non-Finite

Mood :	Surprise	:	V^e
	Necessity	:	V^nu
	Conditioned	:	V^ema
Aspect:	Simple	:	V^a
	Habitual	:	V^de
	Prospective	:	V^ne
	Perfective	:	V^ek-C
	Progressive	:	V^dai
	Concurrent	:	V^da
	Anterior	:	V^era
	Terminative	:	V^unjel

Inifinitive: V-na

Newari

Finite

Mood : Imperative : V¯i

Mood	Tense	Aspect	Person 1st	Person Non-1st
Indicative (Unmarked)	Non-Future	Narrative	V¯a	V¯ala
		Descriptive	V¯a	V¯u:
	Future		V¯e	V¯i:
	Future			

Non-Finite

Aspect : Anterior : V¯a:

Concurrent: V¯u V¯ũ:

Anterior Durative : V¯u V¯ũ: V¯u V¯ũ:

Infinitive$_1$: V¯e

Infinitive$_2$: V¯egu

Infinitive$_3$: V¯ete

Infinitive$_4$: V¯e:

Gerundive : V¯a

Oblique : V¯u

Shortened form : V (or, in case of polysyllabic stem : the first syllable)

It is to be noted that things like the use of auxiliaries in VP, the semantic range of the categories, the subject-verbs

agreement, the morphological classes of verb stems, the role of suffixation and modification in allomorphic alternations in stems as well as endings etc. are bound to be different from language to language and so are they in case of English, Nepali and Newari. At morphological level at least English is much simpler than Nepali or Newari. Nepali has the most complicated verb morphology of the three languages.

Of the two languages Nepali and Newari, the former seems to have more points of resemblance with English. For example both English and Nepali have Number as in inflectional category for verbs, Tense in both the languages make 'Non-Past vs. Past' distinction and so on.

14.3. Pedagogic Applications

1. The inflectional system in English is relatively much more simple than it is in Nepali or Newari. As such the Nepali and Newari students should have little difficulty in learning it. Problem, if any, will be limited largely to a few irregular cases.

2. It is to be noted that, unlike in Nepali and Newari, English has many instances of inflection by vocalic modification (foot : feet, come : came etc.) and by homonymous forms [sheep (sg: pl), looked (past: past participle), put (unmarked : past : past participle) etc.]. Another instance

of regular homonymy is between unmarked plural and genitive singular and plural, e.g. [gə:lz] in "we all love <u>girls</u>.", "I don't like that <u>girl's</u> habit." and "This is a <u>girls'</u> hostel." (The use of apostrophe for genitive is only a written device.)

3. The morphophonemic fusion of the inflectional markers -s (plural or genitive with nouns and third person singular number present tense with verbs) and -ed (past tense) may be specifically noted. The Nepali and Newari learners almost invariably pronounce -s as [s] even following non-homorganic voiced consonants (e.g. 'bags' as *[bægs], 'teams' as *[ti:ms]), and -ed as [d] even following non-homorganic voiceless consonants (e.g. 'looked' as *[lukd], 'laughed' as *[la:fd]. They also invariably replace [ɨz] and [ɨd] by [^{y}ez] and [^{y}ed] respectively (e.g. 'batches' *[bæc^{y}ez], 'wanted' *[want^{Y}ed]).

4. English third person singular pronouns correlate to nouns as follows: he: human male, she: human female, it: non-human. This is easy enough to learn for any learner. In addition, a few irregularities should also be learnt: even a human baby or child may also be referred to as 'it', on the other hand, nations, ships, aeroplaness etc., though non-human, are often referred to by 'she'; animals may be referred to as 'he' or 'she' at times.

5. The Nepali and Newari learners, unless properly taught, may fail to learn some of the following irregularities or potentially misleading cases regarding number inflection in

English, and, consequently commit errors through false analogy within English rather than false analogy with the filter language.

(i) fan	:	fans	but	man	:	men
field	:	fields	"	child	:	children
fox	:	foxes	"	ox	:	oxen
mongoose	:	mongooses	"	goose	:	geese
book	:	books	"	foot	:	feet
roof	:	roofs	"	hoof	:	hooves (also hoofs)
				wife	:	wives
heap	:	heaps	"	sheep	:	sheep
house	:	houses	"	mouse	:	mice

(Note: 'houses' is to be pronounced [ha^{u}zɨz], not *[ha^{u}sez] as most of the Nepali and Newari speakers tend to pronounce it.)

(ii) (a) The plural of axis, thesis etc. are axes [æksiz], theses [θisiz] etc. respectively.

(b) The plural of radius, calculus etc. are radii, calculi etc. pronounced [-a^{i}], not [i].

(Note: These items should be introduced only at much later stage of teaching.)

(iii) Phenomena, criteria, data are plural nouns. Their singular forms are phenomenon, criterion, datum, respectively. (The Nepali and Newari learners often

tend to use phenomena, criteria, data as singular nouns and pluralize them as phenomena(e)s, criteria(e)s, data(e)s respectively. The genuine singular forms are rarely used.)

(iv) The noun 'vehicle' is countable, but the nouns 'furniture', 'stationery', 'information' etc. are uncountable.

(v) 'news' or 'the United States' is singular but 'police' is plural. (The learners may be carried away by the spellings of these words and use the former as plural nouns and the latter as a singular noun.)

(vi) The Number of phrasal adjectives like a bulk of, the majority of, fifty percent of, three-fourth of depends upon the noun that follows them. This is important from the point of view of the subject-Verb agreement. Thus we have :

The majority of population is illiterate.

but " " " people are "

(vii) Some other types of errors (relating to number inflection) that are likely to be committed by the speakers of Nepali and Newari are: *every girl(s) are..., *ten time, *which which books, *blacks girls. Of these all but the first one are theoretically predictable but are found to be extremely rare in actual practice.

6. The Nepali and Newari learners tend to commit the following types of errors partly due to filter language interference and partly due to erroneous target language false analogy.

(i) Thailand's king's N (for the more acceptable 'the king of Thailand's N' or, 'N of the king of Thailand')

See :

Nepali :	thailæng ko	raja ko	N
Newari :	thailænd-ya(-me)	juju-ya	N
Lit.Gloss:	Thailand's	king's	N

(ii) *table's leg (for 'the leg of the table')

See :

Nepali :	manis ko / kukur ko / tebal ko	khuṭṭa
Newari :	manũ:-yagu / khica-yagu / tyebal-yagu	tuti
Lit.Gloss:	man's / dog's / *table's	leg

(iii) *He beat to me. (for 'He beat me.')

See :

<u>English</u>	<u>Nepali</u>	<u>Newari</u>
He said to Ram	usle ram lai bhanyo	wã: ram-yata dhala
*He beat to Ram	usle ram lai piṭyo	wã: ram-yata dala

(The Nepali and Newari speakers tend to correlate English 'to' with Nepali postposition /lai/ and Newari Objective-ending /-yate/ respectively as semantic equivalents.)

7. The five-fold distinction of verb inflections (V, V⁀s, V⁀ed, V⁀en, V⁀ing) is maintained only by a few verbs. Most of the verbs have a common form for the third and the fourth. A few have a common form for the first and the third. A few others have a common form for the first and the fourth. Still a few others have a common form for the first, the third and the fourth. The second and the fifth forms are always kept distinct.

8. The anomalous nature of the verbs 'be', 'have', and the modal verbs may also be noted.

C H A P T E R   F I F T E E N

COMPARISON OF SYNTAX

This chapter presents a brief comparative study of English, Nepali and Newari syntax.

Sections 1 and 2 deal with Phrase Types and Phrase Combinations respectively. The remaining three sections are devoted to Sentence Types, Sentence Variations and Sentence Combinations respectively.

Sentence variations include Reporting, Exclamation, Passivization, Emphasis, Question, Negation, and brief notes on Zero Anaphora and Reordering within a Sentence.

Under sentence combinations are discussed Sentence Embedding and Sentence Conjoining.

Each section concludes with a brief note on the pedagogical applications of the comparison made in that section. (We have deviated here from the practice of chapters 11 to 14 in view of the exceptional length of this chapter.)

15.1. Phrase Types

Any grammatical construction which is at least a word and is less than a sentence constitutes a phrase. A phrase with a finite verb but which forms only a part of a sentence is a clause.

A phrase may, therefore, be composed of a word or a group of words linked together as modifier-to-head or head-to-head. The head-to-head constructional phrases will be taken up in the next section (15.2. Phrase Combinations).

Functionally and structurally English, Nepali, and Newari phrases may be divided into the following six types:

1. Noun Phrase (NP)
2. Adjective Phrase (AP)
3. Adverb Phrase (AdvP)
4. Prepositional/Postpositional Phrase (PP)
5. Non-Finite Phrase (Non-FinP)
6. Verb Phrase (VP)

Note : The VP, which contains the main verb and its auxiliaries, is used here in a sense clearly different from the sense in which Chomsky uses the term.

15.1.1. Noun Phrase (NP)

The following patterns are common to all the three languages :

NP ------- [(AP) + N | ProN | Non-FinP | N-Clause]

Observations

1. Nepali and Newari, in addition, have NP ---- A-Num, and NP ---- PP respectively, e.g.

Nepali		Newari
car bajyo	It is/was 4(o' clock).	car baje: jule
four struck		four o'clock happened

2. Within an NP, APs which are grammatically complex are, as a rule, placed after the noun in English. In Nepali and Newari this is not the case; only the full fledged relative clauses can be optionally placed after the noun.

3. Though relative clauses are available in Nepali and Newari as well, the non-finite phrases and classifier clauses (cf. 15.5.1.) which function as APs are preferred in Nepali and Newari respectively. Thus literally 'having a big nose man' in Nepali, and 'the-nose-is-big sort-of man' in Newari rather than the relative 'the man who has a big nose'.

4. In English the antecedent 'that' of a what-relative clause is as a rule deleted. It is not so in Nepali and Newari, e.g.

Eng : What he said, <u>that</u> is not correct.
---- What he said is not correct.

Nep : usle je bhanyo, <u>tyo</u> ṭhik chaina

New : wẽ: chu dhale, <u>wo</u> ṭhik maju:

15.1.2. <u>Adjective Phrase (AP)</u>

The following patterns are common to all the three languages :

AP ------- [(Int +) A | A-Num | ProA | PP | Non-FinP | A-Clause]

<u>Observations</u>

1. In addition, the following matching patterns are also observed:

English	Nepali	Newari
A + PP	PP + A	PP + A
black as coal	gol jasto kalo	hyengwa: thẽ: haku
NP-Gen/PP	PP	NP-Gen
Ram's/of the tree	ram ko/rukh ko	ram-ya/sima-ya

2. Almost all the APs in Newari include a Classifier at the end position when they function attributively. In Nepali only the quantifying APs take it. In English quasi-classifiers like piece, heap etc. may occur in quantifying APs of the type 'two pieces of', 'how many heaps of'.

15.1.3. Adverb Phrase (AdvP)

The following patterns are common to all the three languages.

AdvP ------- [(mod +) [Adv / ProAdv] | A-Num + Adv-Classifier | PP | Non-FinP | Adv-Clause]

Observations

1. Newari, in addition, has 'AdvP ---- NP-Case ending' corresponding to which English and Nepali have 'AdvP ---- PP', e.g.

Newari	English	Nepali
simā:	from the tree	rukh baṭe

2. A given adverbial notion may often be conveyed by different patterns in the three languages, e.g.

Eng:	He worked attentively.	(Adv)
Nep:	usle dhyan purbak kam garyo	(PP)
New:	wā: man taya: jya yate	(Non-FinP)

15.1.4. Prepositional/Postpositional Phrase (PP)

PPs in English on the one hand and in Nepali and Newari on the other hand pattern as follows:

English	Nepali-Newari
Prep + [NP / AP-Num / AdvP / Non-FinP]	[NP / AP-Num / AdvP / Non-FinP] + Postp

Observations

1. The obvious difference is that English PPs are centered on a preposition whereas Nepali and Newari PPs are centred on a postposition.
2. English can have a sequence of only two prepositions (as in 'from behind the curtain'), Nepali can have a sequence of upto three postpositions, and Newari can have upto four postpositions (cf. 5.1.4. and 10.1.6.).
3. It will be noted that many of the PPs in English and Nepali correspond to NP-case ending constructions in Newari (cf. observation 1 of 15.1.3.)

15.1.5. Non-Finite Phrase (Non-FinP)

The verb stem and the auxiliary non-finite expansions together constitute the nucleus of the non-finite phrases in all the three languages. This nucleus is optionally preceded

in Nepali and Newari, and followed in English by an open set of accompaniments like complements etc. The nucleus may also be optionally followed in Nepali and Newari, and preceded in English by a few closed-set accompaniments.

A Non-FinP may function as an NP, AP, or AdvP in all the three languages.

A broad correspondance between various kinds of Non-FinPs of the three languages is established here. The phrases in question are bracketed in the examples below. The sequence of presentation is Nepali, English and Newari.

<u>Non-FinPs that function as an NP</u>

	Nepali	English	Newari
1.	V-ne	to V/V-ing	V-e

Nep: [phuṭbal khel-ne] garo cha

Eng: [[To play / Playing] football] is difficult.

New: [phutbal mhit-e] thaku

u [phuṭbal khel-ne] manparaũcha

He likes [to play football].

He enjoys [playing football]

waya [phutbal mhit-e] ye:

2. V-nu to V/V-ing V-egu

[cherai khel-nu] thik chaina

[[To play] too much] is not good.
[Playing]

[apwa! mhit-egu] thik maju!

Non-FinPs that function as an AP

	Nepali	English	Newari
3.	V-ne	to V	V-egu

[bahal ma di-ne] ghar

a house (to let]

[bala! bi-!gu] chyẽ (NB! bi-egu ---- bi!gu)

yo [khel-ne] khelaũna hoina

This is not a toy [to play]

thwa [mhit-egu] ñhewa!sa makhu

4. V-i-rah-eko V-ing V-a-cwã! + Classifier.

[uḍ-i-rah-eko] cara

a [flying] bird

[bwa-ya-cwã!-me] jhãnga! (NB! bwa + a ----- bwa-ya)

[kwaṭha ma khel-i-rah-eko] bacca

the child [playing in the room]

[kwathae! mhit-a-cwã!-me] maca

5. V-eko V-en V-u' + Classifier

[phuṭ-eko] gilas

a [broken] glass

[tejya-'-gu] gilas (NB' tejya + u' ---- tejya')

[ram le khel-eko] phuṭbel

the football [played by Ram]

[ramē' mhit-u'-gu] phutbel

<u>Non-FinPs that function as an AdvP</u>

6. V-ne To V V-e'

u [khel-ne] gayo

He went [to play].

we [mhit-e'] wene

7. V-ne(lai) (in order) to V V-ete

me lai [khel-ne (lai)] phurset chaine

I have no time [(in order) to play].

jite' [mhit-ete] phurset maru

8. V-dei (V-dei) V-ing all the while V-u-V-ū'

u [khel-dei (khel-dei)] gayo

He went [playing all the while].

we [mhit-u mhit-ū'] wene

9. V-da (kheri) while V-ing V-e bele'

[khel-da (kheri)] risaunu hunne

we should not [get angry / lose our temper] [while playing].

[mhit-e bale:] tā:cae: mejyu:

10. V-ne bitikai — immediately after — V-e satki
 = V-na sath — V-ing

u [khel-ne bitikai = khel-na sath] gayo

He left [immediately after playing].

we [mhit-e satki] wene

11. V-era — having V-en — V-a:

u [dui ghanta khel-era] gayo

[Having played for two hours] he left.

we [dui ghanta mhit-a:] wene

12. V-da-V-da — having V-en for a very long time — V-u-V-ū:-V-u-V-ū:

[khel-da khel-da] akhir ma u calnai sakena

[Having played for a very long time] at last he could not move at all.

[mhit-u-mhit-ū: mhit-u-mhit-ū:] akhira: we sene ye maphete

13. V-eko (huna)le — being V-en — V-u: gulī:

[naramro eita har-eko (huna) le] pheri kahilai kheldine bhanera usle pratigya garyo

[Being defeated badly] he vowed that he would never play again.

[bā:malaka bu-: gulī:] a: gubalē: mhite makhute dhaka: wā: paphe:kala

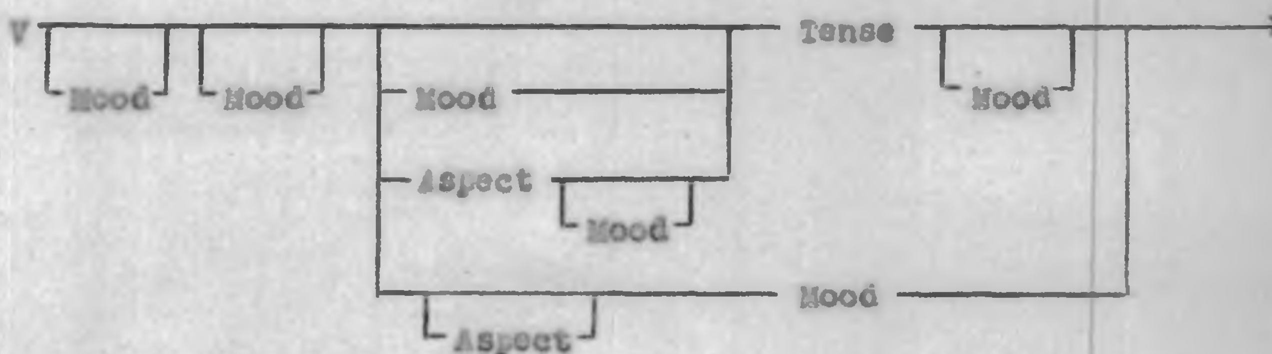
Note: 1. The Newari constructions with Classifiers (nos.4 & 5) and with the subordinating conjunction gulī: (no.13) are Clauses.

2. More such examples, where what is expressed by a Non-FinP in one language is expressed by an embedded clause in the other languages, can be cited.

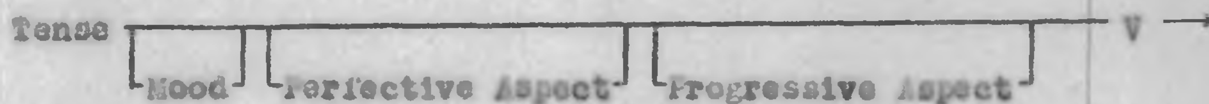
15.1.6. Verb Phrase (VP)

The VPs in Nepali, English, and Newari broadly pattern as follows :

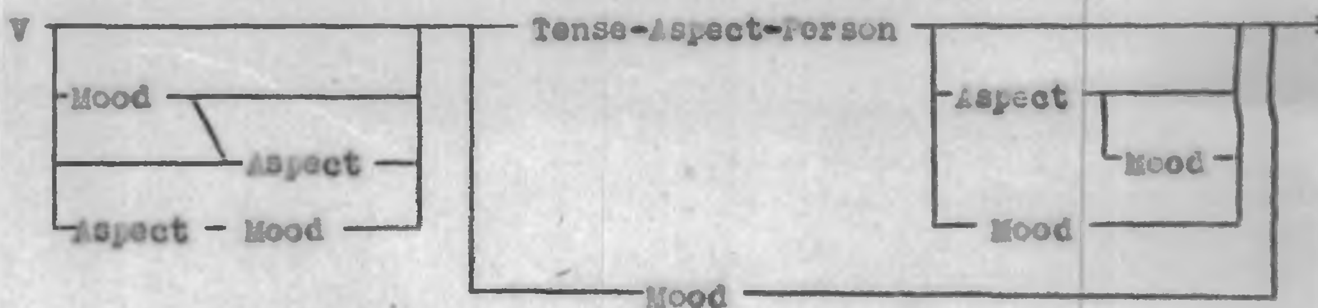
Nepali



English



Newari



The broad correspondences between the categories of Tense, Aspect, and Mood of the three languages are as follows :

Tense

Nepali		English		Newari
Past	-----	Past	-----	Non-Future
Non-Past (= Present)	-----	Non-Past	-----	Future

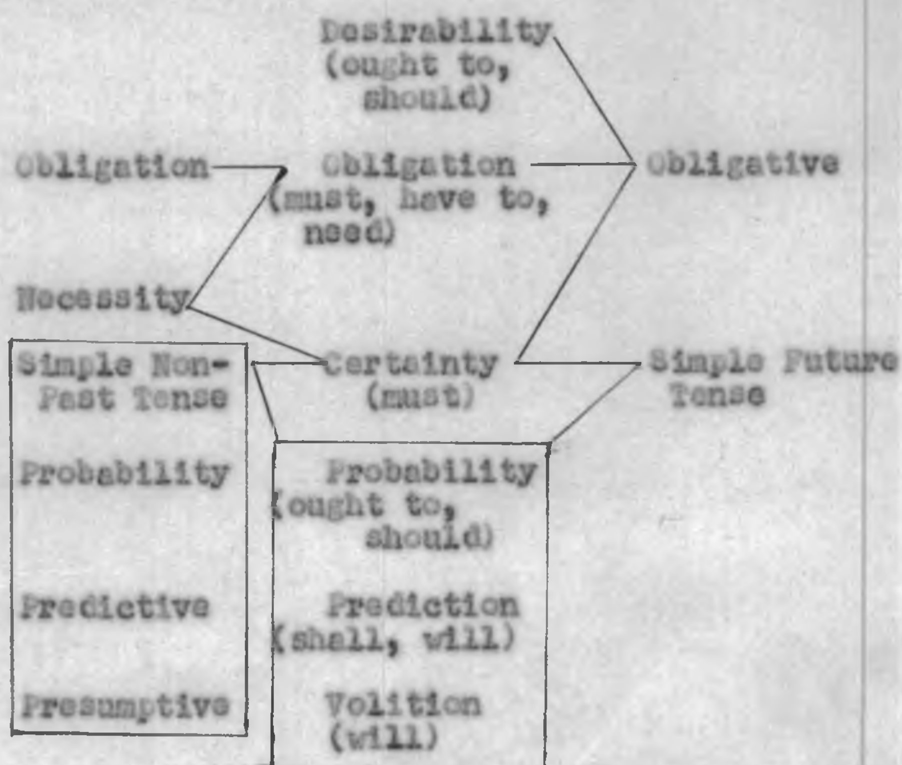
Note : The Non-Future tense in Newari obligatorily occur along with one of the two Aspects : Narrative and Descriptive.

Aspect

Nepali		English		Newari
Unmarked	----	Unmarked	----	Unmarked with Future-Tense; Narrative or Descriptive with Non-Future Tense
Habitual	----	Habitual (used to)	----	Unmarked with Future Tense; Descriptive with Non-Future Tense
(2nd) Progressive	----	(Perfective) Progressive	---	Progressive
(2nd) Perfective Def.	----	Perfective	---	Completive
(2nd) Perfective Indef.				
(2nd) Prospective	----	Prospective (going to)	---	Unmarked Future Tense

Mood

Nepali	English	Newari
Indicative (Unmarked)	Indicative (Unmarked)	Indicative (Unmarked)
(2nd) Imperative	Imperative	Imperative
Optative	Optative (may)	Optative
Proposal	Proposal (Let me/us)	Proponent
Ability	Ability (can, could)	Abilitative
Possibility (-na sak)	Possibility (may, might, can)	Potential
Permission (-na sak)	Permission (may, can)	Permissive 1st, 2nd, 3rd



Counterfactual condition (-eko bhae/ -eko hũdohote)	Counterfactual condition (had, should, were to)	Counterfactual condition (-u'gu ju'sa)
Consequence of counterfactual condition (-ne thyo)	Consequence of counterfactual condition (would have/ could have)	Counterfactive (V-i' gu)

15.1.7. Pedagogic Applications

1. The use of articles in English NPs is a common problem to the speakers of Nepali and Newari (cf. observation under 12.1.).
2. Unless properly taught the Nepali and Newari learners of English may avoid the use of constructions like "It is/was four (o'clock)." Thus, even where the context demands the use of a construction like "It was four (o'clock) when I reached there", the Nepali and Newari learners may use "I reached there at four (o'clock)". Whenever possible they tend to replace the full construction simply by 'four (o'clock)', e.g. "What's the time now?" "Four (o'clock)."
3. The following points should be noted while teaching the construction 'NP ----- N + Relative AP' to the Nepali and Newari students:
   (i) The selection of the appropriate Relative Pronominal depends on the antecedent, as, in : 'man who(m)/that',

'dog/book which/that', 'time when', 'place where', reason why', 'he who/that', 'those who/that', 'that which'.

(ii) The relative pronoun may function as the subject, or Object, or Adverbial in the relative clause, e.g.

the box which broke into pieces

the boxes some of which were broken

the box Ram broke

the box in which Ram kept his books

(iii) The proper identification of the antecedent for purposes of the concord of the finite verb in the relative clause : The learners tend to concord the verb of the relative clause with the matrix Subject rather than with the proper antecedent, e.g. *"He is one of the boys who has a very good command over English."

(iv) Further transformations of the relative clauses :

(a) Deletion of the that relative pronoun other than the Subject, e.g.

'the girl (that) he loves'.

(b) Resulting in a Non-FinP, e.g.

'the old man (who is), walking with a stick in his hand', 'the man (who is) just returned from Japan', 'the girl who has blue eyes ---- the girl having blue eyes'.

(c) Resulting in a PP, e.g. 'the book (which is) on the table', 'the girl who has blue eyes ----- 'the girl with blue eyes'.

(d) Resulting in an appositional NP, e.g. 'Ram (who is) the son of Dasarath'

4. The embedding marker 'that' of the that-Noun clause functioning as an object can be deleted optionally except in formal style. Thus, with formal verbs like assert, recognize, and the like deletion of 'that' is not at all common.

5. APs of comparison like 'blacker than coal' may be problematic to the Nepali and Newari learners. Examine the Nepali and Newari translation equivalents :

Nepali :	gol	bhenda	kalo
Newari :	hyengwa:	sike:	haku
	coal		black
	"blacker	than	coal"

Note that the Nepali/Newari adjectives do not inflect like the English 'blacker'. Also note that there is every likelihood of the Nepali/Newari learners equating bhenda/sike: with the English 'than'.

They may therefore be expected to come up with constructions like *'black than coal', or through false analogy and poor learning *'beautifuler than Sita', *'more black than coal'

*'more blacker than coal'. The last one may be used to replace either 'blacker than coal' or 'far blacker than coal'.

6. The other problem that the speakers of Nepali and Newari face in AP is the sequencing of amplificatory adjectives of quality, e.g., 'an expensive big brown wooden (box)'. The sequencing of such adjectives is very flexible in Nepali and Newari. It is much more constrained in English.
7. The AdvPs and PPs should not be too difficult for the Nepali and Newari learners to learn.
8. Non-FinPs are relatively much simpler in English than in Nepali or Newari. The main point to be highlighted while teaching Non-FinPs is that the Non-FinPs in English make a three-fold distinction both structurally (to V vs. V-ing vs. V-en) and functionally (nominal vs. adjectival vs. adverbial). What we are mainly concerned with while teaching English Non-FinPs is the correlation between these structures and functions.
9. The problems regarding English VPs are too varied, too subtle and too numerous to be accounted for in our present study which is essentially just a brief sketch. A fuller treatment would focus on, for example, semantic distinctions in respect of time, aspect, mood; on concord in the 3rd singular non-past forms.

15.2. Phrase Combinations

A phrase, in all the three languages, may consist of more than one phrase of the same type combined together with or without a connective (i.e. XP ----- $XP_1 + XP_2 + \ldots$). The constituent phrases (XP_1, XP_2 etc.) may stand in additive, alternative, appositional, cumulative, or amplificatory relationship with one another.

Whenever the phrases are illustrated in a larger context in the examples below, they are underlined.

15.2.1. Additive Combinations

The additive connective 'and' is inserted before the last constituent phrase obligatorily in English, but only optionally in Nepali and Newari.

English	Nepali	Newari
a rat, a cat, and a dog	musa biralo (ra) kukur	chũ bhau (wa) khica
red, green and black	rato hariyo (ra) kalo	hyaũ waũ (wa) haku
yesterday, today and tomorrow	hijo aja (ra) bholi	mhige: thaũ (wa) kane:
before Dasera and after Diwali	dasaĩ agadi (ra) tihar pachi	mwã:ni: nhe: (wa) sunti dhunka:

Unlike in English, the additive connective is invariably deleted when the Non-FinPs are combined in Nepali and Newari, e.g.

Eng : He went dancing and singing.

Nep : u naccai gaũdai gayo

New : we pyakhã: lhu lhũ: myo ha hã: wene

Eng : Having come here, having had tea, and
having said that he would not come tomorrow
Ram went away.

Nep : ram yahã aera cya khaera bholi aunna bhanera gayo

New : ram thane waya: cya twana: kane: we: makhu dheya: wene

15.2.2. Alternative Combinations

The alternative connective 'or' is inserted before the last constituent phrase obligatorily in all the three languages. It is, in addition, inserted before all other constituents except the first one obligatorily in Newari but only optionally and rarely in English and Nepali.

English	Nepali	Newari
rat, (or) cat or dog	musa (ba) biralo ba kukur	chũ ki bhau ki khica
red, (or) green or black	raṭo (ba) hariyo ba kalo	hyaũ ki waũ ki haku
today or tomorrow	aja ba bholi	theũ ki kane:
for you or (for) me	timi lai ba ma lai	chanta ki jita:

When two numerals, or phrases including numerals, stand in alternative relationship with each other they are obligatorily

connected with 'or' in English. The use of 'or' in Nepali and Newari in such cases depends upon the attitude of the speaker - it is obligatorily used when exact specification is warranted, otherwise it is normally dropped, e.g. the English 'five or six' may be rendered as 'pā̃c ba cha' or simply 'pā̃c cha' in Nepali and likewise in Newari depending upon the attitude of the speaker.

15.2.3. Appositional Combinations

Only noun phrases can stand in appositional relationship with each other. The combination requires no over connective. Usually the NP-proper-noun precedes the other constituent NP in Eng. It is just the opposite in Nepali and Newari.

Eng : Birendra, the king of Nepal

Nep : nepal ko raja birendra

New : nyepa:-ya-ma juju birendra

15.2.4. Cumulative Combinations

Only numerals or phrases containing numerals can participate in cumulative combinations. English uses the connective 'or'; Nepali and Newari use no connective, e.g.

Eng : I need ten or fifteen rupees.

Nep : malai das pandra rupiya cahincha

New : jita: jhirka jhinnarka dā: ma:

Note

1. The phrase has unspecified sense. It means any number ranging between ten or fifteen.

2. Nepali and Newari use this phrase only when the exact specification is not warranted. English, though it has a phrase corresponding to the Nepali and Newari ones as shown above, prefers to use 'about + Numeral' in such situations. [Thus 'about' ten to fifteen' rather than 'ten or fifteen'.]

15.2.5. Amplificatory Combinations

In amplificatory combinations the constituent phrases, which progressively amplify the remainder of the phrase, are combined without the use of any overt connective in all the three languages.

Examples

English : Those two tall men

Nepali : ti dui-jana agla manis-heru

Newari : hū: ñi-me te:dhike:-pi: manū:-to

English : Tomorrow morning at four o'clock.

Nepali : bholi bihana car baje:

Newari : kene: suthe: car baje:

English : in the lawn[1] in front of the house[2]

Nepali : ghar agaḍi[2] caur ma[1]

Newari : chyẽ ñha:ne[2] caure:[1]

15.2.6. Pedagogic Applications

Phrase combinations pose little problem to the speakers of Nepali and Newari. A few likely minor problems are as follows :

1. Conjoining of phrases additively without using 'and' e.g. "Ram, Shyam, Hari all came.", "He went home singing, dancing all along the way."

2. Use of less frequent order in appositional combination, e.g. 'the son of Dasarath, Ram' rather than 'Ram, the son of Dasarath'.

3. Conjoining of numerals in alternative sense but without the connective 'or' e.g. 'two three' instead of two or three.

4. (i) Use of cumulative phrase in lieu of 'about + Numeral' phrase, e.g. 'eight (or) ten' or 'ten, (or) twelve' rather than 'about ten'.

   (ii) Use of 'about + cumulative phrase' for 'about + Numeral-to-Numeral construction', e.g. 'about ten fifteen' rather than 'about ten to fifteen'.

15.3. Sentence Types

This section presents a brief comparative sketch of basic and major sentence patterns of English, Nepali and Newari. Only the elements comprising the propositional core will be accounted for.

The following abbreviations are of immediate relevance to this section:

V	Verb Phrase (Finite)
S	Subject
O	Object complement
Pr	Predicative "
Pt	Patient "
R	Residual "

15.3.1. Basic Sentence Types

The syntactic elements comprising the propositional core in English and the order in which they occur are as follows:

S + V + O + Pr + R

Constraints

S and V are obligatory.

English has, in addition, other unique patterns involving the dummy 'it' and the dummy 'there'. These will be treated separately.

Nepali and Newari have similar propositional cores The syntactic elements and their order in the core are as follows :

Pt + S + R + O + Pr + V

Constraints

1. V is obligatory and, in addition, it has to be accompanied by at least S or, in its absence, by 'Pt + Pr' or 'R + Pr'.
2. Pt and O are mutually exclusive.

Given the above constraints, English and Nepali/Newari have the following sentence patterns :

English	Nepali/Newari
S + V	S + V
S + V + Pr	S + Pr + V
S + V + R	S + R + V
S + V + O	S + O + V
S + V + O + R	S + R + O + V
S + V + O + Pr	S + O + Pr + V
S + V + Pr + R	S + R + Pr + V
S + V + O + Pr + R	S + R + O + Pr + V
———	S + Pr + V
———	Pt + Pr + V
———	Pt + S + V
———	Pt + S + Pr + V
———	Pt + S + R + V
Constructions involving dummy 'it' or 'there'	———

Examples

For the Nepali and Newari examples refer to 5.3 and 10.3 respectively. Only the English ones are presented here for comparison.

S +	V			
Ram	died.			
S +	V +	Pr		
Ram	is	a teacher/sick.		
Ram	looks	mad.		
Today	is	Sunday.		
This	is	for Ram.		
S +	V +	R		
Ram	went	home/away.		
Ram	sat	on the floor.		
Ram	quarrelled	with Shyam.		
Ram	is	in the room.		
God	exists	everywhere.		
S +	V +	O		
Ram	loved	Sita.		
Ram	broke	a glass.		
S +	V +	O +	R	
Ram	put	the money	in his pocket.	
Ram	sent	Shyam	home/away.	

Ram	sent	a letter	to Shyam	
Ram	gave	a book	to Shyam	
S +	V +	O +	Pr	
Ram	made	Shyam	happy.	
Ram	mistook	me	for Shyam.	
S +	V +	Pr +	R	
The flower	smelt	sweet	to me.	
Ram	is	afraid	of Shyam.	
S +	V +	O +	Pr +	R
He	recommended	Ram	as a servant	to Shyam.
He	put	the feather	as an ornament	in the cap.
It +	Vcop +	AP +	NP	
It	isn't	too cold	for me.	
It +	Vcop +	AP +	AdvP	
It	wasn't	cold	there	
It +	Vcop +	NP +	AdvP	
It	is	Sunday	today.	
It	is	six miles	to Oxford.	
It	was	a fine morning	that day.	
It	is	the postman	at the door.	
It +	V			
It	rained.			

There + Vcop + NP + AdvP

There is no water in the glass.

There is fun in it.

There + Vcop + NP + AP

There was a time when I used to smoke a lot.

There + V + NP + AP

There comes a time in every man's life when he succumbs to the inevitability of death.

Observations

1: V immediately follows S in English, it comes at the end of the sentence in Nepali/Newari.

2. English has no Subjectless construction. The Nepali/Newari Subjectless constructions are variously rendered in English :

Nepali/Newari				English				
(i)	Pt-NP +	Pr-AP +	V	(a)	It +	V +	AP +	NP
Nep :	melai	jaḍo	cheina		It	isn't	cold	to me.
New :	jitə:	ciku	meju!	(b)	S-NP +	V	+	Pr-AP
Gloss:	to me	cold	is not		I	don't feel		cold.
(ii)	R-NP +	Pr-AP +	V		It +	V +	AP +	NP
Nep :	punama	jaḍo	cheina		It	isn't	cold	in Poona.
New :	punae:	ciku	meju:					
Gloss:	in Poona	cold	is not					

3. English has no Patient construction. The Nepali/Newari Patient constructions have various equivalents in English:

Nepali/Newari	English
(i) Pt-NP + Pr-AP + V	See example 2(i) above.
(ii) Pt-NP_1 + S-NP_2 + V	(a) S-NP_1 + V + O-NP_2
Nep: melai ruga lagyo	I caught (a) cold.
New: jite: syakhe̅: cale	
Gloss: to me cold caught-on	
	(b) S-NP_1 + V-cop + Pr-AP
Nep: melai nidra ayo	I became sleepy.
New: jite: n̄he: wele	
Gloss: to me sleep came	
	(c) S-NP_1 + V + O-NP_2
Nep: melai ā̃p manparcha	I like mangoes.
New: jite: ē: ye:	
to me mango pleases.	
	(d) S-NP_1 + V-have + O-NP_2
Nep: ramko duiṭa swasni chen	Ram has two wives.
New: ramya n̄ime kela: du	
Ram's two wives exist	
	(e) S-NP_1 + V-have + O-NP
Nep: melai peṭ dukhyo	I had a stomachache.
New: jite: pwa: syate	
stomached ached	

(iii) Pt-NP_1 + S-NP_2 + Pr-AP + V   S-NP_2 + V + Pr-AP + R-NP_1

malai yo kam garo chaina This work isn't difficult for me

jita: thwe jya thaku maju:

this work difficult is not.

(iv) Pt-NP_1 + R-NP_2 + S-NP_3 + V   (a) S-NP_1 + V + O-NP_3 + R-NP_2

malai ram mathi daya uṭhyo   I felt pity for Ram.

jita: ram khena: maya wana   I took pity on Ram.

to me on Ram pity arose

(b) S-NP_1+V-have+O-NP_3+R-NP_2

mero ram site jhagaḍa bhayo   I had a fight with Ram.

jigu ram nape lwapu jula (c) S-NP_1 + V + R-NP_2

of me with Ram fight occurred   I quarreled with Ram.

4. English often has a V equivalent to Nepali/Newari Pr + V or O + V or even S + V.

Nepali/Newari

	S-NP_1 +	R-NP_2 +	O-NP_3 +	Pr-NP_4 +	V
Nep :	nyayadhisle	ramlai	das rupiya	jaribana	garyo
New :	nyayadhisẽ:	ramyata	jhirka dā:	jaribana	yata
	judge	to Ram	ten rupees	fine	did
Nep:	maile	ramsite	ghaḍi	bandaki	rakhẽ
New:	jĩ:	ramyake	ghari	bara:	taya
	I	with Ram	watch	pawn	kept

English

$S\text{-}NP_1$	+	V	+	$O\text{-}NP_2$	+	$R\text{-}NP_3$
The judge		fined		Ram		ten rupees.
I		pawned		my watch		to Ram

Nepali/Newari			English	
	S +	V	It + V	
Nep:	pani	peryo	It	rained.
New:	wa	wala		
	rain	fell		

See also example 3(iv)(c) above.

5. Nepali and Newari have no dummy constructions. The English dummy constructions are variously rendered in Nepali/Newari.

English				Nepali/Newari		
It + Vcop	+ AP	+ NP		Pt-NP	+ AP	+ Vcop
It isn't	cold	for me		malai	jaḍo	cheino (Nep)
				jite:	ciku	meju: (New)
				to me	cold	is not
It + Vcop	+ AP	+ AdvP		R-AdvP	+ AP	+ Vcop
It wasn't	cold	there		tyahā̃	jaḍo	thieno (Nep)
				ana	ciku	meju: (New)
				there	cold	was not

There + Vcop + NP + AdvP	R-AdvP + S-NP + Vcop
There is no water in the glass	gilas me pani chaina (Nep)
	gilase: la: maru (New)
	in the glass water is not

6. The NP functioning as Subject, Object etc. in Newari may occur in various case forms depending upon the sentence pattern and the verb type. Nepali has an almost parallel 'NP (+ Postp)' constructions. The corresponding NPs in English are not morphologically complex in this manner.

15.3.2. Pedagogic Applications

1. As Nepali and Newari have no dummy constructions, the 'it' and 'there' dummy constructions in English pose a special problem to the speakers of Nepali and Newari. Thus, in place of "There is a book on the table." they are likely to use "A book is on the table." Similarly it is quite likely for them to replace the constructions like "It rained." by the constructions like "Rain fell.".
2. Imposing the filter language patient constructions on English they often come up with unacceptable sentences like "To me this cap is fit." or "Ram's quarrel took place with Shyam."
3. Animate Objects are morphologically realized as 'N + lai' in Nepali and as 'N-yata' in Newari, literally 'to N'. Therefore a common error that the Nepali and Newari learners

are found to commit is the unnecessary addition of 'to' before an animate Object, e.g. *"They beat to Ram.".

For similar reasons the Nepali and Newari learners tend to say *"Ram married with Sita".

15.4. Sentence Variations

The term 'variation' implies the notion of something being 'transformed' from something 'basic'. The 'basic' is the norm and the 'transform' ( ) is its variant.

This section presents a comparative sketch of the processes involved in or rules governing the following transformations from the basic, simple, and active sentences:

1. Reporting [re - Statement (Nepali), hẽ - Statement (Newari), and the English equivalent.]
2. Exclamation
3. Passivization
4. Emphasis
5. Question
6. Negation

The section concludes with brief comparative notes on (7) Zero Anaphora and (8) Reordering within a Sentence.

15.4.1. Reporting

Here only such reportings are accounted for where the source of the report is either unknown or irrelevant or contextually obvious.

In Nepali and Newari reporting can be done simply by adding the prosentential particles re and hẽ respectively to the reported speech when the source of the report is either unknown or irrelevant or obvious. The English equivalents to

these Nepali and Newari particles are the clauses like 'It is said that', 'Someone says that', 'They/People say that', 'So they say'.

Examples

Source Unknown or Irrelevant

Eng : Chinese eat monkey's flesh as well, they say.

Nep : cainijharu le bãdar ko masu pani khanchan re

New : cainijte:sã: make:yagu la nã: na: hã

Eng : [It is said / Someone says] that Ram will come tomorrow.

Nep : ram bholi aũcha re

New : ram kane: wai hã

Literally : Ram tomorrow will-come so-said

Source : Obvious (due to Subject-Verb concord in Nep/New)

Eng : [Ram says that he will come tomorrow. / Ram said that he would come tomorrow.]

Nep : ram bholi aũchu re

New : ram kane: we: hã

Literally : Ram tomorrow I'll-come so-said

Nepali and Newari also have clause equivalents to English reporting active clauses used in the context mentioned above, but the Subject in such clauses is customarily deleted, e.g.

Eng : Someone says that Ram will come tomorrow.

Nep : ram bholi aũche bhancha

New : ram kene: wai dhai

Eng : They/People say that Ram will come tomorrow.

Nep : ram bholi aũcha bhanchan

New : ram kene: wai dhai

Nepali, in addition, uses the passive (In such cases the by-subject is absent.)

Eng : It is said that Ram will come tomorrow.

Nep : ram bholi aũcha bhaninche

15.4.2. Exclamation

Exclamatory sentences in English, Nepali and Newari can be formed: (i) by changing the intonation pattern, and (ii) by question word fronting. In either case an exclamatory particle may also precede.

Examples

	English	Nepali	Newari
(i)	(S_1: Ram died.)	(S_1: ram maryo)	(S_1: ram sita)
	S_2: (Heavens!) Ram's dead!?	S_2: (haresiba) ram maryo!?	S_2: (hare:siba) ram sita!?
(ii)	(Wow!) How beautiful!	(aha!) kati ramro!	(aha!) gu̇li bālā:!

In addition, exclamatory sentences can be formed in English by adverbial particle fronting :

(my!) Down [he comes / comes Ram] !

(cf. also : Down with the traitors!)

15.4.3. Passivization

Newari has no passivization. The processes involved in the English and Nepali passivizations are parallel :

(i) The Object of the active sentence becomes the Subject of the passive sentence. This involves the interchange of the syntactic positions of the original Subject and Object which is obligatory in English but not in Nepali because of the pervasive flexibility of word order.

(ii) The original Subject is now accompanied by the preposition 'by' in English, and by the postposition /dwara/ ~ /baṭa/ in Nepali. In either language it can be deleted if unknown or irrelevant or contextually obvious.

(iii) The active form of the verb in active sentence is converted into the passive form phrasally in English but inflectionally in Nepali.

The frequency of use of passive constructions in Nepali is, however, much lower compared to that in English. This is so partly because an English passive verb construction is often translatable as a simple intransitive verb stem in Nepali :

English be made equals ban - (active intransitive) and bana-i (passive transitive); English be born equals both janm- (active intransitive) and janm-i (passive intransitive).

This last example brings out the fact that Nepali, unlike English, offers passivization of intransitive verbs with a First Person Subject which is then commonly deleted, e.g.

Active	Passive
ma 1944 ma janm-ẽ	(ma) 1944 ma janm-i-ẽ
I 1944-in was-born	I 1944-in was-born

15.4.4. Emphasis, Question, Negation

The reason for treating these three variations together will become obvious from what follows.

All the three languages have three kinds of emphasis. These are (1) Whole sentence emphasis, (2) Individual word emphasis, and (3) Grammatical unit emphasis.

All the three languages have (1) Polarity (i.e. Yes/No) questions, and (2) Lacunal (i.e. Question-word) questions. In addition all of them have tag questions which have already been dealt with in 12.3.

In English there are more than one ways of negating a statement. But we shall confine our discussion to only the principal one -- the one brought about through NOT - insertion in the verbal phrase. In Nepali and Newari the negative element is inserted in the verb phrase, but there is nothing to correspond to the use of negative pronominals (nobody, nowhere etc.) in English.

Whole Sentence Emphasis

In English the whole sentence emphasis is effected by placing the emphatic accent on <u>not</u>, if present in full, and elsewhere on the first element in the verbal phrase (which is suitably augmented by <u>do</u>-support in most cases): will nót go, wón't go, wíll go, do nót go, dón't go, dó go illustrate the possibilities.

In Nepali and Newari the whole sentence emphasis is effected by placing the extra heavy accent (which involves, in addition to greater prominence, vowel length and a change in intonation pattern) on the last syllable of the VP, e.g.

	Statement	Emphasized Statement
Nep :	u ghar ma cha/chai na	u ghar ma chá/chai ná
New :	wa chyẽ: du/maru	wa chyẽ: dú/ma rú
	He is/is not at home	He ís/is nót at home.
Nep :	u ghar gaiasakyo	u ghar gaisakýo
New :	wa chyẽ wanedhunkala	wa chyẽ wanedhunkalà
	He has gone home.	He hás gone home.

Individual Word Emphasis

In English, individual words in a sentence can be emphasized by marking it with extra heavy accent (also known as "contrastive accent"). In Nepali and Newari it is achieved

by placing the emphatic particle nai/ai/i and ye - he respectively, e.g.

English

You should show me a movie today.

1. You should show me a movie today.
2. You should show me a movie today.
3. You should show me a movie today.

Nepali

timile melai aje sinema dekhaunu perche

1. timile nei melai aje sinema dekhaunu perche
2. timile melai aje-i sinema dekhaunu perche
3. timile melai aje sinem-ai dekhaunu perche

Newari

chẽ: jite: theũ pyakhẽ: kyene ma:

1. chẽ: ye jite: theũ pyakhẽ: kyene ma:
2. chẽ jite: theũ ye pyakhẽ: kyene ma:
3. chẽ: jite: theũ pyakhẽ: ye kyene ma:

Grammatical Unit Emphasis

Grammatical unit emphasis differs from individual word emphasis in that the grammatical unit (such as Subject, Object etc.) as a whole gets emphasized in it. For instance in the sentence "I saw a tall girl." only the object-NP 'a tall girl'

as a whole can be emphasized this way. Emphasis of 'tall' alone or 'girl' alone is not possible.

There are two ways of emphasizing a grammatical unit in English :

(i) By introducing the sentence with a relative pronominal and placing the unit emphasized at the end of the sentence, and then inserting the verb 'be' before it :

wh- ... + be + EMPH

(ii) By introducing the sentence with the dummy 'it' followed by the verb 'be', then by the unit emphasized, and then by an appropriate relative pronoun 'wh-' or 'that' :

$$\text{It} + \text{be} + \text{EMPH} + \begin{bmatrix}\text{wh-} \\ \text{that}\end{bmatrix} + \ldots$$

Examples

Ram	met	Sita	in the garden	yesterday
1	2	3	4	5

These units, singly or in suitable combinations, can be emphasized in either of the two ways. Let us select unit 4 for illustration.

(i) Where Ram met Sita yesterday was in the garden.

(iia) It was in the garden where Ram met Sita yesterday.

(iib) It was in the garden that Ram met Sita yesterday.

Note : In emphasizing the verb (unit 2) only the first way is available.

Nepali and Newari have only one way of emphasizing any grammatical unit other than the VP. The rule is : The original sentence minus the grammatical unit emphasized is converted into a corresponding Non-FinP which is followed by the unit emphasized and then by the verb 'be' (/ho/ in Nepali and /khaː/ in Newari).

Examples

(The order of presentation is Nepali, Newari and their common gloss.)

Nepali

ramle	sitalai	hijo	bagaĩcama	bheṭyo
1	2	3	4	5

Emphasized
Unit

1. sitalai hijo bagaĩcama bheṭne ram ho
2. (i) ramle hijo bagaĩcama bheṭne sita ho
   (ii) ramle hijo bagaĩcama bheṭeko sitalai ho
3. ramle sitalai bagaĩcama bheṭeko hijo ho
4. ramle sitalai hijo bheṭeko bagaĩcama ho

Newari

ramə̃ː	sitayata	mhigaː	kyabaː	napalata
1	2	3	4	5

Emphasized
Unit

1. sitayata mhigaʼ kyabeʼ napalaʼma ram kheʼ

2. (i) ramāʼ mhigaʼ kyabeʼ napalaʼma sita kheʼ

(ii) ramāʼ mhigaʼ kyabeʼ napalaʼgu sitayata kheʼ

3. ramāʼ sitayata kyabeʼ napalaʼgu mhigaʼ kheʼ

4. ramāʼ sitayata mhigaʼ napalaʼgu kyabeʼ kheʼ

Common Gloss

Ram	met	Sita	in the garden	yesterday.
1	5	2	4	3

Emphasized
Unit

1. (a) Who met Sita in the garden yesterday was Ram.
   (b) It was Ram who met Sita in the garden yesterday.
2. (a) Who(m) Ram met in the garden yesterday was Sita.
   (b) It was Sita who(m) Ram met in the garden yesterday.
3. (a) When Ram met Sita in the garden was yesterday.
   (b) It was yesterday that Ram met Sita in the garden.
4. (a) Where Ram met Sita yesterday was in the garden.
   (b) It was in the garden that Ram met Sita yesterday.

In Napali and Newari the emphasized unit is usually accompanied by the emphatic particle /nai/ and /ye/ respectively, e.g.1. sitalai hijo bagaĩcama bhetne ram-ai ho (Nep)

sitayata mhigaʼ kyabeʼ napalaʼme ram ye kheʼ (New)

Polarity Question

In English, polarity questions are formed normally by the transposition of the Subject and the first element of the verb phrase (suitably augmented by do in most cases) combined with a rising sentence tone. Colloquially, the use of question tone alone without Subject inversion is not unknown. In Nepali, the transformation is effected solely by the use of the rising sentence tone. In Newari the use of the rising tone is usually accompanied by the addition of the question particle /la/. In neither language a change in word order is associated with questions.

Examples

	Statement	Polarity Question
Nep :	u timi kahā̃ ayo	u timi kahā̃ ayo
New :	we chenthae: wele	we chenthae: wele la
		(also: we chenthae: wele)
Eng :	He came to you.	Did he come to you?
		(also: He came to you?)

Lacunal Question

Whether the lacunal questions are basic sentences in themselves or the sentences derived from some other basic sentences is a debatable question. However, for our present purpose, we take it for granted that they are not basic sentences but are the sentences derived from some basic

sentences which contain an indefinite pro-form corresponding to its interrogative form. Thus we presume that "What do you want?" and "Where is your book?" are derived respectively from the basic sentences "You want something." and "Your book is somewhere."

In English a lacunal question is formed by replacing the indefinite element (some etc.) by the question word, then fronting the question word (if it is not already at the front), then effecting Subject inversion in case the question word has been fronted, and finally inserting do- support (in the usual sort of cases).

In Nepali and Newari the transformation is effected simply by replacing the indefinite pro-form by the corresponding interrogative form, e.g.

Basic sentences

Nep : 1. timi lai kehi cahinche
2. timro kitab kahī cha

New : 1. chanta chũ: ma:
2. chaṅgu kitab ganā: du

Lacunal Question Transformation

Nep : 1. timilai ke cahinche
2. timro kitab kahā̃ cha

New : 1. chante chu ma:
2. chaṅgu kitab gane du

In Nepali and Newari and in British English lacunal questions have special sentence tones.

Negativization

In English negativization is effected by inserting not after the first element of the verb phrase (which is first suitably augmented by do-support in most cases).

The rules in Nepali and Newari are fairly complicated. (See 5.4.6 and 10.4.5 respectively.)

15.4.5. A Note on Zero Anaphora

In Nepali and Newari pronouns other than the interrogative type (in all their case forms in Newari and along with the corresponding postpositions in Nepali) and demonstrative proadverbs can be optionally deleted if the immediate context, grammatical or situational, makes the reference obvious to the listener. Such wholesale delections are not admissible in English, though there are a few specific cases.

Illustrations

Illustrations are given in three rows: the first row gives the Nepali example, the second the Newari, and the third their common gloss in colloquial English.

(timi) kahile ayau
(cha) gubale: waya
When did (you) come?

u (ma) bholi aunna bhanera gayo
wa (ji) kane! wa!makhu dhaya! wana
Having said "(I) will not come tomorrow", he went.

ram birami bhaeko le aje (u) iskul gaena
ram usẽ!-marugu lĩ! theũ (wa) iskul mawã!
Because Ram was sick (he) did not go to school today.

ausadhi kinna lai (ma sita) paisa chaina
wasa! ña!ta (jike!) dhyeba maru
(I) have no money to buy medicine.

ram (aphno) swasni sita sãdhai jhagaḍa garcha
ram (tha!) kala! napa ñhabalã! lwa!
Ram always querrels with (his) wife.

naya kanun anusar (kasai le pani) duiṭa swasni rakhna paũdaina
nhu!gu kanun anusar (sunã! nã!) ñima kala! ta! maru
According to the new law (one) cannot keep two wives.

usle malai paisa diyo tara maile (tyo) liina
wã! jita! dhyeba bila tara jĩ! (wa) makaya
He gave me the money but I did not take (it).

ma puna pugda khari (tyahã) pani parirahekothyo
ji puna thyã! bala! (ana) wa waya cwana
When I reached Poona it was raining (there).

For more examples refer to 5.4.7. (Nepali) and 10.4.7. (Newari).

15.4.6. A Note on Reordering of Grammatical Units within a sentence

In Nepali the functional relationship between words is signalled by specific post-positions. In Newari the case endings do this signalling. Word order plays purely a stylistic role in Nepali and Newari. As such ordering of grammatical units in these languages is extremely flexible. Except the VP, which almost invariably comes at the end of the sentence, very many permutations of all other constituent grammatical units are possible (cf. 5.4.6. (Nepali) and 10.4.7. (Newari)).

In English the functional relationship between words is signalled partly by prepositions and partly by word order. That is why stylistic reordering of grammatical units in English is rather limited.

The normal order of grammatical units within basic English sentences are as follows:

Adsentential + Subject + Auxiliary
+ Preverb + Verb + Postverb + Object Complement
+ Predicative Complement + Residual Complement
+ Adverb of Manner + Circumstantial(s)

Some of the common reorderings of these elements are as follows :

1. Adsentential

(i) after circumstantial(s), e.g. "He went there probably"
(ii) after Auxiliary, e.g. "She has probably seen you earlier"

2. Auxiliary

before Subject in questions, e.g. "Is she sleeping?"

"Where has she gove?"

3. Preverb (mostly adverbs of frequency) less frequently after the first verb if the auxiliary consists of more than one verb,

e.g. "She has always been pressing me to eat more."

4. Verb

(i) before Subject when there is no auxiliary verb,

e.g. "Is she sick?"

(ii) before Subject in emphatic sentence,

e.g. "Fight we must."

5. Postverb (i.e. Adverbial particles)

(i) after Object complement which is not very long,

e.g. "She put the light on."

but, *"She put the light near the room where I used to sleep on."

Note : If the Object complement is a personal pronoun then the postverb has to come after it,

e.g. "She put it on."

but *"She put on it."

(ii) at the beginning of exclamatory sentences,

e.g. "Away went Mary!"
"Off she went"

Note : The subject and verb are inverted if the subject is a noun, but not inverted if it is a personal pronoun.

6. Residual Complement

(as indirect Object) before (the direct) Object,

e.g. "She wrote me a letter."

"She bought Ram a present."

Note : Of the two forms :

(a) S + V + D.O. + R (= Prep + I.O.)

(b) S + V + I.O.+ D.O.

(i) the latter is not possible if D.O. is a personal pronoun,

e.g. "I gave it to Ram."

but *"I gave Ram it."

(ii) the latter is preferred to the former if the D.O. is very long :

e.g. "I told him a very interesting story about wild life in Africa."

but *"I told a very interesting story about wild life in Africa to him."

Some verbs can occur only in the first type of construction,

e.g. "He explained the matter to me."

but, *"He explained me the matter."

Some verbs, on the other hand, invariably occur in the second type of construction,

e.g. "The judge fined him ten rupees"

but * "The judge fined ten rupees to him."

Adverb of Manner

less frequently before Residual complement,

e.g. "He went hurridly to the office."

Circumstantial

before (Adsententíal +) subject,

e.g. "Today (probably) she won't come."

Negative-Fronting

In emphatic sentence,

e.g. "Not (even) a single creature was there."

from "Even a single creature was not there."

"Never was it so cold."

from "It was never so cold."

15.4.7. Pedagogic Applications

1. It is to be noted that the function which the particles /re/ and /hã/ play in Nepali and Newari respectively is played by by finite constructions like "It is said that/ Someone says that/ They say that/ People say that/ So they say etc." in English.
2. Exclamatory constructions in English are somewhat similar to those in Nepali and Newari, the difference being largely lexical. So it may be hoped that the speaker of Nepali and Newari will have little difficulty

in learning them. However it is to be noted that special mention should be made of the construction given below which have no parallel equivalents in Nepali and Newari :

Up went the balloon!

Away they went!

Down with the traitors!

Note : Also the wrong *'How beautiful is it!' on the analogy of 'How beautiful is it?'.

3. Newari has no passivization. The only significant difference between Nepali and English passivizations lies in the way they passivize the verb : English does it phrasally, Nepali inflectionally. Therefore passivization may be a major problem to the Newari learners, but only a minor problem to the Nepali learners.

4. It is to be noted that the transformations yielding the whole sentence emphasis, polarity question, and Negation are achieved through the application of similar rules and that these rules apply under identical conditions in all the three cases. The latter point is of special significance and should be exploited profitably in teaching these variations.

5. The main errors as regards the variations noted in 4 have to do with the question of Do-insertion. They either don't use the Do-insertion at all or may use it

wrongly. For instance *'Where they went?' *'They do not went', *'He do not like', *'He did not likes', etc. The whole sentence emphasis is rarely effected properly. The Nepali and Newari speakers rarely use the contracted forms like 'aren't', 'I'll', 'We've'.

6. Individual word emphasis is too simple to need any special mentioning. It is a matter of placing an extra heavy accent on the word in question. The Nepali and Newari speakers may however use a reflexive particle instead. Thus 'I want it now itself.' rather than 'I want it nów.' or 'I want it right now.'

7. Unless properly taught the Nepali and Newari learners simply tend to avoid the use of grammatical unit emphasis which involves cleft transformation etc.

8. The problems with lacunal questions are closely related to those with polarity questions. They should therefore be taken up side by side. Once the polarity questions are mastered, the learner will have little difficulty in mastering the lacunal questions.

9. The Nepali and Newari speakers are likely to ignore the use of pronouns and demonstrative proadverbs if contextually obvious producing such ungrammatical constructions as *'He does not like wife' (instead of 'He does not like <u>his</u> wife'), *'He showed me his paintings, but I did not like' (in lieu of 'He showed ..... like <u>them</u>').

10. As word ordering is very flexible in Nepali and Newari the speakers of these languages may come up with all sorts of word orderings which may vary from just stylistic to something very awkward, e.g.

Always she comes late.

She comes always late.

She comes late always.

I saw her yesterday in the garden.

He hurridly went to the office.

11. The Nepali and Newari learners seldom split the adverbial particles from the verbs so that they rarely use constructions like 'He put the light on,' 'He called me up.' On the other hand as a result of overgeneralization, there is the possibility of splitting them where such splitting is not permissible, e.g. *'I don't believe him in', 'the visiting prime minister called the president on.'

12. The constructions involving the direct and indirect objects constitute a problem area to the Nepali and Newari learners. The various constraints in the conversion of S + V + I.O. + D.O. into S + V + D.O. + Prep + I.O. or vice versa need special attention.

15.5. Sentence Combinations

Sentences in English, Nepali and Newari can be combined in two different ways : (1) by embedding, and (2) by conjoining.

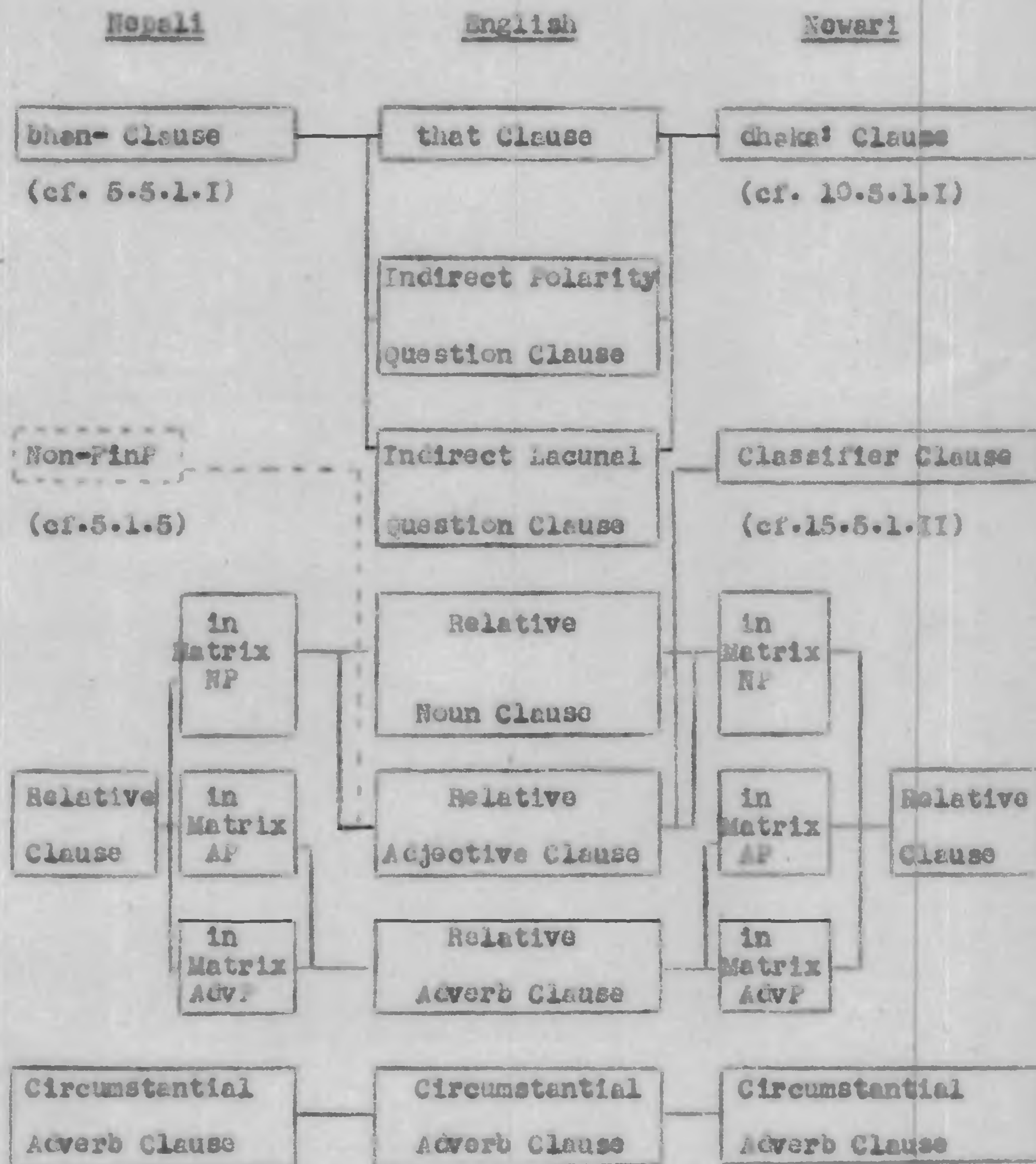
15.5.1. Sentence Embedding

This section is limited to only those embeddings in which the embedded sentence is realized as a clause. The embeddings in which the underlying embedded sentence is realized as a non-finite phrase have been dealt with in 15.1.5 without, however, tracing the course of their generation.

In this section English is placed in the middle column with Nepali on the left and Newari on the right for the sake of convenience. The matchings shown by link lines are broad translation correspondences.

In the illustrations the embedded sentences along with the embedding marker, if any, are bracketed off for the sake of prominence. The embedding markers as well as the matrix phrases (in Nepali and Newari) in which the relative clauses are embedded are underlined.

Nepali, English, and Newari have sentences embedded as :



Examples

[The English examples serve both as examples of English embedding and as colloquial gloss to Nepali and Newari embeddings.]

Nepali	English	Newari
bhan- Clause	that Clause	dhaka! Clause
usle [ram bholi khelcha bhanera] bhanyo	He said [that Ram would play tomorrow].	wẽ! [ram kane! mhiti! dhaka!] dhale
usle [ram jãcma pas hos bhanera] bhanyo	He wished [that Ram might pass the examination].	wã! [ram jãce! pas jui ma dhaka!] dhale
usle malai [ghar jaũ bhanera] bhanyo	He proposed to me [that we should go home].	wã! jita! [chyẽ wane nu dhaka!] dhale
	Indirect Polarity Question Clause	
usle malai [ram bholi khelcha bhanera] sodhyo	He asked me [if Ram would play tomorrow].	wã! jita! [ram kane! mhiti! la dhaka!] ñene

	Indirect Lacunal <u>Question Clause</u>	
usle malai [ram kahile khelcha <u>bhanera</u>] sodhyo	He asked me [when Ram would play].	wẽ: jite: [ram gubale: mhiti: <u>dhaka:</u>] n̄ene
<u>Non-FinP</u>	Relative <u>Noun Clause</u>	Classifier <u>Clause</u>
[usle bhaneko] ṭhik chaina	[What he said] is not correct.	[wẽ: dha: <u>gu</u>] thik maju:
<u>Relative Clause embedded in matrix NP</u>		<u>Relative Clause embedded in matrix NP</u>
[usle je bhanyo] <u>tyo</u> ṭhik chaina	[What he said] is not correct.	[wẽ: chu dhale] <u>wa</u> thik maju:
<u>Non-FinP</u>	Relative <u>Adjective Clause</u>	Classifier <u>Clause</u>
[usle garne] kam	the work [which he will do]	[wẽ: yai <u>gu</u>] jya
[maile dekheko] manche	the man [whom I saw]	[jī: khana <u>ma</u>] manū:

Relative Clause embedded in matrix NP		Relative Clause embedded in matrix NP
usle [maile jun manchelai dekhyẽ] tyo manche dekheko chaine	He has not seen the man [whom I saw].	wã: [jĩ: su manũ:yata khena] we manũ: makhẽ: ni
Relative Clause embedded in matrix AP	Relative Adverb Clause	Relative Clause embedded in matrix AP
u [ram jeti dublo cha] teti dublo chaine	He is not as lean [as Ram is (lean)].	we [ram guli gẽ'si] uli gẽ'si maju:
Relative Clause embedded in matrix AdvP		Relative Clause embedded in matrix AdvP
usle [ramle jeti cãḍai ṭaip garne sakche] teti cãḍai lekhne sakche	He can write as fast [as Ram can type].	wã: [ramẽ: guli yakane ṭaip yae: phu] uli yakane cwe: phu
[jahã pani jancha] tyahã macha jancha	[Where the water goes] there go the fish.	[gana la: wã:] ana ña wã:

Circumstantial Adverb Clause	Circumstantial Adverb Clause	Circumstantial Adverb Clause
[pani paryo bhane] me kheldina	[If it rains] I won't play.	[wa wale dha'sa] ji mhite makhu
[pani paryo ki] mero jiu dukhera aũcha	[Whenever it rains] my body starts aching.	[wa wale ki] jigu mha syana waigu
[adapi u dublo cha] u baliyo cha	[Although he is lean] he is strong.	wa [gẽ'si (ju') sã'] bala'
u hijo iskul gaena [kinəbhəne u birami thiyo]	He didn't go to school yesterday [because he was sick].	wa [birami ju' gulĩ'] mhiga' iskul mawẽ'

Observations

1. In English, under limited circumstances though, there is an agreement in tense (often called the 'sequence of tense') between the matrix sentence and the embedded sentence, the former governing the latter. This is not so in Nepali and Newari.
2. The embedded sentences in the 'bhan-clause' in Nepali and 'dhaka'-clause' in Newari may be a statement, a wish, a proposal, a question, or a request/command. The embedded

sentences in the 'that clause' in English cannot be a question or a request/command. Whereas the questions are nevertheless realized as a clause though with different embedding markers, the requests/commands are normally realized as a Non-Finf, e.g. "He told her to go home", "He requested her to go home." ("He ordered/requested her that she (should) go home" is rather formal.)

3. Nepali and Newari, unlike English, do not make any distinction between 'direct' and 'indirect' reporting except for the change in the pronominal form. The embedding marker 'bhan-/dhaka'' occurs whether the embedded sentence is reported directly or indirectly. There is no tense sequence in Nepali and Newari, as already stated.

4. The Subject in the Nepali and Newari embedded sentences is often deleted if it is identical with that of the matrix subject. English makes no such equi-Subject deletion if the embedded sentence is realized as a clause.

5. Nepali and Newari use the same embedding marker in all the three sub-types of noun clause embedding: (i) that-clause, (ii) indirect polarity question clause, and (iii) indirect lacunal question clause.

6. The embedding markers in noun clause embeddings may be dropped in all the three languages. However the conditions under which they can be dropped vary from language to language. This dropping in general is not as free

and frequent in Nepali and Newari as it is in English.

7. Extraposition of the embedded noun clause at the end position is possible in Nepali and Newari as well, but rare, especially in Newari. The noun clause so extraposed is introduced by /ki/ both in Nepali and Newari.

8. In English rarely and in Nepali and Newari quite commonly the matrix clause of a Relative Clause has a matching antecedent marked by a correlative prononomical (identical with the demonstrative). Thus' what --- that ---, when --- then etc. are the rule, while these sound old fashioned in English. [redacted] Also note that the Relative Clause precedes rather than follows the antecedent. It need not, however, be adjacent to the antecedent.

9. Circumstantial adverb clauses may occur at the beginning or at the end of the resultant complex sentence in Nepali and English; in Newari they cannot occur at the end.

10. The subordinate conjunction precedes the circumstantial adverb clause in English, but follows it in Newari. Both positions are possible with some such conjunctions in Nepali.

11. In Nepali and English some of the circumstantial adverb clauses may undergo further transformations resulting in a Non-Fin, e.g.

Nepali	English
Clauses	
[adopi u dublo che] u baliyo che	[Although he is lean] he is strong.
u hijo iskul geene [kinabhane u birami thiyo]	He didn't go to school yesterday [because he was sick].
Non-FinPs	
u [dublo bhee tapani] baliyo che]	He is strong [in spite of being lean].
u [birami bhaeko (huna)le] hijo iskul geene	[Being sick] he did not go to school yesterday.

15.5.2. Sentence Conjoining

Before we discuss various types of sentence conjoining and the processes involved in them it is necessary to explain what we mean by sentence conjoining and how it is distinguished from phrase conjoining. In other words, we shall try to explain through illustrations where conjoining at phrase level ends and where it starts at sentence level.

Let us examine the following sentences from English, Nepali, and Newari.

English

1. Ram came and Shyam went.
2. Ram smokes pipe and Shyam (smokes) cigarette.
3. Ram came today and ([Ram / he]) will come tomorrow (again).
4. Ram and Shyam [love each other / went together / are brothers].
5. Ram and Shyam are soldiers.
6. Ram and Shyam smoke.
7. Ram and Shyam came.

Nepali

8. ram re shyam a-e

   Ram and Shyam came

[Note: ram a-yo Ram came.
syam a-yo Shyam came.]

9. ram ba radha aũch-in
   Ram or Radha will come.

10. radha ba ram aũch-e
   [Note : ram aũch-e — Ram will come.
   radha aũch-in — Radha will come.]

11. u ba me dosi chu
   he or I guilty am
   "He or I am guilty."

12. me ba u dosi che
   I or he guilty is
   "I or he is guilty."
   [Note : u dosi che — He is guilty.
   me dosi chu — I am guilty.]

<u>Newari</u>

13. radha ki pyakhã:lhu-i ki myehal-i:
   Radha either will-dance or will-sing

14. radhã: ki myehal-i: ki pyakhã:lhu-i
   Radha either will-sing or will-dance
   [Note : radha pyakhã:lhui — Radha will dance.
   radhã: myehali: — Radha will sing.]

In sentences 1, 2, and 3 the conjoining obviously takes place at the sentence level. In sentence 4 it is

clearly at phrase level. Whether the conjoining in rest of the sentences, including 11 and 12, is to be regarded as taking place at the phrase level or at the sentence level is a matter of controversy. For our present purpose, however, we shall take it for granted that the conjoining as exemplified in these sentences (i.e. 5 to 14) takes place at the sentence level. We have taken this view partly because the Gender-Number-Person concord and Case-Government between the subject and the verb are essentially morphological features and partly because such a treatment is convenient for our present purposes - comparison and pedagogy.

It is to be noted that when conjoining is effected, the subject and the verb in the resultant sentence are to be made to agree with each other.

(i) in Number-Person in English,

(ii) in Gender-Number-Person besides quasi-case government in Nepali,

(iii) in case government in Newari

Wherever discrepancy arises the shared element is made congruent to the nearest concording or governing element in all the three languages. The sentences given above (5 to 14) illustrate this point.

Now we will compare sentence conjoining with the help of the conjunctions, 'and', 'or', 'either ... or/ neither.....nor' 'as well as' and 'but' in the three languages.

<u>Sentence conjoining with 'and'</u>

English : and

Nepali : re

Newari : wa

In Newari, sentences can be conjoined by /wa/ 'and' only when the constituent sentences share a common VP. Where they don't share a common VP, nor a common Subject, sentences are conjoined either by /ale/ 'and then' or by placing them in succession with no overt conjunction where all but the last have an inconclusive sentence tone - an instance of minimal conjoining. When they share a common subject but not a common VP, sentences are either conjoined by /ale/ 'and then' or combined with successive embeddings (the first in the second, the second in the third and so on) (cf. 10.5.2.)

What is said of Newari is also true of Nepali. Nepali differs from Newari in that, unlike Newari, it has sentence conjoining by /re/ 'and' in all conditions.

Nepali and English are similar as regards sentence conjoining by 'and' except that, unlike English, Nepali takes the conjunction /re/ 'and' only optionally. In other words minimal conjoining is quite frequent in Nepali but very rare in English.

Sentences can be conjoined by 'and then' also in English but it is comparatively less frequent in English than in Nepali or Newari.

Sentence combining with successive embeddings is also possible in English but rare.

When S_1, S_2, S_3 ... S_n have no shared element they are conjoined as follows :

English	Nepali	Newari
S_1, S_2, ... and S_n	S_1, S_2, ... re S_n	————
————	S_1, S_2, ... S_n	S_1, S_2, ... S_n

Examples

Eng : Ram played the instrument, Shyam sang, and Bina danced.
Nep : ramle baja bajayo, syamle gayo, (re) bina nacin
New : ramẽ: bajã: thalə, syamẽ: mye-hale, bina pyakhẽ:-lhule

When S_1, S_2 have shared elements they are conjoined in English and Nepali as follows :

XAY + XBY ----- XA & BY

where, X and Y stand for shared elements, A and B for unshared elements and '&' for English 'and' and Nepali 're', and where X or Y can be a null element.

Examples

English	Nepali
(a) Ram beat Shyam.	ram aja ãũdaina

(b) Ram kicked Shyam. ram bholi aũdeina

Ram beat and kicked Shyam. ram aje ra bholi aũdeina

Ram today and tomorrow won't come.

This rule is applicable to Newari as well when the constituent sentences share a common VP, e.g.

(a) ram theũ wei makhu

(b) ram kone: wei makhu

ram theũ wa kone: wei makhu

Ram today and tomorrow won't come

<u>Sentence conjoining with 'or'</u>

English : or

Nepali : ba athabaj ki

Newari : ki

In English and Nepali the rules applicable to sentence conjoining with 'and' are also applicable to sentence conjoining with 'or' with the following differences :

1. S_1, S_2, ... & S_n : common with both 'and' and 'or' (in both the languages)

2. S_1 & S_2 & S_3..... : very rare with 'and' not so rare with 'or' (in both the languages)

3. S_1, S_2, S_3 ... : (i) quite common with 'and' in Nep. very rare with 'and' in Eng.

(ii) impossible with 'or' (in both the languages)

where '&' stands for 'and' or 'or'.

In Newari the connective 'ki' is used mainly in conjoining polarity questions (with the question particle /la/) as follows :

XAY la + XBY la ------ XAY (la) ki BY

e.g. (a) kane' che we' la   Will you come tomorrow?

(b) kane' che we'-makhu la   Won't you come tomorrow?

kane' che we' (la) ki we'-makhu

tomorrow you will come or won't come

(a) kane' ram thana wei la   Will Ram come here tomorrow?

(b) kane' ram ana weni' la   Will Ram go there tomorrow?

kane' ram thana wei (la) ki ana weni'

tomorrow Ram here will come or there will go

[Nepali also uses /ki/ (not /ba/ - /athaba/) in this context.]

In addition it is also used to conjoin statements when they share a common VP, e.g.

(a) kane' ram wei

(b) kane' syam wei

kane' Ram ki syam wei

tomorrow Ram or Shyam will come

(a) ram theũ wei

(b) ram kane' wei

ram theũ ki kane' wei

Ram today or tomorrow will come.

When the sentences do not share a common VP, they are customarily conjoined by /ki ... ki/ 'either ... or', e.g.

(a) ram thene wei

(b) ram ene weni'

ram ki thene wei ki ene weni'

Ram either here will come or there will go

In English and Nepali such sentences may be conjoined by 'either or' or simply 'or'.

<u>Sentence conjoining with 'either ... or', 'neither ... nor'</u>

English :	either ... or;	neither ... nor
Nepali :	ki ... ki;	ne ... ne
	~ ya ... ya	
Newari :	ki ... ki;	ne ... ne

When the constituent sentences have no shared element they are conjoined in all the three languages as follows :

$$S_1 + S_2 \text{ ----- } \&' S_1 \& S_2$$

English	Nepali	Newari
(a) Ram came here	ram yahā̃ ayo	ram thene wele
(b) Shyam went there	syam wahā̃ gayo	syam ene wene
Neither Ram came here nor Shyam went there.	ne ram yahā̃ ayo ne syam wahā̃ gayo	ne ram thene wele ne syam ene wene

This rule is applicable even if the sentences have a shared element in the middle flanked on either sides by unshared elements,

i.e. $A_1 \times A_2 + B_1 \times B_2$ ----- $\&' A_1 \times A_2 \,\&\, B_1 \times B_2$

e.g. (a) Ram likes coffee.

(b) Shyam likes tea.

Neither Ram likes coffee nor Shyam likes tea.

The same is true of Nepali and Newari.

This rule is applicable even if the constituent sentences contain other shared elements, but it is only less commonly so. The more common ones are as follows :

XA + XB -------- XA&́ & B (in all the three languages)

English	Nepali	Newari
Ram laughed.	ram hãsyo	ram n̄hile
Ram wept.	ram royo	ram khwele
Ram neither laughed nor wept.	ram ne hãsyo ne royo	ram ne n̄hile ne khwele

AY + BY -------- (i) &ÁY&BY

(ii) '&́A&BY

Of the two (i) is more common in Nepali and Newari, and (ii) is more common in English.

English	Nepali	Newari
Ram will come.	ram aüche	ram wei
Shyam will come.	syam aüche	syam wei
Eigher Ram or Shyam will come.	ki ram aüche ki syam aüche	ki ram wei ki syam wei

[Note : Only the more common ones are given.)

XAY + XBY ------ (i) X&'AY&BY

(ii) X&'A&BY

In English (i) is preferred to (ii) when A and B are verbs, but (ii) is much more preferred to (i) if otherwise.

In Nepali and Newari (i) is more common than (ii).

Examples

English

(a) He loves you.

(b) He hates you.

He neither loves you, nor hates you

(also less commonly : He neither loves nor hates you)

(a) He walks slowly.

(b) He talks slowly.

He neither speaks slowly, nor talks slowly

(also, less commonly : He neither speaks nor talks slowly.)

(a) He drinks tea everyday.

(b) He drinks coffee everyday.

He drinks either tea or coffee everyday.

(also, very rarely : He drinks either tea every day or coffee everyday.)

Nepali	:	ram	aje	aũche
Newari	:	ram	theũ	wei
Gloss	:	Ram	today	will come

Nepali	:	ram	bholi	aũche
Newari	:	ram	kane:	wei
Gloss	:	Ram	tomorrow	will come

Nepali : ram ki aje aũche ki bholi aũche

Newari : ram ki theũ wei ki kane: wei

Ram either today will come or tomorrow will come.

(also, less commonly : ram ki aje ki bholi aũche

ram ki theũ ki kane: wei)

Sentence conjoining with 'as well as'

In English the rules applicable to sentence conjoining with 'or' are also applicable to sentence conjoining with 'as well as'. The only exception is that whereas 'or' can conjoin more than two sentences, 'as well as' can conjoin only two sentences.

Nepali and Newari have no connective exactly equivalent to English'as well as'. In the situation where English uses 'as well as' Nepali and Newari use 'peni ... peni' and 'nẽ: ... nẽ:' respectively both literally mean 'also ... also'.

Unlike English 'as well as', the Nepali and Newari connectives can conjoin sentences only if they share a common VP.

The rules governing sentence conjoining by these connectives in Nepali and Newari are identical and are as follows :

XAY +XBY ----- (a) XA&'YB&Y

(b) XA&'B&Y

where, (i) A and B stand for unshared elements,

X and Y stand for shared elements,

(ii) X may be void

(iii) (a) is more common than (b).

Examples

Nepali : ram aje aũcha

Newari : ram theũ wei

Gloss : Ram today will come

Nepali : ram bholi aũcha

Newari : ram kane: wei

Gloss : Ram tomorrow will come

Nep : ram aje pani aũcha bholi pani aũcha
New : ram theũ nẽ: wai kane: nẽ: wai
Gloss: Ram today also will come tomorrow also will come.
(also less commonly :
Nep : ram aje pani bholi pani aũcha
New : ram theũ nẽ kane: nẽ: wai)

Sentence conjoining with 'but'

English : but
Nepali : tara
Newari : tara

Sentence conjoining with 'but' is simple in all the three languages. The connective 'but' is placed between the sentences to be conjoined. That's all in English. In Nepali and Newari the nominal/pronominal forms in the second constituent sentence having their cross-reference in the first one, if any, are optionally deleted.

Examples

1. Eng : Ram lost but Shyam won.
Nep : ram haryo tara syam jityo
New : ram buta tara syam tyata

2. Eng : Ram lost but <u>he</u> was not disheartened.
   Nep : ram haryo tara (<u>u</u>) niras bhaena
   New : ram bute tara (<u>wa</u>) niras maju:

3. Eng : Ram gave me the money but <u>I</u> didn't take it.
   Nep : ramle malai paisa diyo tara (<u>maile</u>)(<u>tyo</u>) liina
   New : ramā: jite: dhyeba bila tara (jĩ:) (wa) mekaya

15.3. <u>Pedagogic Applications</u>

Here are some of the errors regarding sentence embedding which are likely to be committed by the speakers of Nepali and Newari learning English. Errors on sentence conjoining follow.

1. Since Nepali and Newari, unlike English, do not observe sequence of tense, this is a problem area to the speakers of these languages learning English.
2. A common error that most of the Nepali and Newari learners commit is the use of the direct question form for the indirect lacunal question embedding, e.g.

   *"He [asked / told] Ram where had he been [? / .]"

   Note also the use of 'told' as a reporting verb.

3. As Nepali and Newari do not make any sharp distinction between direct and indirect reporting, the Nepali and Newari learners are likely to say things like "He said

I didn't know anything at all". when he actually means "He said he didn't know anything at all."

4. Nepali and Newari speakers are likely to delete erroneously the equi-Subject in the embedded sentence.
5. Sepakers of Nepali and Newari should be made aware that different processes are involved in the embeddings of a statement, an indirect polarity question, and an indirect lacunal question in English, not to speak of indirect commands/requests (reduced to NonFin Phrases in English).
6. The embedding marker 'that' in the 'that-clause' can be dropped in many cases in English. Over-generalization may, at times, lead to the use of such constructions like "He found out I was guilty.", "He stated clearly I should see a doctor immediately." (where that is more likely to be retained than dropped).
7. In Nepali and Newari it is not necessary that the embedded AP should be adjacent to the matrix NP in which it is embedded. This relaxation may be carried over to English giving birth to such unacceptable constructions as *"I saw the man standing near the bus stop who beat you yesterday."
8. The sentences with relative embedding contain a pair of correlated pronominals in Nepali and Newari. As such the Nepali and Newari speakers are likely to produce sentences

like "what he said that is not true." (not realizing that this would be archaic in English).

Errors regarding sentence conjoining are caused in Nepali and Newari English mainly due to filter language interference. Some of the errors the speakers of Nepali and Newari are likely to commit are noted below.

1. The Nepali speakers and, particularly, the Newari speakers are likely to make additive conjoining without using 'and' at all.

   They may also use 'and then' in situations where the use of 'and' would have been more appropriate. In most cases the replacement of 'and' by 'and then' results only in a stylistic variation. For example, there is hardly any difference between the sentence 'Ram came and Shyam went' and 'Ram came and then Shyam went.' Both are equally correct as well as colloquial. Replacement of 'and' by 'and then' in such cases (where the second constituent sentence has a time reference which is future in respect to that of the first sentence) makes little difference except that the style assumes an awakward heaviness if 'and then' occurs several times at close succession. However if such a replacement takes place in a sentence like "Ram is a soldier and Shyam a teacher."

rendering it "Ram is a soldier and then Shyam a teacher." the replacement becomes an error. It is, however, observed that the Nepali and Newari learners seldom commit such an error.

The Nepali and Newari speakers, in their free composition, may be inclined to use cumbersome embedded constructions like "Having played for an hour he left for home." in lieu of simple and elegant constructions like "He played an hour and (then) left for home."

2. A frequent error, that the Nepali and Newari learners are found to commit when they conjoin sentences each containing 'Verb + adverbial particle', is the deletion of the adverbial particle of the first constituent sentence, e.g. "I neither believe nor depend on him." for "I neither believe in nor depend on him."

3. The speakers of Nepali and Newari are likely to avoid deletion of auxiliaries in conjoined constructions giving rise to such uncolloquial constructions as the ones given below :

(i) Ram will play well and <u>will</u> win the match [instead of : "Ram will play well and win the match".]

(ii) Ram neither had gone there nor had come here. or Ram had neither gone there nor had come here. [instead of : "Ram had neither gone there nor come here."]

Cause

In English the 'future sense' is conveyed by the modal auxiliary 'will'. In Newari it is conveyed by inflection. In Nepali though it is expressed by the auxiliary /ch- /, the auxiliary and the stem, unlike in English, cannot stand as free forms. This explains why the Nepali and Newari learners feel hesitant to delete 'will' (or similar other axiliaries) in conjoined constructions like the ones given above. The fact that both the auxiliaries and the verb stems in constructions like 'will win', 'had gone' are free forms should be taught directly or indirectly to the speakers of Nepali and Newari.

4. Similarly the speakers of Nepali and Newari may produce, as a result of the filter language interference, such un-colloquial or erronous constructions as the ones given below : [The ones given in parentheses are the correct and colloquil counterparts.]

(i) Will you come or won't (come)?
[Will you come or not?]

(ii) Either Ram will come or Shyam will come.
[Either Ram or Shyam will come.]

(iii) Ram also came (and) Shyam also came.
or Ram came and Shyam also came.
[Ram as well as Shyam came.]

To avoid these mistakes, sentence conjoining with 'or', 'either ... or'/'neither ... nor', 'as well as' should be taught properly.

5. In sentences conjoined by 'but' the Nepali and Newari learners tend to wrongly delete the pronominal forms in the second constituent sentence which have a cross-reference in the first constituent sentence, e.g.

(i) *He lost but didn't lose heart.
[He lost but he didn't lose his heart.]

(ii) *He gave me the money but I didn't take.
[He gave me the money but I didn't take it.]

6. The Nepali speakers and particularly the Newari speakers are likely to make errors as regards Subject-Verb agreement in Number and Person in conjoined constructions. Some of such likely errors are :

(i) *He and I am going to see a movie.
[He and I are going to see a movie.]

(ii) *He as well as she are guilty.
[He as well as she is guilty.]

(iii) *He as well as/or I is guilty.
[He as well as/or I am guilty]

It is to be noted that in the sentence conjoined with 'or', 'either ... or/neither...nor', or 'as well as' the verb agrees in Number-Person with the nearest concording or governing element, e.g. "He or I am guilty."
but "Is he or I guilty?"

The Nepali learners and, particularly, the Newari learners are to be made aware of this agreement.

APPENDIX

NEWARI VERBAL BASES: A REFERENCE LIST

This is a nearly exhaustive list of Newari verbal bases (as promised in 9.2.1.). The bases are either single morphemes or bases with causativization indicated by consonantal replacement (cf. 8.2.3.2.). Causativized bases with the causativization marker /-k/ (cf. 8.2.2.3.ii) are not listed here.

The following observations may be made concerning these bases :

(a) Most of the bases are monosyllabic and a few disyllabic.

(b) The capital letter within brackets immediately following a V-ending base indicates the morphological group it belongs to (cf. 9.2.1.).

(c) The bases marked * are the verbs that normally do not make any person distinction (cf. Note 1, end of 9.2.5.).

(d) A hyphen before the base indicates that it always occurs in combinations.

(e) Some of the bases (mainly the ones mentioned in (d) above) cannot be provided with handy glosses in English and are, therefore, illustrated in combinations.

(f) For formation of complex verbal bases other than the ones included here (i.e. the bases with causativization indicated by consonantal replacement) refer to 8.2.2.3. and, particularly, 10.1.6.

The alphabetical order followed is :
ə æ a b c d e g h i j k l m n ñ ṅ p r s t u w y and within
each vowel : V V: Ṽ Ṽ:

b

* bəla	(B)	be/become strong
ba	(A)	be/become separate (from one's kin)
* bã:la	(B)	be/become beautiful
* bhin		be/become good
bi	(A)	give
-bi	(A)	
as in: ina-bi		distribute (among others)
lite-bi		give back
tyæ:-bi		lend
* bu	(A)	be born
bu	(A)	rub (oil etc)
bu	(A)	brush (teeth)
bu	(B)	be cooked, cook (intr)
* bu	(B)	lose (s.th. in gambling)
bwe	(A)	fly
bwə	(A)	display
bwən		read, study
bwen		invite
byən		become untied
bya	(B)	be/become clean (said of: clothes being washed)
byekwə	(A)	be/become crooked

cabu	(B)	be broken, break (thread, rope etc) (intr.)
caphu	(B)	break (thread, rope etc) (tr)
ca	(A)	be open, open (intr)
* ca	(A)	feel, be/become aware of
ca	(A)	
as in : tə̄!-ca		be/become angry
ca	(B)	cut (inedible things)
cha	(B)	be/become hard
cha	(B)	offer (s.th. to god)
cha	(B)	get allergic (due to contact with a caterpillar etc)
chi	(C)	cross (river etc)
chi	(C)	dye
chu	(A)	roast, bake
-chu	(A)	
as in : dye-chu		place (s.th. or the vessel containing it on fire to cook it)
khapa-chu		fix a frame (in the window or door)
kwə-chu		stoop
chwe	(A)	send
chwe	(A)	burn (intr)
-chwe	(A)	
as in : wan-chwe		throw
chyen		comb, brush (coat etc)
chya	(B)	grind
ci	(B)	tie (tr)

- cin

as in : cwȇ-cin		make into a heap
mhu:-cin		make into a fist
pwe:-cin		wrap into a package
cu	(A)	rub (a hard thing against a hard surface)
cu	(A)	sell (intr)
cwe	(A)	write
cwe	(A)	strike (by an animal with its horn)
cwen		stay
cwen		think (s.th. to be s.th.)

- cwen

as in : swesē:-cwen		fast (stay without food)
cya	(B)	be alight, burn (intr) (said of : lamp as well as fire)

d

* de	(A)	fall (while walking)
de	(B)	exist, have, be/become available
de	(B)	be/become permissible
den		stand up, wake up
den		be/become cheap
da	(A)	beat
da	(A)	be boiled (milk, water etc)
da	(C)	measure
de:k		make

dha	(A)	say
dhwegi	(B)	decay
di	(B)	stop (intr)
du	(A)	burn (s.th. as fuel to cook s.th.)
dun		collapse (building etc)
* dun		get dipped
dyen		sleep
* dya	(B)	go on loss
-dya	(B)	
as in ! la-dya		be/become folded
mwe!-dya		be/become twisted

g

ge	(A)	climb
gen		be/become dry
ga	(B)	be enough
ghurk		swallow
ghwa	(B)	push
gu	(B)	be torn, tear (intr)
gwe	(A)	close (door etc)
gwa	(B)	be well burnt, burn (fire)(intr)
* gya	(B)	be/become afraid

h

he	(A)	bring
hen		bear (expenses)

hen make (string, garland etc)

ha (A) steam

ha (A) winnow

ha (B)

as in : jigu chyẽ: lukhae: hate 'My head hit against the door'
my head at the door

jite: chyne: hate 'I was hit on the head'
to me on the head

-ha (B)

as in : luphĩ:-ha stumble

hal shout

-hal

as in : mye-hal sing (a song)

hi (A) wash (clothes)

hu (A) wipe

hwe (A) bloom

hwel scatter (small particles such as grains)

hye:k appease

i

il paint (floor, wall etc)

j

ja (A) be/become full

ji (A) be/become permissible

* ju	(A)	be/become
jwa	(A)	leak
jwe	(A)	be/become sharp
jwe	(A)	graze
jwan		catch
jyal		wear off (shoes etc)

k

ke (A)

as in : jite: chyene: apā: kele 'A stone hit me on my head'
to me on the head with a stone 'I was hit by a stone on my head'

ka	(A)	take
-ka	(A)	
as in :	ina-ka	distribute (among self and others)
	lal-ka	swim
	li-ka	remove
	lita-ka	take back
	lyewa:-ka	fornicate (by a woman)
	ty[illegible]e:-ka	borrow
ka	(B)	

as in : jite: khapā: kale 'The door crushed me.'
'I was crushed by the door'

kal	fry (egg)
khen	see
khen	open

khu (A) steal

khu (B) tear (tr)

khwə (A) weep

khwe (A) freeze

khwa (B) blow (fire)

khya (B) frighten

-ku (A)

as in : kusā:-ku ; mi-ku — cover with an umbrella; bask in front of the fire

kui — remove (bits of food from between the teeth with a tooth-pick)

kwə (A) be/become burnt (food)

kwa (B) be/become hot, warm

kwa (B) cheat

kyəl

as in : jitə: mwetərə̃: kyəle 'A vehicle ran over me.'
to me by a vehicle 'I was run over by a vehicle'

kyən — show

* kyən — get trapped

* kyən

as in : chẽ: jitə: n̄arka dā: kyəne 'I owe you five rupees'
you to me five rupee

l

le (A) reap

len — weight

lən — heal up

-la (B)

as in : cak(a)-la be/become circular

gwa(l)-la be/become spherical

la (B)

as in : jita: apā: lata 'A stone hit me.'

'I was hit by a stone'

jita: cithā: lata 'I won a lottery.'

jigu bhage: kalam lata 'I got a pen in my share.'

la (B) catch

la (C) spread out (mattress etc)

lha (B)

as in : jita: lasā: lhata 'The mattress came on top of me and pressed me.'

-lha (B)

as in : khã-lha talk

mhutu-lha speak profane words

sasa:-lha breathe

-lhu (A)

as in : baji-lhu pound rice

mwa:-lhu bathe

pyakhã:-lhu dance

lhwa (C) vomit

lhwan lift

* lhwan be/become fat

lhya (A) crawl (baby)

lhye (A)		carry (load from one place to another)
lidhen		lean
lilak		overtake
lu (A)		pour (liquid)
lu (C)		be found
lu (C)		set (sun)
-lu (C)		
as in :	cweka-lu	be/become pointed
	N-mũ:-lu	be/become of shape having N nodes
	pa:-lu	be/become tilted
lwe (A)		be matching, match (intr)
lwa (B)		collide
lwa (B)		quarrel, fight
lwakchya(B)		mix (tr)
lwakjya (B)		get mixed
lye (A)		sort out
lye (A)		select

m

-men		
as in :	lu-men	remember
	lwe:-men	forget
men ~ mwen		boil
mal		search
mal		
as in :	jite: ñarka dã: male	'Five rupee is needed to me.' 'I need five rupee.'

* mhen		dream
mhit		play
mhu	(A)	dig (hole)
mi	(A)	sell
mun		collect, gather
mwen ~ men		boil
* mwa	(B)	live (opposite to die)

n

ne	(A)	eat
netu	(A)	speak (to a person)
netun		smell
newa	(B)	speak (s.th.)
na	(A)	melt
nhu	(A)	step on
-nhu	(A)	
as in : thar-nhu		start (sudden movement)
tin-nhu		jump
nwe	(A)	

as in : jita' lasa-te'le'-cwengu-ke'guli' nwele

to me the-pea-underneath-the-mattress

'The pea underneath the mattress dug-into-and-made-uncomfortable me.'

ñ

ñe	(A)	wear (shawl etc)
ñe	(A)	borrow

* ñel		be/become tired
ñen		ask
ñen		listen to
ña	(B)	buy
ña	(B)	bite (by non-humans)
-ña	(B)	
as in : kutī:-ña		pinch
wañ-ña		bite (by human)
ñhe	(A)	chew
ñhil		laugh, smile
ñi	(C)	grind
ñin		count

p

pe - masi-pe (A)		screw (the cunt)
pen		block
perk		patch up
pa	(C)	dry (s.th. on the sun)
pa	(C)	stake (s.th. in gambling)
paphe:k		swear
phe	(A)	spread (s.th. to hold s.th.)
phe	(B)	be able to
pha	(B)	saw (wood)
pha	(B)	cover (with a guilt etc)
pha	(B)	separate (s.o. from his kin)

-pha	(B)		
as in :	cwe-pha	urinate	
	khei-pha	spit	
	- i:-pha		
	khi-pha	defecate	
phi	(A)	make (pickle etc. by keeping s.th. air-tight)	
phi	(C)	wear (clothes)	
phwen		beg	
phye	(A)	lick	
phyen		untie (tr)	
pi	(A)	wait	
pi	(A)	demolish, uproot, undo	
pi	(C)	plant	
-pi	(C)		
as in :	jite: nokinā:	jhwe:-pile --pite	'I got scratched by a nail'
	to me by a nail		
pu	(A)	wear (cap)	
-pu	(A)		
as in :	ghe:-pu	embrace	
	twe-pu	cover	
-pu	(A)		
as in :	bē-pu	sweep the floor	
pu	(C)		
as in :	jite: mi: pule - pute		'I got burnt by fire.'

puk		fry (in oil)
pul		pay back
pul		lose (s.th. to the winning staker)
pun		contaminate
pwel		peel off
pweňk		pour (solid or liquid), empty
pyeňk		kick
pyepun		stick fast
* pya	(B)	be wet

s

se	(A)	sprout, bear (fruit etc)
* se	(A)	know how
sen		move
seti	(C)	be/become near
se't		call
sa	(B)	be/become tasty, delicious
sal		pull
se'k		learn
si	(A)	fry (s.th.) dry
* si	(A)	come to know
-si	(A)	
as in ' mhe-si		recognise
* si	(B)	die

-sil			
as in :		cipe-sil	wash used utensils
		khwa:-sil	wash face
		nu-sil	wash mouth after food
su	(A)		stitch, sew
su	(A)		prick (with a needle etc)
-su	(A)		
as in :		chwa-su	be/become loosely tied
sul			hide
swe	(A)		see
swə	(A)		be/become tangled (thread)
-swe	(A)		
as in :		nē:-swe	taste
swəthen			store away
swa	(B)		join together
-swa	(B)		
as in :		chə-swa	be/become straight (vertically)
		tī:-swa	be/become stiff and straight
syən			teach
* syən			be/become spoilt
sya	(B)		kill
* sya	(B)		feel pain
-sya	(B)		
as in :		nuga-sya	be/become stingy

te	(A)	keep, place
-te	(A)	
as in : khi-te		fart
musu-te		cough
techya	(B)	break (brittle things) (tr)
tejya	(B)	be broken, break('') (intr)
tepyen		be/become straight
ta	(A)	hear
ta	(C)	cut (edible things)
tā:nwe	(A)	be/become hot (weather)
the	(A)	spare (without eating in a feast)
the	(A)	be enough (for all)
then		make s.o. stand up, wake s.o. up
* tha	(B)	get stuck up
tha	(B)	knit, weave
tha	(C)	play a musical instrument
thi	(A)	touch
thi	(C)	be/become bright
thu	(A)	cook (rice)
* thu	(A)	understand
thun		demolish, dismantle
thun		dip
thwe	(A)	lay (egg)
thwe	(A)	pluck

thwe (A)	echo
thyen	make s.o. sleep
* thyen	arrive
* thya (B)	be allowed to join in the game
-thya (B)	
as in : la-thya	fold
mwe'-thya	twist
ti (C)	close
tisi (A)	squeeze
-tu (A)	
as in : ca'-tu	be bent, bend (intr)
gwar-tu	lie down
phye-tu	sit down
tu (C)	last
tu (C)	cost
tul	roll (things)
-tun	
as in : jigu wa-tune my tooth-	My tooth was set on edge.
twe (A)	undress
twe (A)	be/become horoscopically matched (said of' bride and bridegroom)
twen	drink
twe't	leave, give up
twe'thul	break (stick etc)
tye (A)	be time (for s.th.)

tye	(A)		press
* tya	(B)		win
tya	(B)		mince (meat etc)

u

u	(A)		bark
u	(A)		burn (deal bodies)
usu	(A)		cause irritation to (person) (said of : burning chillies, tobacco etc)

w

we	(A)		come
-we	(A)		
as in :		bise-we	run away (in-bound)
		dasi-we	be boiled and increased in volume (milk etc)
		kutu-we	fall down (in-bound)
		ñasi-we	come on foot
		penẽ:-we	elope (by a woman)(in-bound)
wen			go
-wen			
as in :		bise-wen	run away(out-bound)
		kutu-wen	fall down (out-bound)
		ñasi-wen	go on foot, walk
		penẽ:-wen	elope (by a woman) (out-bound)

wa		spill, overflow, leak out
wal		mix by stirring (solid or liquid into solid)

y

* ye (A)		
as in :	jite' ña ye'	'I like fish.'
	to me fish	
yeṅk		take away
ya (B)		do
-ya (B)		
as in :	bya'-ya	marry
	pə'-ya	pretend
	pa'-ya	blame
	sa'-ya	tolerate

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Works on the Nepali Language

Abdulky, V. 1969. Case Grammar and the Nepalese Language. M.A. Dissertation. Cornell U.

Ayton, J.A. 1820. A Grammar of Nepali Language. Calcutta.

Bandhu, C.M. 1968. Nepālī Bhāṣāko Utpati. Kathmandu: Jagadambā Prakashan. 'Origin of the Nepali language.' [In Nepali]

______ 1971. Siñjālī: Studies in Linguistic Behaviour. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy.

______ 1973. Clause Patterns in Nepali. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan U.

Bahadur, J.P. 1911. Prākrit Vyākarana. Kathmandu.

Bendix, E.H. 1974. Indo-Aryan and Tibeto-Burman Contact as seen through Nepali and Newari verb tenses. IJDL 3:1.42-59.

Cornelius, A.W. 1944. European's Guide to Gurkhali. Dehradun: Jugal Kishore.

Clark, T.W. 1963. Introduction to Nepali. London: Cambridge.

______ 1969. Nepali and Pahāri. In: Sebeok, T.(ed.) Current trends in Linguistics 5. 245-76. The Hague: Mouton.

Dahal, B.M. 1971. Phonesthetic Elements in Nepali. In: Proceedings of the First All India Conference of Linguistics. Poona: LSI

______ 1974. A Description of Nepali, Literary and Colloquial. Poona U. Ph.D. thesis.

Dīkṣitāchārya, Visvamaṇi. 1912. Gorakhā Vyākaraṇa. Calcutta.

Grierson, G.A.1916. Linguistic Survey of India. Calcutta.

Gupta, D.B.D. et.al. 1964. Nepali self-Taught. Calcutta.

Hale, A. et.al. 1971. Nepali Segmental Phonology. (mimeo). Tribhuvan U. Kathmandu: SIL.

Hari, Maria. 1972. Tentative, Systemic Organization of Nepali santences. (mimeo) Kathmandu: SIL.

Hemrāj. 1912. Chandrikā: Gorakhā-bhāṣā Vyākaraṇa. Kathmandu: Dhokātol.

Heppenstal, Lopping et.al. 1899. A Khas-Gurkhali grammar and vocabulary. Calcutta.

Hodgson, B.H. 1874. Essays on Language, Literature and Religion of Tibet and Nepal. London.

______ 1857. Comparative Vocabulary of the Languages of the Broken Tribes of Nepal. JASB V1 XXVI.

Hughes, Morland. 1947. A Grammar of the Nepali Language, London.

Jaṅgabahādur Rānā, Pusker shamsher 1949. Nepali Sajilo Vyākaraṇa, Kathmandu: Nepali Bhāṣā Prakashini Samiti.

Kilgaur, R. 1928. Gorkhali Mannual. Not known.

Korolyov, N.I. 1965. Yazyk Nepali. Moscow: Minka.

Mahilamma, V. 1969. Transformational Analysis of Nepali Verbal syntax. Trivandrum: U. of Kerala. M.A. diss.

Meerendonk, M. 1959. Basic Gurkhali Grammar (Revised edition). Kaula Lumpur.

Money, G.W.P. 1918. Gurkhali Mannual. Bombay.

Pande, Gopal. 1933. Rachanā Darpaṇa. Kathmandu.

______ 1949. Rachanā Keshar. Kathmandu.

Pokharel, Bālakrisṇa. 1963. Pācha Shaya Varṣa. Kathmandu: Jagadambā Prakashan.

______ 1964. Nepali bhāṣā ra Śahitya. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhanḍār.

______ 1965. Rāṣṭra bhāṣa. Kathmandu: Educational Enterprise.

Pradhan, Parasmaṇi. 1920. Nepali Vyākaraṇa. Calcutta: Macmillan & Co.

Rogers, G.G. 1950. Colloquial Nepali. Calcutta: Thackar Spink.

Sānskrityāyan, Rāhul. (ed.) 1960. Hindī Sāhityakā Brihat Itihās. Varanasī: Nāgari Prachāriṇī Sabhā.

Sāpkotā, Mahānanda. 1969. Kriyānvayī vyañjanā. Biratnagar: Purbhānchal Pustak Bhandar.

______ c.1968. Nepali Dhātu Parichaya, Biratnagar: Nepali Sāhitya Bhandar.

Sarmā, Tārānāth. 1967. Word Order in Primary Sentence Patterns of English and Nepali: A Constructive Study. Dip. diss. U. of Bangor.

Schmidt, Ruth Laila. 1968. A Nepali Conversation Mannual. Instt. of South Asia Regional Studies, U.of Pennsylvania:

Sigdel, Somanāth. 1919. Madhya Chandrikā. Kathmandu: Gorkhābhāṣā Prakashinī Samiti.

SIL, Nepal. 1969. Conversational Nepali.

Southworth, F.C. 1967. Nepali Transformational Sketch. Poona: Deccan College.

Thyagarājan, C. 1969. Segmental Phonemes of Nepali. Trivandrum: U. of Kerala. M.A. diss.

Turnbull, A. 1923. Nepali Grammar and Vocabulary. (3rd ed.) Calcutta: Thacker & Spink.

Turner, R.L. 1931. A Comparative and Etymological Dictionary of the Nepali Language. London.

______ (c. 1930). Infinitive in Nepali. Prague: Czechoslovakia.

______ (c. 1957). The Root of Nepali (Lecture delivered on the occasion of the King Mahendra's Coronation). Kathmandu.

Works on the Newari Language

Bajracharya, A. 1964. Chhun Paryayabachi Kosh. Kathmandu: Chosa Pasa. 'A Dictionary of some synonyms.'[In Newari.]

Bendix, E.H. 1974. (cf. Works on the Nepali Language)

Hale, A. 1971. Topics in NewariGrammar. Kathmandu. Summer Institute of Linguistics.

______ 1973. On the form of verbal bases in Newari. In: Issues in linguistics, Papers in honour of Henry and Renée Kahane. Urbana: U. of Illinois Press. pp.279-299.

Hale, A.; Manandhar, T. 1973. Case and Role in Newari. Nepal Studies in Linguistics 1,39-54,

Hale, A.; Shresthacharya, I. 1973. Is Newari a Classifier Language. Contributions to Nepalese Studies. 1.1-21.

Hale, Margrit and Austin. 1969. Newari Phonemic Summary. Kathmandu: SIL and Tribhuvan U.

Jørgensen, H. 1936a. Linguistic remarks on the verb in Newari. Acta Orientalia 14. 280-285.

______ 1936b. A Dictionary of the Classical Newari. Det Danske Videnskabernes Selskab 23:1. Copenhagen: Levin and Munksgaard.

______ 1941. A Grammar of Classical Newari. Det Danske Videnskabernes Selskab 27:3. Copenhagen: Ejnar Munksgaard.

Joshi, P.P. 1956. Sankshipta Nepal bhasa shabda-kosh. Kathmandu: Baidya Ratna Prasad Joshi.

Joshi, S.R. 1928. Nepal bhasha byakarna. Calcutta: Pandit Ambika Prasad Bajapeyi.

Kansakar, T.R. Nov.1972. Linguistics and the Study of Newari Language. Journal of the Tribhuvan U. 7:1. 49-58.

Konow, S. 1909. Nēwārī. In: Linguistic Survey of India, ed. by G.A. Grierson. 3: 1. 214-236. Delhi: Motilal Banarasidas (reprinted 1967).

Malla, K.P. June 1971. Jhīgu bhāe guli pulāⁿ? Nepal Bhasa Patrika. 2028 Jestha. 29-49. Kathmandu: Fhatte Bahadur Singh. 'How Old is our language?' [In Newari]

Mazaudon, M. 1973. Comparison of six dialects in the Himalayan dialects of Tibeto-Burmese. PS 6. 78-91.

Modi, Bharati V. 1966. The Phonemes of Newari. Journal of the Maharaja Sayajirao University of Baroda. 15:1. 103-134.

Sagar, P.R. 1962. Subodh Nepal bhasa byakarna. Kathmandu: Thaunkanke Prakashan Bibhag. 'Simple grammar of the Newari language.' [In Newari.]

Shresthacharya, I. 1963. Dhuku piku, Nepal bhashay mukka kriyaya dhuku. Kathmandu: Mayju Suchar Devi. 'Storehouse: A Collection of Newari verb roots.' [In Newari.]

_______ 1964. Mulukah, bachangu baigyannik bhaylachan. Bhaktapur: Janaki Lal Pradhan.

_______ 1967. Chalancha, Chikicha dhangu byakaran. Kathmandu: Asian Printing Press. A short Newari grammar in Newari.

Shresthacharya, I.; Maskey, J.; Hale, A. Conversational Newari.

Singh, L.M. 1955. Nepal bhasa byakarna. Kathmandu: Ganesh Man Shrestha Him-harati Press.

Sthapit, Kamala. 1976. A Descriptive Analysis of Colloquial Newari. Poona U. M.A. thesis.

Reference on the English Language

Close, R.A. 1962. English as a Foreign Language. London : George Allen and Unwin [ELBS ed. 1974]

Gimson, A.C. 1970. An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English. 2nd ed. London: Edward Arnold [1st ed. 1962]

Hornby, A.S. et.al. 1974. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English. 3rd ed. ELBS & OUP. [1st ed. 1948].

Jesperson, O. 1933. Essentials of English Grammar. London: Allen & Unwin.

Jones, Daniel. 1960. Outline of English Phonetics. 9th ed. Cambridge, England: Heffer.

Jupp, T.C.; Milne, J. English Sentence Structure. England: Heinemam Educational.

Kelkar Ashok R. 1968. Hints on the pronunciation of English for the interested student. In: Learning through English. Pune: U. of Poona, 2nd ed. Appendix III, pp. 245-56.

Kufner, H.L. 1962: Grammatical Structures of English and German. Chicago: U. of Chicago Press.

Lester, M. 1971. Introductory Transformational Grammar of English. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc.

Moulton, W.G. 1962. The Sounds of English and German. Chicago: U. of Chicago Press.

Zandvoort, R.W. 1969. A Handbook of English Grammar. 5th ed. London: Longman

General References

Bloomfield, Leonard. 1933. Language. New York: Holt. Brit.ed. London: Allen & Unwin, 1935.

Fillmore, C.J. 1968. The Case for case. In: Universals in Linguistic theory, ed. by Emmon Bach and Robert T. Harnss New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston. PP.1-90.

Hockett, C.F. 1958. A Course in Modern Linguistics. New York: Macmillan.

Kolkar, Ashok R. 1959. The category of Case in Marathi, A Study in Method. Indian Linguistics. 20.131-9.

Nemser, W. 1970. Contrastive Linguistics at CAL. The Linguistic Reporter 12:3.

Petech, L. 1958. Medieval history of Nepal. Rome.

Ritchie, W.C. 1968. On the Explanation of Phonic Interference. Language Learning 28:3.183-97.

Teisaar, A.P. van. 1965. Learning New Sound Systems: Problems and Prospects. IRAL 3:2.79-93.